

四川农业大学远程与继续教育专用教材·公共课系列

# 大学英语（一）

魏晓红 主 编

李清源 汪定明 副主编

電子工業出版社

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京·BEIJING

## 内 容 简 介

本教材针对网络教育英语教学和学习的特殊性,以主题为依据划分单元,根据内容和语言的难度由浅入深涵盖了英语学习、生活、节日、友谊、梦想、文化、旅游、运动、爱情与婚姻及网络生活 10 个主题的内容。所选文章体裁多样,注重语言的规范性、实用性、趣味性和时代性,能满足成人学生的学习需求。每个单元除了课文解析以外,还系统介绍实用交际英语知识及详解写作技巧和方法,循序渐进地梳理主要语法知识,有助于拓展学习者的语言运用能力。同时,根据全国高校网络教育考试委员会制定的《大学英语考试大纲》和考试指南,在每个单元后编写了相应的配套练习题和综合自测题。

本教材注解详尽,针对性强,适合网络学院高升专非英语专业大学生作为大学英语教程使用。本教程也为广大英语爱好者、自学者提供了一条系统补习英语基础知识,快速提高英语读写能力,全面掌握各项英语技能,丰富欧美文化知识的途径。

未经许可,不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。  
版权所有,侵权必究。

### 图书在版编目(CIP)数据

大学英语(一)/魏晓红主编. —北京:电子工业出版社, 2011.9  
四川农业大学远程与继续教育专用教材·公共课系列

ISBN 978-7-121-14681-7

I. ①大… II. ①魏… III. ①英语—高等职业教育—教材 IV. ①H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2011)第 196336 号

策划编辑:柴 灿

责任编辑:郝黎明 文字编辑:裴 杰

印 刷:

装 订:

出版发行:电子工业出版社

北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱 邮编 100036

开 本:787×1092 1/16 印张:20.75 字数:690 千字

印 次:2011 年 9 月第 1 次印刷

印 数:10 100 册 定价:36.80 元

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题,请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺,请与本社发行部联系,联系及邮购电话:(010) 88254888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 [zlts@phei.com.cn](mailto:zlts@phei.com.cn), 盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 [dbqq@phei.com.cn](mailto:dbqq@phei.com.cn)。

服务热线:(010) 88258888。

# 前言



## 一、编写背景

自 1998 年 9 月教育部正式批准国内 4 所大学开展远程（网络）教育试点以来，我国网络教育呈蓬勃发展的趋势，试点院校由最初的 4 所增加到现在的 68 所。各网络学院依托传统名牌大学及其教学资源优势，充分满足在职成人对于“学历”和“随时随地学习”的需求，也正因为如此，网络教育得以快速发展。

为确保网络教育人才培养的质量，教育部决定 2004 年 3 月 1 日以后入学的网络教育学生，部分公共课实行全国统考，其中大学英语为非英语专业网络教育学生的必考科目。全国高校网络教育考试委员会针对统考制定了考试大纲，并提供了考试指南和样题，统考工作也于 2005 年全面启动，网络教育学生的统考结果成为其电子注册的前提条件。

网络教育是一种全新的教育方式，它在教学方式、师生关系、学习方式等方面表现出与传统教育不一样的特点。师生之间处于分离状态是远程教育的主要特征。因此，远程教育的一个重要原则就是要以学生的学习活动为中心，确保教材、课件的设计从学生的实际需要与现实水平出发，在实际的授课内容以外，为学生提供大量的支持性资源，以帮助其自主学习。

在借鉴和参考了目前国内现有的大学英语网络课程教材的基础上，我们编写了这本符合网络教育特点和网络教育学员学习水平的大学英语教材，旨在帮助和指导全国广大网络教育学员完成教育部对大学英语课程的教学要求，顺利通过全国统考。

## 二、编写原则及教材特点

教材的编写充分体现了网络教育中英语语言学习的特殊性，教材内容全面，涵盖了全国高校网络教育考试委员会 2010 年修订的《大学英语考试大纲》及考试指南涉及的内容，结合网络教育学生学习基础的实际情况制定了教材的学习目标。

### 本教材在编写过程中遵循以下原则：

1. 注重难易度的把握，确保知识的系统性。由于网络教育学生是在缺少英语语言环境，同时又缺少集中课堂教学的情况下进行学习的，因此在教材的编写过程中，我们按照循序渐进的原则，在确保知识性、系统性的同时，注意控制好教材的难度，由易至难、由浅入深地编排所有课文和练习，实现既注重语言文化知识的学习，又注重语言技能培养的教学目标。

2. 知识性、实用性和趣味性相结合。网络教育的学生 90% 为在职成人学生，他们具有社

会阅历丰富、思维成熟、学习目的性强等特点。为了充分吸引成人学生，增强其学习目的性和学习动机，本教材在选材和编排上充分考虑了成人的学习特点和心理，遵循趣味性、知识性和实用性相结合的原则，使整个学习过程实现以兴趣为导向、知识为线索、学有所用为目的的理想状况。

### 本教材具有以下特点：

1. 选材丰富。课文题材广泛，内容丰富，涉及英语国家的社会、文化、体育、文学、风土人情、科普知识等各个领域；既有文学作品，又有记叙文、说明文、议论文等语言风格不同的文章。同时，我们强调语言的规范性、实用性、趣味性和时代性。所选课文不仅语言规范，而且颇有文采，引人入胜，给人以启迪。

2. 注解详尽。介绍有关的文化背景、写作特点、篇章结构，同时提供难句译文、难点分析、词组及句型的使用等内容，为学生自主学习提供有利的条件。

3. 针对性强。课后练习的设计包含网络教育统考题型，所有练习都以帮助网络教育学生打好语言基础和提高语言应用能力为目的，针对网络教育学生的薄弱环节和实际需要，做到有的放矢。练习涉及本课的重点词汇与句型，使学生能够对本课知识举一反三，融会贯通。针对成人学生的特点，本教材注重抓基础，将应掌握的语法知识分单元逐步进行介绍，并设计练习帮助理解和巩固。

4. 注重阶段检测。考虑到学生在学完教材之后将参加高校网络教育公共基础课全国统一考试的实际需要，本教材除了在各单元设有一定量的类似大纲要求的考题形式的练习之外，还在第五单元和第十单元后安排了两套模拟测试题，以帮助学生逐步熟悉考试形式，对考试有所准备。

5. 开放式的自主学习设计。考虑到网络教育学生学习模式的特殊性，本教材注重学生自主学习的设计安排，建立开放式的自主学习框架，合理有效地引导学生逐步提高英语语言综合能力。

### 三、教材内容

本教材针对网络教育英语教学和学习的特殊性，以主题为依据划分单元，涵盖语言、文化、教育、习俗、体育、科技、社会等各个方面。本书共 10 个单元，供高升专阶段的学生使用。每个单元由五部分组成：

1. 背景信息 (Pre-reading)：介绍背景，导入主题；以文本介绍为主，旨在激活学生相关知识背景，激发学生学习兴趣。

2. 精读课文 (Intensive Reading)：课文 A (Text A)

本部分为语言认知、巩固和提高阶段，旨在从词、句、语篇等角度对学生进行读、写、译多方面的语言训练，帮助学生积累和运用与单元主题相关的词汇，着重培养学生的英语读、写能力。其中课文 A 又包括：

1) Text Learning：主课文，主要是语言输入文章，体现主题语汇；

2) Word Bank：包括 New Words、Phrases and Expressions 和 Proper Names 三个部分，列出课文 A 中的生词和常用短语；

3) Notes：详解课文 A 中出现的语言点及文化知识；

4) Text Comprehension：与课文 A 的篇章理解相关的练习，帮助学生从整体结构和细节上理解文章；

- 5) Vocabulary: 词汇扩展与练习, 包括构词法、词语辨析、介词、副词等;
- 6) Structure: 与课文 A 中出现的重要语法点相关的语言结构练习, 如句型转换;
- 7) Comprehensive Exercises: 综合练习, 包括完形填空、翻译等。

### 3. 泛读课文 (Extensive Reading): 课文 B (Text B)

1) Text Learning: 课文 B 与单元主题相关, 突出阅读技能的运用, 扩展学生对主题词汇的运用;

2) Word Bank: 包括 New Words、Phrases and Expressions 和 Proper Names 三个部分, 列出课文 B 中的生词和常用短语;

3) Notes: 详解课文 B 中出现的语言点及文化知识;

4) Exercises: 包括简答、理解性多项选择题、翻译等, 提高学生的阅读能力。

### 4. 泛读课文 (Extensive Reading): 课文 C (Text C)

1) Text Learning: 供学生赏析和背诵, 集中体现语言输入的文化性、知识性和鉴赏性;

2) Word Bank: 包括 New Words、Phrases and Expressions 和 Proper Names 三个部分, 列出课文 C 中的生词和常用短语;

3) Notes: 详解课文 C 中出现的语言点及文化知识。

### 5. 语言拓展 (Further Study)

本部分从多个方面拓展学生的语言运用能力, 其中包括:

1) Use of English: 针对网络考试大纲的要求, 分类介绍使用交际英语的知识, 设置相应练习题;

2) Grammar: 针对网络教育成人学生英语基础较弱的特点, 循序渐进地系统讲解主要语法知识, 并设置相应练习题;

3) Writing Skills: 针对写作训练, 详细讲解写作技巧和方法, 设置相应练习题。

## 四、使用说明

本教材可供网络学院高升专非英语专业大学生作为大学英语教程使用。本教程也为广大英语爱好者、自学者提供了一条系统补习英语基础知识, 快速提高英语读写能力, 全面掌握各项英语技能, 丰富欧美文化知识的捷径。

本书供网络教育高升专阶段大学英语教学使用。共 10 个单元, 在一年内完成。在课堂教学模式下每单元可安排 6~8 学时完成, 课堂教学主要讲授主课文和语言的重点、难点部分, 课文 B 和课文 C 部分由学生课外自主学习完成。

本教材在编写过程中, 从内容到形式都有不少新的尝试, 对本书所选用的文章的作者及出版社编者在此致以深切的谢意。由于编者水平有限, 虽经多次修改, 书中难免有疏漏、不妥之处, 诚望外语界专家、同仁和广大读者批评指正, 以便修订时改进。

编者  
2011 年 9 月

# 目 录



Unit 1	English Learning .....	(1)
Unit 2	Life .....	(34)
Unit 3	Festival .....	(69)
Unit 4	Friendship .....	(100)
Unit 5	Dreams .....	(127)
Test 1 .....		(155)
Unit 6	Culture .....	(164)
Unit 7	Travel .....	(190)
Unit 8	Sports .....	(214)
Unit 9	Love and Marriage .....	(241)
Unit 10	Online Life .....	(267)
Test 2 .....		(290)
Key to Exercises and Tests .....		(300)



# English Learning

## Part I Pre-reading

The development of English as a global language is one of the most remarkable phenomena of the late 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries. Through the global influence of native English speakers in cinema, airlines, broadcasting, science, and the Internet in recent decades, English is currently the most widely spoken and written language worldwide, with some 380 million native speakers. It seems that global English represents a new phase in which its main use around the world is between non-native speakers—a phase of its history which has only just begun and in which both the status and linguistic form of the language are rapidly developing.

### Questions

- 1) Why do you learn English?
- 2) Do you know some ways which can help you learn English well?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### Maintaining Progress in Your English Studies

1 Languages are for communication so if you always work alone on your lessons, you are denying yourself the opportunity to put language into use. Working in pairs and small groups



will give you more time to spend trying out new language skills. Don't worry if the teacher cannot hear and correct every mistake you make. Remember, mistakes disappear with time. Classes are a good way to meet other people who want to learn the same language as you, and you don't have to limit your contact to lesson times only. Why not meet after class and help one another with review and testing? You can compare notes on things you found difficult and share information about the materials you have found useful. Your friends can provide lots of ideas about different ways to learn as well as be sympathetic, supportive listeners when the going gets tough.

2 Maintaining motivation is critical for success in language learning, as we said before; you should be ready to take the rough with the smooth. During the course of your studies there may be periods when you'll experience negative feelings towards the language you are learning. These feelings will include: frustration, when your progress seems slow; uncertainty, when you don't fully understand things; annoyance, when you keep forgetting something simple; boredom when you have to do the same thing over and over again; and resentment, that everything has to be so complicated and that English can't work in the same way as Chinese.

3 Obviously we aren't trying to put you off learning English, but as these feelings are likely to appear at different times, it's best to be aware that they are quite normal and you won't be alone in feeling this way. Persevere. The feelings will pass and there will be much compensation along the way. Of course, at other times you'll feel satisfaction, when you see yourself making progress; interest, as you learn more about the ways in which language operates; amusement, when you come across a novel phrase or expression; stimulation, when you encounter new ways of thinking and talking about the world; and pride, in your growing ability to understand the new language and express your thoughts and feelings.

4 As you experiment and discover the ways in which you learn best, you will also feel a growing confidence in yourself and in your ability to learn successfully.

(405 words)

## New Words

progress	/prəu'gres/	<i>n.</i>	forward or onward movement; advance or development 前进; 进步; 进展
communicate	/kə'mju:nikeit/	<i>vi.</i>	(with) to exchange information or conversation with other people 交流, 沟通
communication	/kə'mju:ni'keiʃən/	<i>n.</i>	the act of communicating 交流, 沟通
deny	/di'nai/	<i>vt.</i>	refuse to give sb., or prevent sb. from having sth. (asked for or wanted) 拒不给予或阻止某人获得 (所求或所需之物)





compare	/kəm'peə/	v.	examine (people or things) to see how they are alike and how they are different 比较
comparison	/kəm'pærisn/	n.	the act of comparing 比较; 对比
information	/,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/	n.	facts told, heard or discovered (about sb. / sth.) 消息; 情报; 资料; 信息
provide	/prə'vaɪd/	vt.	supply; make available 供给; 提供
sympathetic	/,sɪmpə'θetɪk/	adj.	giving help, encouragement or sympathy 支持的, 给予帮助的; 同情的
smooth	/smu:ð/	a.	having an even surface without lumps, etc.; free from difficulties. Problems, etc. 光滑的, 平整的; 顺利的
period	/'piəriəd/	n.	amount of time; portion of time in the life of a person, nation or civilization; amount of time of a lesson at school (一段) 时间; 时期; 时代; 课时
negative	/'negətɪv/	adj.	expressing denial or refusal; indicating “no” or “not”; lacking in definite, constructive or helpful qualities or characteristics 否定的; 反面的; 消极的
include	/ɪn'klu:d/	vt.	have (sb./ sth.) as part of a whole 包括, 包含
feeling	/'fi:lɪŋ/	n.	ability to feel; emotion 感觉; 感情
frustration	/frʌs'treɪʃən/	n.	(state of) being frustrated; example of feeling frustrated 受挫; 挫折; 沮丧; 失望
uncertainty	/ʌn'sə:tənti/	n.	state of being uncertain 不确定, 无把握
annoyance	/ə'noɪəns/	n.	being annoyed 烦恼; 恼怒
boredom	/'bɔ:dəm/	n.	state of being bored 厌烦; 厌倦
resentment	/rɪ'zentmənt/	n.	state of resenting sb./sth. 憎恨
obvious	/'ɒbvɪəs/	adj.	easily seen, recognized or understood; clear 显然的; 明显的
likely	/'laɪkli/	adj.	probable 可能的
normal	/'nɔ:məl/	adj.	conforming to the standard; usual; regular (符合) 标准的; 通常的; 正常的
interest	/'ɪntərɪst/	n.	desire or willingness to know or learn (about sb./ sth.) 兴趣
persevere	/,pə:'si:vɪə/	v.	continue trying to do sth., esp. in spite of difficulty 坚持不懈; 锲而不舍
compensate	/'kɒmpenseɪt/	v.	give (sb.) sth. good to balance the bad effect of damage, loss, injury, etc. 补偿; 赔偿; 报偿; 报酬



operate	/'ɒpəreɪt/	v.	work, perform or function 工作; 运转; 运行; 起作用
amuse	/ə'mju:z/	vt.	make (sb.) laugh or feel happy; make time pass pleasantly for (sb.) 逗笑; 逗乐; 给...提供娱乐
novel	/'nɒvəl/	adj.	new and strange; of a kind not known before 新奇的; 新颖的
expression	/iks'preʃən/	n.	action or process of expressing; word or phrase 表达; 词语; 表达方式
stimulate	/'stimjuleɪt/	vt.	make more active or alert; arouse the interest and excitement of (sb.) 刺激; 激励; 激发(某人的)兴趣; 使兴奋
encounter	/ɪn'kaʊntə/	v./n.	meet (sb.), esp by chance; meet or experience (danger, difficulty, etc.) 意外遇见; 偶尔碰到; 遭到, 受到
thought	/θɔ:t/	n.	idea or opinion produced by thinking 想法, 见解
experiment	/ɪks'perɪmənt/	vi./n.	make an experiment 进行实验(或试验); test or trial done carefully in order to study what happens and gain new knowledge 实验; 试验
confidence	/'kɒnfɪdəns/	n.	belief in yourself 自信, 信心; the feeling that you can trust sb./sth. To be good, work well, or produce good results 信任

## Phrases and Expressions

put...into use	使用, 应用
in pairs	成对地, 成双地; 两个一组; 一次两个
try out	试用; 试
compare notes	交换意见
take the rough with the smooth	既能享受顺境, 又能承受逆境; 既能享乐也能吃苦; 好事坏事都能接受
put sb. off sth.	使某人对(做)某事失去兴趣
at other times	在别的时候
come across	偶然遇见; 碰上
keep doing sth.	坚持做某事; 不停地做某事
be likely to do	可能



## Notes

1. (Para. 1) Languages are for communication so if you always work alone on your lessons, you are denying yourself the opportunity to put language into use.

**deny** *vt.*

refuse to give sb., or prevent sb. from having sth. (asked for or wanted) 拒不给予或阻止某人获得 (所求或所需之物) 否认; 拒绝

e.g. He denied stealing my bike. 他否认偷了我的自行车。

She was angry at being denied the opportunity to see me.

因不准她见我, 她非常生气。

He denies himself nothing.

他对自己极为放纵。

**denial** *n.*

the act of denying 否认; 拒绝

● 搭配

**deny oneself sth.:** 自动放弃

**there is no denying the fact that...** 无可否认

**communicate** *vi.*

(with) to exchange information or conversation with other people 交流, 沟通; 表达思想, 情感

e.g. The police communicate with each other by radio.

警察通过无线电互相联络。

A politician must be able to communicate.

政治家必须善于表达自己的观点。

**communication** *n.*

act of communicating 传达; 交流; 通信

e.g. There is very little communication between them even though they have been married for ten years.

尽管他们已经结婚十年了, 他们之间的交流却很少。

**put ...into use**

使用, 运用

e.g. The new medicine will be put into use after this experiment.

本次实验后, 新药将投入使用。

- **参考译文:** 语言是用来进行交流的, 如果你一直是独自学习, 你就自动放弃了使用语言的机会。

2. (Para. 1) Working in pairs and small groups will give you more time to spend trying out new language skills.

● 短语

**in pairs**



成对地, 两个一组

e.g. The socks are only sold in pairs. 袜子只成对地出售。

**spend time on sth./ doing sth.**

花时间做……

e.g. You'd better spend more time on your English study.

你最好多花点时间在英语学习上。

I spent the whole morning finishing my housework.

我花了一上午的时间干家务活。

**try out sth.**

试用; 测试

e.g. The drug has not been tried out on humans yet.

这种药还没经过人体试验。

You can try out this young football player.

你们可以试用一下这个年轻的球员。

### ● 语法

本句的主语是动名词短语 Working in pairs and small groups。在英语中, 做主语的如果是动词短语, 就需要把动词变为动名词。第二段第一句中的“Maintaining motivation”也是同样的用法。

e.g. Swimming is my favorite sport.

游泳是我最喜爱的运动。

Doing part-time job properly is good to college students.

适当做些兼职对大学生有好处。

- **参考译文:** 两个人或一个小组, 在一起学习就会使你有更多的时间花在试用新学的语言上。

### 3. (Para. 1) Classes are a good way to meet other people who want to learn the same language as you, and you don't have to limit your contact to lesson times only.

**limit ...to...**

set a limit to sb. or sth. 限制在…范围内; 给某人/物设定界限

e.g. His parents limit his pocket money to 100 yuan in a month.

他的父母限制他一个月只能用 100 元的零花钱。

I shall limit myself to three aspects of the subject.

我仅探讨这一问题的三个方面。

### ● 语法

该句是由 and 引导的并列句, 在前半句中包含了由 who 引导的定语从句, 修饰先行词 people。Who 引导的定语从句只能修饰先行词为人的名词。定语从句在翻译时既可以译作定语, 也可以根据中文表达改变句型。

e.g. He is the man who pursues perfection in everything.

他是一个事事追求完美的人。

All the clerks in the company don't like the president who is too strict with them.



公司所有职员都不喜欢他们的总裁，因为他对员工太苛刻了。

- **参考译文：**上课是一种很好的方式，可以遇到别的与你一样想学某种语言的人，但你不必把你们的接触仅限于上课时间。

#### 4. (Para. 1) Why not meet after class and help one another with review and testing?

- **短语**

**help sb. with sth.**

帮助某人做某事

*e.g.* Can you help me with my maths?

你能帮我学数学吗？

- **句型**

Why not do sth.? 是 Why don't you do sth.? 的简略形式，表达说话人的建议。

*e.g.* It's so hot today, why not go swimming?

今天天气这么热，为什么不去游泳呢？

Why not come and sit beside me?

为什么不过来坐在我旁边呢？

- **参考译文：**为什么不能课后见面，在复习和测试方面互相帮助呢？

#### 5. (Para. 1) You can compare notes on things you found difficult and share information about the materials you have found useful.

本句中名词 things 和 materials 分别由两个定语从句修饰，省略了引导从句的关系代词 that。

**compare vt.**

examine (people or things) to see how they are alike and how they are different. 比较

*e.g.* Compare your writing with hers and you will find that hers is much better.

比较你和她的作文，你会发现她的作文要好得多。

- **参考译文：**你们可以就一些困难的地方交换意见，并就一些有用的资料互通信息。

#### 6. (Para. 1) Your friends can provide lots of ideas about different ways to learn as well as be sympathetic, supportive listeners when the going gets tough.

**provide vt.**

supply; make available 供给；提供

*e.g.* The management will provide food and drink.

管理部门将供应饮食。

**going n.**

the act or speed of travel or work 进展

*e.g.* We climbed the mountain in three hours, which was good going.

我们用三个小时就爬上山了，速度不慢。

- **短语**

**provide sb. with sth./provide sth. for sb.**

给某人提供某物

*e.g.* The firm provided me with a car.

公司给我一辆汽车。



We provided food for the hungry children.

我们为饥饿的孩子们提供食物。

as well as

也, 以及, 相当于连词, 可连接两个并列成分。

e.g. He grows flowers as well as vegetables.

他既种菜也种花。

She is a talented musician as well as being a writer.

他不但是作家还是个天才的音乐家。

- **参考译文:** 你的朋友不光可以在你的学习进展艰难时充满同情地听你倾诉, 给予你支持, 而且还可以提供许多不同的方法帮助你学习。

**7. (Para. 2) Maintaining motivation is critical for success in language learning, as we said before, you should be ready to take the rough with the smooth.**

*critical* adj.

very important, vital 至关重要的

e.g. Hard work is critical for your success.

勤奋是成功的关键。

*smooth* adj.

having an even surface without lumps, etc.; free from difficulties, problems, etc.

光滑的, 平整的; 顺利的

e.g. Her skin is as smooth as silk.

她的皮肤如丝绸般光滑。

Did you have a smooth journey?

旅途一切顺利吗?

take the rough with the smooth

好事坏事都能接受; 既能享乐也能吃苦

e.g. You have to take the rough with the smooth in life.

在生活中, 你必须既能享乐也能吃苦。

*be ready to do sth.*

准备好做

e.g. Are you ready to accept his invitation?

你准备接受他的邀请吗?

*succeed* vi.

(in sth./in doing sth.) achieve the desired end 成功, 达到目的

e.g. If at first you don't succeed, try, try again.

若一次不成功, 要再接再厉。

We succeeded in finishing our experiment before Friday.

我们在周五前顺利完成实验。

She has decided to succeed in life.

她决心要实现自己的人生目标。



● 拓展

**success n.** 成功

**successful adj.** 成功的

**successfully adv.** 成功地

- **参考译文：**保持学习的积极性是语言学习取得成功的关键，而且正如我们前面说到的，你应该准备好顺利和艰难都能承受。

**8. (Para. 2) During the course of your studies there may be periods when you'll experience negative feelings towards the language you are learning.**

**negative adj.**

expressing denial or refusal; indicating “no” or “not”; lacking in definite, constructive or helpful qualities or characteristics 否定的；反面的；消极的

e.g. She gave me a negative answer.

她给了我一个否定答复。

He has a very negative attitude to his work.

他的工作态度很消极。

**period n.**

amount of time; portion of time in the life of a person, nation or civilization; amount of time of a lesson at school (一段) 时间；时期；时代；课时

e.g. Childhood was the happiest period in my life.

童年是我一生中最快乐的时期。

I stayed there for a period of three days.

我在那儿待了三天。

● 语法

本句中，修饰 periods 的定语从句由关系副词 when 引导，相当于 in which。修饰 language 的关系代词 which/that 因为在定语从句中作宾语而省略掉了。

- **参考译文：**在你的学习过程中，可能会有一些时期你会对正在学习的语言产生一些消极的情绪。

**9. (Para. 2) These feelings will include: frustration, when your progress seems slow; uncertainty, when you don't fully understand things; annoyance, when you keep forgetting something simple; boredom when you have to do the same thing over and over again; and resentment, that everything has to be so complicated and that English can't work in the same way as Chinese.**

**include vt.**

have (sb./ sth.) as part of a whole 包括，包含

e.g. Your duty includes looking after your younger brother.

你的职责就是照看你的小弟弟。

The tour included a visit to a famous university.

旅游项目中包括参观一所名牌大学。

**including prep.**



介词, 包括在内

My hobbies are various, including singing, dancing, swimming and playing basketball.

我的爱好很广泛, 包括唱歌、跳舞、游泳和打篮球。

**keep doing sth.**

continue doing sth.; do sth. repeatedly 继续做某事, 反复做某事

e.g. How can I trust you if you keep lying to me?

你要是一直欺骗我, 我怎么相信你呢?

Keep talking among yourselves, I'll be back in a minute.

你们继续谈, 我一会儿就回来。

- **参考译文:** 这些情绪包括: 在你进步缓慢时感到沮丧; 在你对所学东西不能充分理解时感到毫无把握; 在你老是忘记一些简单东西时感到烦恼; 在你不得不反复做同一件事情时感到厌烦; 在样样东西都那么复杂、英语不能像汉语那样运用自如时感到怨恨。

**10. (Para. 3) Obviously we aren't trying to put you off learning English, but as these feelings are likely to appear at different times, it's best to be aware that they are quite normal and you won't be alone in feeling this way.**

**obviously adv.**

As can be clearly seen, plainly 显然, 明白地

**obvious adj.**

easily seen, clear 明显的

e.g. Obviously, she needs help.

显然, 她需要帮助。

It was obvious that the child had been badly treated.

那个孩子明显受过虐待。

- **短语**

**put sb. off sth./ doing sth.**

使某人对某事物失去兴趣、不再喜欢或倒了胃口

e.g. The accident put her off driving for life.

这次事故使她一辈子不愿再开车。

The incompetent teacher put her off maths.

那个没教学能力的老师使她对数学失去了兴趣。

**be likely to do/that**

be possible 可能

e.g. It is likely to rain this afternoon.

今天下午可能下雨。

It was likely that he cheated on English test.

英语测验时他可能作弊了。

**be aware that/of**

having knowledge of sb./sth. 知道, 明白, 意识到





e.g. Are you aware of the time?

你知道是什么时候了吗?

I'm well aware that very few jobs are available.

我很清楚工作职位非常少。

- **参考译文:** 我们显然不是要使你学习英语失去兴趣, 但是因为这些情绪可能会在不同时期出现, 所以最好要知道, 这些情绪是完全正常的, 有这些情绪的也并非只有你一人。

**11. (Para. 3) Of course, at other times you'll feel satisfaction, when you see yourself making progress; interest, as you learn more about the ways in which language operates; amusement, when you come across a novel phrase or expression; stimulation, when you encounter new ways of thinking and talking about the world; and pride, in your growing ability to understand the new language and express your thoughts and feelings.**

*at other times*

on other occasions 在别的时候

e.g. Foxes live in groups while they are growing up. At other times, they live alone.

狐狸在成长期群居, 在其他时候独居。

*interest n. /v.*

desire or willingness to know or learn (about sb./ sth.) 兴趣; cause sb. to to give one's attention to sth. 使感兴趣

e.g. Now he's grown up, he no longer takes interest in stamp collection.

他已经长大了, 对集邮不再感兴趣。

Having lost his job, he begun to interest himself in local voluntary work.

失业后他便开始关注当地的志愿工作了。

### ● 拓展

**interesting adj.** 有趣的, 引起兴趣的 (修饰物)

**interested adj.** (对某人/物) 感兴趣的, 关心的

**get/be interested in** 对……感兴趣

*operate v.*

work, perform or function 工作; 运转; 运行; 起作用

e.g. This machine operates day and night.

这台机器日夜运转。

The system operates in five countries.

有五个国家实施这种体制。

*operate vi. (on sb.)*

perform a surgical operation 动手术

e.g. The doctors decided to operate on her at once.

医生们决定马上给她动手术。

*operation n.* 工作; 运转; 运行; 起作用; 手术

*encounter v.*



meet (sb.), esp by chance; meet or experience (danger, difficulty, etc.) 意外遇见; 偶尔碰到; 遭到, 受到

e.g. He encountered an old friend in the street.

他在街上偶遇了一位老朋友。

I encountered many difficulties when I first started this job.

我刚开始工作时遇到很多困难。

**express** vt.

show or make known by words 表达, 表示

e.g. The guests expressed their thanks before leaving.

客人们临走前表示了谢意。

**expression** n.

action or process of expressing 表示, 表达; look on a face that shows a mood or feeling 神色, 表情

e.g. She gave expression to her sadness.

她流露出悲伤之情。

He entered the room with a happy expression.

他带着愉快的神情进了屋子。

### ● 短语

**make progress** 取得进步

**come across** meet by chance 偶然遇到

e.g. He has made great progress in English study.

他的英语学习取得了很大进步。

I came across an old friend in the street yesterday.

我昨天在街上遇到一位老朋友。

### ● 语法

在英语中, 一些动词如 hear, see, feel, watch, notice 等可跟省略 to 的不定式和分词短语作宾语补足语。不定式作宾补与现在分词作宾语补足语的区别在于: 现在分词强调动作正在发生, 而不定式指事情的全过程, 表示动作已经结束。

e.g. I heard someone crying in the next door.

我听到有人在隔壁哭。

We saw her enter the Grant Hotel.

我们看见她进了格兰特宾馆。

- **参考译文:** 当然, 在别的时候你也会感到: 满足, 在你看到自己取得进步时; 兴趣, 在你学会更多的语言运用方式时; 乐趣, 在你碰上一个新奇的短语或者表达方式时; 刺激, 在你意外地遇上一些新的思维和谈论世界的方式时; 自豪, 对自己在理解这种新的语言和表达自己的思想感情方面不断提高的能力感到自豪。

**12. (Para. 4) As you experiment and discover the ways in which you learn best, you will also feel a growing confidence in yourself and in your ability to learn successfully.**

**experiment** v./n. (on/upon sb/sth; with sth)



make an experiment 进行实验（或试验）；test or trial done carefully in order to study what happens and gain new knowledge 实验；试验

e.g. We experimented until we succeeded in mixing the right color.

我们不断进行实验，直到将所需颜色调配成功。

The researchers are repeating the experiment on rats.

研究人员用老鼠反复做该实验。

### ● 搭配

**Perform/carry out/conduct an experiment** 进行实验，试验

**confidence** n.

1) belief in yourself 自信，信心

e.g. Tom is a good student, but he lacks confidence in himself.

汤姆是个好学生，但不够自信。

2) the feeling that you can trust sb./sth. to be good, work well, or produce good results 信任

e.g. We should make our customers have confidence in our products.

我们应该让顾客信赖我们的产品。

### ● 搭配

**gain/acquire self-confidence** 获得自信

**have confidence in sb./sth.** 对……有信心

- **参考译文：**随着你不断试验并发现最佳的学习方法，你也会对自己和自己在学习上取得成功的能力感到越来越有信心。

## Text Comprehension

1. Read the following statements and decide whether they are True (T) or False (F) according to the text.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1) The purpose of language learning is to take part in all kinds of tests.

\_\_\_\_\_ 2) In English study, group work is helpful to the improvement of the learners' ability.

\_\_\_\_\_ 3) Classroom is the only place where you can study English well.

\_\_\_\_\_ 4) Sticking to your goal is very important to English study because you are sure to meet with various difficulties in the course of study.

\_\_\_\_\_ 5) English is a hard but rewarding work. When you make some progress in English study, you'll experience some good feelings.

2. Answer the following questions according to the text.

1) What does the writer suggest learners do to put language into use?

2) How can learners help each other in learning a language?

3) What is critical for success in language learning?

4) What negative feelings will a learner experience during the course of his or her studies?

5) When does a learner experience these negative feelings?

6) What should a learner do when these negative feelings appear? Why?



- 7) When does a learner feel satisfied, interested, amused, stimulated and proud?  
8) What does a learner feel when he discovers the ways in which he learns best?

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary

progress	deny	provide	include
obviously	likely	try out	express
thought	in pairs	put sb. off	come across

- 1) No one should be \_\_\_\_\_ a good education.  
2) He seems to be able to put complicated \_\_\_\_\_ into simple words.  
3) Eight people, \_\_\_\_\_ two women, were injured in the explosion.  
4) \_\_\_\_\_ he was very nervous, since for some minutes he just stood there, not knowing what to say.  
5) Children who are interested in learning are more \_\_\_\_\_ to do well in school than children who are not interested in learning.  
6) Although the boy spent every minute learning, he made little \_\_\_\_\_ in his studies.  
7) Group discussion \_\_\_\_\_ a good opportunity for us to practice oral English.  
8) She \_\_\_\_\_ her thanks by sending them a bunch of flowers.  
9) The scientists \_\_\_\_\_ the new medicine to see how well it works.  
10) Do the exercise alone and then discuss your answers \_\_\_\_\_.  
11) As we were having dinner at a restaurant we \_\_\_\_\_ an old friend we hadn't seen for ages.  
12) The fact that some people may disagree will not \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ doing what I think is right.
2. The suffixes -ence, -ance, -ity and -ness can be used to form nouns. Study the following models and complete the following table with appropriate words.

<b>Models:</b> confident—confidence	important—importance
shy—shyness	able—ability

Adjectives	Nouns	Adjectives	Nouns
intelligent			capability
diligent		friendly	
	absence		significance
	independence	tired	
possible			patience

### 3. Fill in each of the blanks with a suitable preposition or adverb.

- 1) The professor has been working \_\_\_\_ the book for two years.
- 2) He used to compare his girl friend's face \_\_\_\_ an apple.
- 3) The girl was obviously aware \_\_\_\_ her roommates' dislikes.
- 4) He takes pride \_\_\_\_ his own handsome look, while she is proud \_\_\_\_ her intelligence.
- 5) If you have a problem, tell the company about it \_\_\_\_ detail.
- 6) Will you be passing \_\_\_\_ the supermarket on your way home?
- 7) They're \_\_\_\_ vocation for the next two weeks.
- 8) The scientists are trying \_\_\_\_ the new medicine to see how well it works.

## Structure

### 1. Study the models and rewrite the following sentences.

**Model A:** likely, he, give up the high-paid job

He is likely to give up the high-paid job. / It is likely that he will give up the high-paid job.

**Model B:** see, I, the police, run after the thief, at that time

I saw the police running after the thief at that time.

- 1) our team, likely, win the game, tomorrow  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2) the teacher, likely, scold, you, for your carelessness, in the exam  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) the boy, notice, something unusual, happen to his mother  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4) feel, something cold, I, drop on my face  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) hear, quarrel, my parents, in the next door, last night, I  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 2. Study the model and complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English.

**Model:** \_\_\_\_\_ (看电影) is my favorite hobby.

**Seeing a film** is my favorite hobby.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ (环游世界) has become her dream.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (准时上班) has been the habit of his life.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (大声朗读) is very good to English learners.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (尊重他人) is a virtue (美德).
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (保持一种良好的心态) is beneficial (有益的) to people's health.



## Comprehensive Exercises

**1. Directions: There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A), B), C) and D). Choose the one that best completes the passage.**

How to love 1) \_\_\_\_\_ English? Talk to people 2) \_\_\_\_\_ English. This is a very simple method, but it is very 3) \_\_\_\_\_. You usually talk about things 4) \_\_\_\_\_ interest you. But the opposite is true, too. If you start talking about a boring subject, you will begin to get 5) \_\_\_\_\_ in it.

Imagine that you hate studying English. You have two 6) \_\_\_\_\_. you can tell everybody how much you are suffering 7) \_\_\_\_\_ you can tell those people about the things you've learned. If you choose the 8) \_\_\_\_\_ option, you will only feel worse. If you choose the second option, and start a conversation on the "boring" subject, you will begin to look at it 9) \_\_\_\_\_ a totally different way. Suddenly it will become a subject worth 10) \_\_\_\_\_ about-therefore, an interesting subject.

- |                   |               |                |                |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1) A) learn       | B) learning   | C) learned     | D) to learn    |
| 2) A) in          | B) for        | C) about       | D) by          |
| 3) A) effectively | B) effect     | C) effects     | D) effective   |
| 4) A) which       | B) what       | C) they        | D) how         |
| 5) A) interest    | B) interested | C) interesting | D) to interest |
| 6) A) thoughts    | B) methods    | C) options     | D) thinking    |
| 7) A) and         | B) either     | C) unless      | D) or          |
| 8) A) one         | B) second     | C) first       | D) two         |
| 9) A) with        | B) in         | C) on          | D) by          |
| 10) A) talking    | B) to talk    | C) talked      | D) talk        |

**2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in brackets.**

1) 我对此次面试 (interview) 没多大的信心。(have confidence in)

2) 只要你坚持锻炼, 你的身体会越来越越好。(keep doing sth.)

3) 玛丽花 30 分钟写完了那篇作文。(spend time on sth./ doing sth.)

4) 这家旅馆不提供早餐。(provide)

5) 三年后, 他如愿成为这家公司的老板。(succeed in sth./ doing sth.)

**Part III Extensive Reading (I)****Text B****Successful Language Learners**

1 Some people seem to have a knack (窍门) for learning languages. They can pick up new vocabulary, master rules of grammar, and learn to write in the new language more quickly than others. They do not seem to be any more intelligent, so what makes language learning much easier for them? Perhaps if we take a close look at these successful language learners we may discover a few of the techniques which make language learning easier for them.

2 First of all, successful language learners are independent learners. They do not depend on the book or the teacher; they discover their own way to learn the language. Instead of waiting for the teacher to explain, they try to find the patterns and the rules for themselves. They are good guessers who look for clues and form their own conclusions. When they guess wrong, they guess again. They try to learn from their mistakes.

3 Successful language learning is active learning. Therefore, successful learners do not wait for a chance to use the language; they look for chances. They find people who speak the language and ask these people to correct them when they make a mistake. They will try anything to communicate. They are not afraid to repeat what they hear or say strange things; they are willing to make mistakes and try again. When communication is difficult, they can accept information that is inexact or incomplete. It is more important for them to learn to think in the language than to know the meaning of every word.

4 Finally, successful language learners are learners with a purpose. They want to learn the language because they are interested in the language and the people who speak it. It is necessary for them to learn the language in order to communicate with these people and to learn from them. They find it easy to practice the language regularly because they want to use it for learning.

5 What kind of language learner are you? If you are a successful language learner, you probably have been learning independently, actively, and purposefully. On the other hand, if your language learning has been less than successful, you might do well to try some of the techniques mentioned above.

(370 words)

**New Words**

master	/ˈmɑːstə/	v.	gain control of; 控制 gain considerable knowledge of or skill in 掌握; 精通
--------	-----------	----	---

vocabulary	/və'kæbjuləri/	<i>n.</i>	total number of words that make up a language 词汇
grammar	/'græmə/	<i>n.</i>	(study or science of) rules for forming words and combining into sentences 语法, 语法学
intelligent	/in'telidʒənt/	<i>adj.</i>	Having or showing intelligence 聪明的, 有才智的
discover	/dis'kʌvə/	<i>vt.</i>	to find sth. (existing but not known before) 发现 (已存在但尚未知道的事); to find out (a fact, or the answer to a question) 找到 (事实或答案); 发现
technique	/tek'ni:k/	<i>n.</i>	method of doing or performing sth., esp in the arts or science 技术, 方法, 手段
depend	/di'pend/	<i>v.</i>	(on/upon) believe that sb./sth. will be reliable 相信某人/某物可靠; 依赖
independent	/,indi'pendənt/	<i>n.</i>	(of sb./sth.) not dependent on sb./sth. 独立的, 自主的, 自立的
instead	/in'sted/	<i>adv.</i>	as an alternative or replacement 代替, 更换
clue	/klu:/	<i>n.</i>	线索
inexact	/,inɪg'zækt/	<i>a.</i>	not exact 不准确的
incomplete	/,ɪnkəm'pli:t/	<i>a.</i>	not complete 不完整的, 不完全的
purpose	/'pə:pəs/	<i>n.</i>	thing that one intends to do, get, be etc.; intention 目的, 意图
purposefully	/'pə:pəsfuli/	<i>adv.</i>	with determination or will-power 坚定地, 果断地, 有毅力地
regular	/'regjulə/	<i>adj.</i>	(esp attrib 尤作定语) happening, coming or done repeatedly at times or places which are the same distance apart 有规律的, 定期的, 定时的

## Phrases and Expressions

pick up	捡起, 学会
depend on	依靠, 依赖
take a...look at	看一看
instead of	而不是, 代替
learn from	从……中学会
make a mistake	犯错误
be afraid to do sth.	害怕做
be willing to do sth.	愿意做
(on the one hand) on the other hand	(一方面) ……另一方面; 相反





## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) They can pick up new vocabulary, master rules of grammar, and learn to write in the new language more quickly than others.

**pick up** 捡起; 得到, 学会

e.g. Pick up the box by the handles.

提箱子时抓住把手。

Where did you pick up your excellent English?

你从哪里学到那么好的英语?

**master**

n. a man in control of people, things or animals 主人; 雇主; male teacher 男教师; a man of great skill in art or work with the hands 大师; 师傅, 能手

vt. to gain control over or learn thoroughly 控制; 掌握; 精通

e.g. He is the master of the house.

他是一家之主。

The painting is the work of a master.

这幅画是一位艺术大师的作品。

It takes years to master a new language.

要花多年时间才能掌握一门新语言。

● 参考译文: 他们比别人更快地学会新的词汇、掌握语法规则、学会用新学的语言写作。

### 2. (Para. 1) Perhaps if we take a close look at these successful language learners we may discover a few of the techniques which make language learning easier for them.

**discover** vt.

to find sth. (existing but not known before) 发现 (已存在但尚未知道的事);

to find out (a fact, or the answer to a question) 找到 (事实或答案); 发现

e.g. Columbus discovered America in 1492. 哥伦布于 1492 年发现了美洲。

Did you ever discover who sent you the flowers?

你找到是谁送你花了吗?

Scientists have discovered that this disease is carried by rats.

科学家发现这种病是由老鼠传播的。

**discovery** n.

the event of discovering 发现, 揭示; something discovered 发现的东西

e.g. The discovery of oil on their land made the family rich.

这一家因在他们家的土地上发现了石油而富了起来。

His father has ever made an important scientific discovery.

他的父亲曾做出过重大的科学发现。

**technique** n.

method of doing or performing sth., esp in the arts or science (做事的具体) 技术, 方法, 手段

e.g. He has mastered different techniques of photography (摄影), 他掌握了各种摄影技术。



**technology** *n.*

the branch of knowledge dealing with scientific and industrial methods and their practical use in industry 强调工业技术

The development of the steam engine was a great technological advance.

蒸汽机的发明是工业技术上的巨大进步。

- **参考译文:** 如果我们仔细观察一下这些成功的语言学习者, 我们也许能发现一些有助于他们学习语言的技巧。

**3. (Para. 2) First of all, successful language learners are independent learners. They do not depend on the book or the teacher; they discover their own way to learn the language. Instead of waiting for the teacher to explain, they try to find the patterns and the rules for themselves.**

**depend** *v. (on)*

to trust 信任; 依赖 to be supported by 靠……养活; to vary according to 视……而定

e.g. I depend on the map, but it was wrong.

我靠的是这张地图, 但地图错了。

His family depends on him.

他的家靠他养活。

Whether the game will be played depends on the weather.

比赛是否进行依天气而定。

### ● 拓展

**dependent** *adj.* 依赖的, 依靠的

**dependable** *adj.* 可靠的

**dependence** *n.* 依赖, 依靠

**independent** *adj.* 独立的, 自立的

**independence** *n.* 独立

**be independent of** 不依赖, 独立于

e.g. She has been independent of her parents since she entered the college.

自从上大学以后她就不再靠父母了。

**instead** *adv.*

in place of that 代替, 更换

e.g. She never studies, instead, she plays tennis all day.

她从来不念书, 而是整天打网球。

It's too wet to walk, so we'll go swimming instead.

路上泥水太多, 我们改去游泳吧。

**instead of**

in place of 代替

e.g. I should be at school instead of lying here in bed.

我应该去上学, 而不应该躺在这里睡大觉。

Will you go to the party instead of me?



你能替我去参加晚会吗？

- **参考译文：**首先，成功的语言学习者是独立的学习者。他们不依赖书本或老师；他们寻找自己学习语言的方法。他们自己寻找句型和规则，而不是等着老师解释。

**4. (Para. 3) They are not afraid to repeat what they hear or say strange things; they are willing to make mistakes and try again. When communication is difficult, they can accept information that is inexact or incomplete. It is more important for them to learn to think in the language than to know the meaning of every word.**

*be afraid of/ that/ to do sth.* 害怕，恐怕，担心

e.g. Don't be afraid of the dog.

不要怕那只狗。

I'm afraid that I have broken your pen.

恐怕我把你的钢笔弄坏了。

I'm not afraid to point out your mistakes.

我不怕指出你的错误。

*be willing to do sth.* 愿意做

e.g. All the children are willing to help the homeless boy.

所有的孩子都愿意帮助这个无家可归的男孩。

● **语法**

**It is (more) important for sb. to do sth. (than to do)** “It”引导的形式主语句

e.g. It is important for us to help each other when in trouble.

遇到困难时，互相帮助很重要。

It is more important for you to study hard regularly than to stay up studying before exam.

对你而言，平时努力学习比考前熬夜要重要得多。

- **参考译文：**他们不怕跟着别人学舌，也不怕说一些莫名其妙的话；他们愿意犯错误，愿意再尝试。当交流困难时，他们能接受不准确或不完整的信息。对他们而言，学会用哪种语言思考比知道每个单词的意思更重要。

**5. (Para. 4) It is necessary for them to learn the language in order to communicate with these people and to learn from them. They find it easy to practice the language regularly because they want to use it for learning.**

*learn from* 向……学习

e.g. We can learn much more from our failures than from our successes.

我们从失败中学到的东西比从成功中学到的东西要多得多。

● **语法 “It” 引导的形式主语和形式宾语句**

**It is necessary for sb. to do sth.** 对某人来说做某事很有必要

e.g. It is necessary for the students to learn some ABC before taking this course.

学生修这门课前必须先学一些基础知识。

**find it adj. to do sth.** 发现做某事怎么样

e.g. Three months later, I found it not so difficult to communicate with the local people.

三个月后，我发现与当地人交流不是那么难了。



- 参考译文: 为了和这些人交流, 向他们学习, 他们必须学会那种语言。他们发现经常练习使用那种语言并不难, 因为他们想用它来学习。

6. (Para. 5) If you are a successful language learner, you probably have been learning independently, actively, and purposefully. On the other hand, if your language learning has been less than successful, you might do well to try some of the techniques mentioned above.

*(on the one hand), on the other hand*

(一方面), 另一方面; 反过来

e.g. On the one hand this job doesn't pay very much, but on the other (hand) I can't get another one.

一方面这份工作工资不高, 但从另一方面来说我找不到另外的工作。

It rarely rains in the desert, but on the other hand it rains a lot in the coast areas.

沙漠里很少下雨, 相反, 沿海地区却雨量充沛。

- 参考译文: 如果你是个成功的语言学习者, 你很可能一直就在独立地、积极地、目的明确地学习。反过来, 如果你的语言学习不是那么成功, 你试试上面提到的这些技巧也许会取得成功。

## Exercises

1. Choose the best answer for each of the following multiple choice questions according to the text.

- 1) In the sentence "Some people seem to have a knack for learning languages", the word "knack" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. purpose  
B. ability  
C. interest  
D. basis
- 2) Some people learn languages more successfully than others because they learn \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. independently  
B. actively  
C. purposefully  
D. all of the above
- 3) It can be learned from the text that successful language learners \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. are more intelligent than others  
B. master rules of grammar more quickly  
C. write in the language better than others  
D. have a larger vocabulary
- 4) What does an independent learner do? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. He waits for the teacher to explain  
B. He corrects every mistake he has made



- C. He never guesses wrong  
D. He finds the patterns and the rules for himself
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ is the most important for active learners.  
A. Thinking in the language they are learning  
B. Knowing the meaning of every word  
C. Understanding information that is inexact or incomplete  
D. Correcting mistakes
- 6) Which of the following is NOT true about active learners? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. They will repeat what they hear  
B. They are willing to make mistakes  
C. They will not give up when communication is difficult  
D. They never communicate with each other in the language they are learning
- 7) For what purpose do some people learn a foreign language successfully? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. They want to go abroad  
B. They want to communicate with people who speak the language  
C. They want to be more successful than others  
D. They want to use the language regularly
- 8) The purpose of the writer is to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. show that some people are born good at learning a foreign language  
B. explain why some people find it easy to practice using the foreign language  
C. introduce some techniques that make language learning easier  
D. help the reader find out what kind of language learner he or she is
- 2. Complete the following sentences by using the words in brackets to form appropriate phrases you have learned in this text.**
- 1) It is easier for the children to \_\_\_\_\_ a foreign language than the adults do. (pick)  
2) Mary tends to \_\_\_\_\_ her father while making any decision. (depend)  
3) You are 18 years old. It's time for you to \_\_\_\_\_ your family. (independent)  
4) \_\_\_\_\_ going to the cinema, I stayed at home looking after my niece last night. (instead)  
5) She \_\_\_\_\_ ask her father for advice because he is too strict (严厉的). (afraid)  
6) \_\_\_\_\_ these books, and you can take whatever you like. (look)  
7) He \_\_\_\_\_ many \_\_\_\_\_ in his writing. (mistake)  
8) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ join our club? (willing)
- 3. Translate the following paragraphs into Chinese.**

Finally, successful language learners are learners with a purpose. They want to learn the language because they are interested in the language and the people who speak it. It is necessary for them to learn the language in order to communicate with these people and to learn from them. They find it easy to practice the language regularly because they want to use it for learning.



## Part IV Extensive Reading (II)

## Text C

### English Learning: passion and methods make Success

1 You need two things to learn English well—passion and effective learning methods. Passion makes you want to learn English; the learning methods only tell you how to do it faster.

2 Learning English will be easier for you if you love learning English. It will be easier for you to remember new words and grammar structures. It's because the brain more easily remembers information on a subject that you like. But when you don't feel like learning English, here are some things you can do.

3 Remember that you already know some English. That's a big success! Now it's time for more successes. Remember there is a lot that you don't know. You probably can't understand English-language TV, read books in English, talk to native speakers easily, and write letters without mistakes. It's time to start using powerful methods of effective learning. It's time to gain an impressive knowledge of English. Try to find your weak areas and work in them.

4 Use your English whenever you can. You can keep a diary in English; you can read interesting books in English; or you can find a friend who is learning English, at a similar level of skill to yourself, to talk about English with. Learning English requires action. You may know all the learning tips, but if you don't start doing things, you will achieve nothing.

(235 words)

### New Words

passion	/'pæʃən/	<i>n.</i>	strong feeling, eg of hate, love or anger 强烈的情感, 如恨、爱、怒
effective	/i'fektiv/	<i>adj.</i>	having an effect; producing the intended results 有效的; 产生预期效果的

subject	/ˈsʌbdʒɪkt/	<i>n.</i>	topic, theme; person or thing that is being discussed or described (in speech or writing) or represented, eg in a painting 话题，主题；对象
native	/ˈneɪtɪv/	<i>adj.</i>	associated with the place and circumstances of one's birth 出生地的；与出生地相关的
impressive	/ɪmˈpresɪv/	<i>adj.</i>	having a strong effect on sb., esp. through size, grandeur, or importance 给人印象深刻的（尤指巨大、壮观或重要）
similar	/ˈsɪmɪlə/	<i>adj.</i>	(to sb./sth.) resembling sb./sth. but not the same; alike 相似的，类似的
require	/rɪˈkwaɪə/	<i>vt.</i>	need; depend on sb./sth. for success, fulfillment, etc. 需要；有赖于某人/某物
achieve	/əˈtʃiːv/	<i>vt.</i>	gain or reach sth., usu by effort, skill, or courage, etc.; (通常藉努力、技巧、勇气等) 获得或达到（某物） get sth. done 实现，完成

Phrases and Expressions

feel like sth./doing sth.	想要某物/做某事
It's time for sth./ to do sth.	该做……了

Notes

1. (Para. 1) You need two things to learn English well—passion and effective learning methods.

*passion* *n.*

strong feeling, eg of hate, love or anger 强烈的情感，如恨、爱、怒

e.g. She argued with great passion.

她争论时情绪激动。

He has a strong passion for tennis.

他酷爱网球。

*effective* *adj.*

having an effect; producing the intended results 有效的；产生预期效果的

e.g. The government should take effective measures to reduce unemployment.

政府应该采取有效措施减少失业。

● 拓展

**effectively** *adv.* 有效地；实际上

**effect** *n.* (on sb./sth.) 效应；结果，后果

**have an effect on sb./sth.** 影响



**in effect** 实际上, 事实上

- **参考译文:** 学好英语你需要两样东西: 热情和有效的学习方法。

**2. (Para. 2) It will be easier for you to remember new words and grammar structures.**

该句中 It 作形式主语, 真正的主语是动词不定式 to remember new words and grammar structures。除了动词不定式, that 引导的从句做主语时, 也可用此句型。

*e.g.* To close the window will make the room warmer.

——It will make the room warmer to close the window.

That she might adopt a homeless child made him unhappy.

——It made him unhappy that she might adopt a homeless child.

- **参考译文:** 记住新单词和语法结构对你来说会更容易。

**3. (Para. 2) But when you don't feel like learning English, here are some things you can do.**

*feel like sth. /doing sth.*

think that one would like (to do/have) sth.; want (to do ) sth. 想要(做)某事物

*e.g.* I feel like (having) a drink.

我想喝点酒。

We'll go for a walk if you feel like it.

你愿意的话, 咱们就去散散步。

**4. (Para. 4).....at a similar level of skill to yourself, to talk about English with.**

*similar adj. (to sb./sth.)*

resembling sb./sth. but not the same; alike 相似的, 类似的

*e.g.* The brothers look very similar.

他们兄弟看上去很相似。

Gold is similar in color to brass.

金与黄铜的颜色相似。

- **拓展**

**similarity** *n.* 相似性

**similarly** *adv.* 相似地

**5. (Para. 4) Learning English requires action. You may know all the learning tips, but if you don't start doing things, you will achieve nothing .**

*require v.*

need; depend on sb./sth. for success, fulfillment, etc.需要; 有赖于某人/某物

*e.g.* We require extra help.

我们需要额外的帮助。

The teacher requires us to finish homework in time.

老师要求我们及时完成家庭作业。

- **拓展**

**requirement** *n.* 需要, 要求

**require, request** 要求

**require** 强调主观或强制性要求





e.g. I have done all that is required by law.

我已照法律规定做好一切。

**request** (口头或书面的) 要求, 尤指请求某人做某事

e.g. I requested him to help me.

我请求他帮我。

All I requested of you was you came early.

我只要求你早点来。

**achieve** vt.

gain or reach sth., usu by effort, skill, or courage, etc.; (通常藉努力、技巧、勇气等) 获得或达到 (某物) get sth. done 实现, 完成

e.g. We have achieved success through efforts.

我们通过努力取得了成功。

I've achieved only half of what my mother had hoped me to do.

我只完成了妈妈一半的心愿。

**achievement** n. 成就, 成绩; 实现

- **参考译文:** 学英语需要行动。你也许了解有关英语学习的各种建议和方法, 但是如果你不开始行动, 终将一事无成。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 问候与介绍

#### Greetings and Introduction

中国人与以英语为母语国家的人们在日常生活中都避免不了相互问候和经常参加各类聚会、晚会等社交活动。在这些活动中总会遇到一些不认识的人, 自我介绍或相互介绍显得非常重要。由于中英文化存在差异, 掌握一些典型的英语常用语句会有助于跨文化交际的顺利进行 (破折号后面为应答语)。

#### Key Sentences (Greetings/responses)

☆ Hello/Hi/Good morning (afternoon, evening, night)

——Hello/Hi/Good morning (afternoon, evening, night)

☆ How do you do? (用于初次见面)

——How do you do?



✧ Nice to meet you!

——Nice to meet you, too.

✧ How's it going? / How are you doing? / How are you? (用于熟人/朋友之间)

——I'm fine (OK), thank you. / Fine, thanks. / Very well / Not bad, thanks. And you?

✧ How are you getting on these days/ with your study?

——Fine, / Very well, / Not bad, / I'm doing great, thanks.

✧ How's life?

——Same as ever. / No complaints. / Not too bad. / Just so-so.

✧ How's everything going?

——Everything is all right. / Wonderful. / Things couldn't be better. / Terrible. / Not bad.

✧ Haven't seen you for ages!

——Great to see you again and how are you?

✧ How nice to meet you! / It's nice meeting you!

✧ Glad/ Pleased/Happy/Nice to meet you here again.

✧ Fancy seeing you here. It's a small world!

✧ I hope all goes well with you.

✧ Happy New Year!

——Happy New Year/ The same to you!

✧ Merry Christmas!

——Merry Christmas!/ You too.

✧ Congratulations!

——Thanks a lot!

### Key Sentences (introduction/responses)

✧ May I introduce myself to you? I'm Jane.

Allow me to introduce myself. My name is Jane.

I don't think we've met before. I'm Jane.

How do you do? I'm Jane.

——Nice / Pleased / Glad / Honored to meet you, Jane!



✧ I'd like to introduce Mary to you. / May I introduce Mary to you?

—Nice / Pleased / Glad / Honored to meet you, Mary!

✧ Alice, this is Miss Singer, our monitor.

—Nice / Pleased / Glad / Honored to meet you!

✧ Alice, I'd like you to meet Kate. / Let me introduce you to Kate.

Alice, you don't know Kate, do you?

Alice, come and meet my friend Kate!

—Nice / Pleased / Glad / Honored to meet you!

✧ May I have your name please?

—Alice.

✧ Mrs. Webster, may I introduce my boss, Mr. White?

—How do you do? I'm pleased to meet you, Mrs. Webster.

✧ Alice, this is my husband Jack. Jack, this is my friend Alice.

—Nice / Pleased / Glad / Honored to meet you!

### Practice

1) — How do you do? Glad to meet you.

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Fine. How are you?

B. How do you do? Glad to meet you, too.

C. How are you? Thank you!

D. Nice. How are you?

2) — How was your trip to London, Jane?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Oh, wonderful indeed.

B. I went there alone.

C. The guide showed me the way.

D. By plane and by bus.

3) —How do you do?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. I am good.

B. Fine, thanks. And you?

C. How do you do?

D. How are you?

4) —Hi, Mary. How's it going?

— \_\_\_\_\_

—Not bad.

A. It's OK. How about you?

B. Going well

C. Not bad.

D. I'm fine, thank you.

5) —Jane, I'd like you to meet Philip. He is the leader of our team.



—  
A. It is so good.

B. Oh, I'm happy.

C. Nice to meet you.

D. Good!

6) Mary: Jack, this is my friend Paul. \_\_\_\_\_

Jack: Glad to see you.

Paul: Same here.

A. With my pleasure.

B. It's my pleasure.

C. It is so good.

D. Paul, this is Jack.

7) —Allow me to introduce myself. I'm Lisa Smith.

—  
A. It's an honor.

B. Pleased to meet you.

C. I feel very lucky.

D. It's my pleasure.

8) — May I know your name, please?

—  
A. I'd rather not.

B. Yes, you may.

C. Jane White.

D. No, please don't.

## Grammar

### 词类和句子成分

### Parts of Speech and Sentence Element

#### 一、词类 (Parts of Speech)

英语中的词可根据词义、句法作用和形式特征, 分为十大类, 称为**词类**, 它们是:

词 类	英 语 名 称	作 用	例 词
名词	Noun ( <i>n.</i> )	人或事物的名称	girl, history
代词	Pronoun ( <i>pron.</i> )	代替名词、数词等	they, many
数词	Numeral ( <i>num.</i> )	表示数目或顺序	nine, third
形容词	Adjective ( <i>adj.</i> )	表示人或事物的特征	brave, small
动词	Verb ( <i>v.</i> )	表示动作或状态	hear, know
副词	Adverb ( <i>adv.</i> )	表示动作特征或性状特征	nicely, very
冠词	Article ( <i>art.</i> )	用在名词前, 帮助说明其意义	a(n), the
介词	Preposition ( <i>prep.</i> )	用在名词、代词前说明与别的词的关系	for, from
连词	Conjunction ( <i>conj.</i> )	用来连接词与词或句与句	and, if
感叹词	Interjection ( <i>interj.</i> )	表示说话时的感情或口气	oh, ah



在这十类词类中，前六种可以在句子中独立担任成分。如名词可用作主语、宾语等，动词可用作谓语等，成为**实义词** (Notional Words)。介词、连词、冠词都不能独立在句子中担任成分，成为**虚词** (Form Words)。感叹词一般不构成句子的成分，可以看作特殊的一类。除了这十大类之外，还有表示肯定的 *yes* 与否定的 *no*，还有不定式前的小品词 (Particle) *to*。实义词大多数在句子中都重读，只有助动词、情态动词和动词 *be* 及人称代词在某些情况下弱读，而虚词一般都不重读。

## 二、句子成分 (Sentence Elements)

英语中主要有以下句子成分：

- 1) **主语 (Subject)** —— 是一句话的中心，整句话都谈它的情况：

*My sister* is a nurse. 我姐姐是护士。

*Her room* is on the fifth floor. 她的房间在 5 楼。

- 2) **谓语 (Predicate)** —— 是主语的主要情况，可表示动作，也可表示状态：

She *works* in a hospital. 她在一家医院工作。(动作)

She *knows* a little English. 她懂一点英语。(状态)

- 3) **宾语 (Object)** —— 表示动作的承受者，也可表示动作的结果：

Everybody likes *her*. 人人都喜欢她。(动作承受者)

She is writing *a letter* now. 她在写信。(动作的结果)

- 4) **表语 (Predicative)** —— 和系动词一道构成谓语：

She *is a hard-working girl*. 她是一个工作认真的姑娘。

- 5) **定语 (Attribute)** —— 修饰名词、代词等：

*Her hospital* isn't very big. 她的医院不大。(修饰名词)

But everyone *in the hospital* works very hard.

但是医院里人人工作都很努力。(修饰代词)

- 6) **状语 (Adverbial)** —— 修饰动词、形容词或副词：

She goes to work *very early*. 她每天很早上班。(修饰动词，*very* 修饰副词)

She feels *very happy*. 她感到很开心。(修饰形容词)

此外，还有**同位语 (Appositive)**、**插入语 (Parenthesis)** 以及**呼语 (Vocative)**：

This is my sister *Mary*. 这是我妹妹玛丽。(作 *my sister* 的同位语)

*Mary is a good girl*, *they say*. 他们说玛丽是个好姑娘。(作插入语)

Sit down, *Mary*. 玛丽，请坐。(作呼语)

### Exercise

**Point out the parts of speech and the sentence elements of the italicized words according to the requirement given in the brackets.**

- 1) *Many people believe* that eye *contact* is a good test of honesty. (parts of speech)
- 2) Watch *an Arab and an Englishman in conversation*. (parts of speech)
- 3) After many experiments, *however*, a number of experts have found out *that* good liars *can* make false eye contact. (parts of speech)

- 4) *Body language* is a *quiet, secret, and powerful* means of communication. (sentence element)
- 5) *Body language serves* a variety of *purposes*. (sentence element)
- 6) This is *particularly* important for successful cross-cultural communication. (sentence element)

Writing Skills

标点符号

Punctuation Marks

标点符号是一种连接性手段，也是一种语篇逻辑纽带，对写作有较强的架构释义作用，用以体现文章内容的内在逻辑语义关系。写作除了遣词造句，更要借助标点符号准确表达意思。所以文章应该是得体的语言和恰当的符号所组成的统一整体。英语中常用的标点符号及其主要用法如下：

名 称	用 途	备 注
逗号（Comma）	表示句子中的停顿	
	在并列句中连接两个形式独立但语义相关的句子	He was tired, so he took a rest.
	在句中引出说话人	“Sit down please,” he said.
	排列三个或三个以上的并列成分	I like reading, dancing, and singing.
	表示插入语成分	Paul, the designer, was fired.
	写日期时，如顺序是月-日-年，在日和年之间加逗号(如次序是日-月-年则不加逗号)	July 30, 2011
句号（full stop/period）	表示一个句子的结束	I finished my homework on time.
问号（Question Mark）	表示直接疑问句	Would you help me?
感叹号（Exclamation Mark）	表示惊讶、兴奋等情绪	How pretty she is!
撇号（Apostrophe）	表示所有关系（注意：对于复数形式的名词的所有关系，其后不加“s”）	the girl’s bike the girls’ bikes
	助动词、情态动词和系动词与not的缩写	don’t, doesn’t, didn’t, isn’t, wasn’t, aren’t, weren’t, can’t, needn’t, mustn’t, won’t
引号（Quotation Marks）	直接引出某人说的话	He said, “I’ll do it.”
	文章、歌曲等的标题	Have you read Lao She’s “Tea House” ?

续表

名 称	用 途	备 注
引号（Quotation Marks）	与其他符号配合使用时：1）句号和逗号放在引号之内；2）冒号和分号放在引号之外；3）破折号、问号和感叹号，如只是与引语有关，放在引号内；如与整个句子有关，则放在引号之外	Shakespeare said: “ Neither a borrower nor a lender be.” “And may I ask—” said Xiao Wu; “but I guess it’s better for you to ask about it.”
冒号（Colon）	表示列举或举例	They are: TV, radio and DVD.
	表示解释	He is here: He is the thief.
	引出一个较长的引语	Bacon said: “Reading makes a full man…”
分号（Semicolon）	连接两个语义上紧密相关的句子或短语	It won’t last long; it is too weak.
	和逗号一起使用表示举例	She put some important articles in her bag, including an MP3, a gift from her father; a necklace, a gift from her mother; and a CD player, a gift from her boyfriend.
破折号（Dash）	引出总结	Cereals, fruits, and vegetables — these are daily food.
	引出解释	How lucky the girls nowadays are! —They can go anywhere, say anything.
	表示某人在说话过程中被打断	I think so, but—
连字符（Hyphen）	连接两个或多个单词	Bad-tempered, a five-year-old girl
	连接前缀与词根	Post-war, anti-terrorism
	在数字中使用	Twenty-three, fifty-nine
圆括号（Parentheses）	表示插入性的、补充性的或注释性的词语	WHO (World Health Organization) attached importance to this event.

Exercise

Put in the correct punctuation marks. Remember to use capital letters where necessary.

What are the marks of this group of people first of all it is defined by what its members have cell phones washing machines microwave ovens computers cars homes and vacations but this group is not only marked by material things a psychological independence and carefree optimism is also present middle-aged successful company presidents young professionals and even college students are optimistic expecting the best in their future.

# Life

## Part I Pre-reading

Sometimes people come into your life and later you know that they are meant to be there, to serve some sort of purpose to teach you a lesson or to help you figure out who you are or who you want to become.

Sometimes things happen to you that may seem horrible, painful, and unfair at first, but later you may find that without overcoming these obstacles you would have never realized your potential and strength.

Illness, injury and failure all occur to test the limits of your soul. Without these small tests, life would be like a smoothly paved, straight, flat road to nowhere. It would be safe and comfortable, but dull and pointless.

### Questions

- 1) What do you think is important in your life?
- 2) What are the difficulties you have experienced in your life? How did you overcome them?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### College - A Transition Point in My Life

1 When I first entered college as a freshman, I was afraid that I was not able to do well in my studies. I was afraid of being off by myself, away from my family for the first time. Here I



was surrounded by people I did not know and who did not know me. I would have to make friends with them and perhaps also compete with them for grades in courses I would take. Were they smarter than I was? Could I keep up with them? Would they accept me?

2 I soon learned that my life was now up to me. I had to set a study program if I wanted to succeed in my courses. I had to regulate the time I spent studying and the time I spent socializing. I had to decide when to go to bed, when and what to eat, when and what to drink, and with whom to be friendly. These questions I had to answer for myself. At first, life was a bit difficult. I made mistakes in how I used my time. I spent too much time making friends. I also made some mistakes in how I chose my first friends in college.

3 Shortly, however, I had my life under control. I managed to go to class on time, do my first assignments and hand them in, and pass my first exams with fairly good grades. In addition, I made a few friends with whom I felt comfortable and with whom I could share my fears. I set up a routine that was really my own — a routine that met my needs.

4 As a result, I began to look upon myself from a different perspective. I began to see myself as a person responsible for myself and responsible for my friends and family. It felt good to make my own decisions and see those decisions turn out to be wise ones. I guess that this is all part of what people call “growing up”.

5 What did life have in store for me? At that stage in my life, I really was not certain where I would ultimately go in life and what I would do with the years ahead of me. But I knew that I would be able to handle what was ahead because I had successfully jumped this important hurdle in my life. I had made the transition from a person dependent on my family for emotional support to a person who was responsible for myself.

(429 words)

## New Words

transition	/træn'ziʃən/	<i>n.</i>	(instance of) changing from one state or condition to another 过渡；转变
enter	/'entə/	<i>vt.</i>	go or come into ( a place) 进入
freshman	/'freʃmən/	<i>n.</i>	a student in the first year of high school or university (中学或大学) 一年级学生
surround	/sə'raund/	<i>vt.</i>	be or move into position all around ( sb. or sth. ) 包围；围住；环绕
compete	/kəm'pi:t/	<i>vi.</i>	try to win sth. by defeating others who are trying to do the same 竞争；对抗
course	/kɔ:s/	<i>n.</i>	a series of lessons or studies in a particular subject 课程；科目
succeed	/sək'si:d/	<i>vi.</i>	do what one is trying to do; achieve the desired end 成功；达到目的



smart	/smɑ:t/	adj.	clever 聪明的
regulate	/'regju.leit/	vt.	control (time, speed, etc. ) so that it functions as desired 调整; 调节 (时间、速度等)
socialize	/'səʊʃəlaiz/	vi.	meet people socially 与人交往; 交际
shortly	/'ʃɔ:tli/	adv.	in a short time; not long; soon 不久; 很快
however	/'hau'evə/	conj.	nevertheless; yet 然而; 可是
control	/kən'trəʊl/	n.	the ability or power to make sb. or sth. do what you want 控制; 支配
manage	/'mænidʒ/	v.	succeed in doing (sth.)设法做到
assignment	/ə'sainmənt/	n.	task or duty assigned to sb.; a piece of work that a student is asked to do (分派的) 任务; (指定的) 作业
addition	/ə'diʃən/	n.	adding; person or thing added 增加; 增加的人或物
comfortable	/'kʌmfətəbl/	adj.	feeling physically relaxed and satisfied; feeling free from anxiety 舒适; 安逸的; 无虑的
share	/ʃeə/	vt.	have or use (sth.)with others; tell (sb.) about (sth.) 与别人分享 (或合用) (某物); 把 (某事) 告诉 (某人)
routine	/ru:'ti:n/	n.	fixed and regular way of doing things 惯常的程序; 常规
perspective	/pə'spektiv/	n.	a way of looking at things and forming a judgment (观察问题的) 角度; 观点
responsible	/ri'spɒnsəbəl/	adj.	[for] legally or morally obliged to take care of sb. or sth. or to carry out a duty, and liable to be blamed if one fails (法律与道义上) 需负责的; cause 导致 sth that is decided 决定
decision	/di'siʒən/	n.	having or showing good judgement 英明的; 明智的
wise	/waiz/	adj.	a part of an activity or a period of development 阶段, 时期
stage	/steidʒ/	n.	in the end ; finally 最后, 最终
ultimately	/'ʌltimitli/	Adv.	further forward in space or time 在前面, 在前头
ahead	/ə'hed/	adj. adv.	deal with ; manage; control 处理, 应付; 管理; 操纵, 控制
handle	/'hændl/	vt.	[fig] difficulty to be overcome; obstacle 难关; 障碍
hurdle	/'hɜ:dl/	n.	of the emotions 情感的
emotional	/i'məʊʃənl /	adj.	

## Phrases and Expressions

make friends with	与……交朋友
by oneself	单独地，独自地
keep up with	跟上
be up to	取决于……的，须由……决定的
at first	起先，开始时
have sth. under control	使某事恢复正常；使某事处于控制之下
in addition	另外；加之
as a result	结果，因此
be responsible for	对……负责；导致
set up	建立
look on/upon	（以特定目光或情绪）看；看待
turn out (to be)	证明是
grow up	长大；成熟
in store (for)	即将发生；等待着
ahead of	在……前

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) I was afraid of being off by myself, away from my family for the first time.

*be off* *leave* 离开

e.g. I must be off now. 我现在得走了。

Her son was off on a business trip somewhere.

她儿子去某个地方出差了。

*by oneself* *alone* 单独，独自

e.g. Come in, we're all by ourselves.

进来吧，我们没有客人。

You can't go home by yourself in the dark.

天黑黑的，你不能一个人回家。

- 参考译文：我害怕独自一人在外，因为我是第一次远离家人。

### 2. (Para. 1) Here I was surrounded by people I did not know and who did not know me.

该句中，People 后有两个定语从句：(whom) I did not know 和 who did not know me.

*Surround* *vt.*

be or move into position all around (sb. or sth.) 包围；围绕

e.g. The trees surrounded the house.

房子周围都是树。

As a child, I was surrounded by love and kindness.



在我的孩提时代,我周围充满了爱和仁慈。

- 参考译文: 在这里,周围都是我不认识的人,而他们也不认识我。

**3. (Para. 1) I would have to make friends with them and perhaps also compete with them for grades in courses I would take. ...Could I keep up with them?**

**compete** *vi.* (with/against/for)

try to win sth. by defeating others who are trying to do the same 竞争; 对抗; 比赛

e.g. Some companies are competing for the contract.

几家公司正为争取一项合同而相互竞争。

It's difficult for a small country to compete against/with big countries.

一个小国难以和那些大国竞争。

- 拓展

**competition** *n.* 竞争, 比赛

**competitive** *adj.* 竞争的

**competitor** *n.* 竞争者, 对手

**make friends** *with*

become friendly with sb. 与某人交朋友

e.g. He made friends with an old worker. 他跟一个老工人交了朋友。

**keep up** *with*

progress at the same rate as 跟上

e.g. I had to walk fast to keep up with him.

我必须走得快才跟得上他。

- 参考译文: 我得与他们交朋友, 也许还得在学习成绩上进行竞争。……我跟得上他们吗?

**4. (Para. 2) I soon learned that my life was now up to me.**

**be up to sb.**

be required as a duty or obligation from sb. 是某人的职责或义务

be left to sb. to decide 由某人决定

e.g. It's up to us to help those in need.

我们有责任帮助那些有困难的人。

You may do your homework today or tomorrow—it's up to you.

你可以今天或者明天做作业——由你自己决定。

**5. (Para. 2) I had to set a study program if I wanted to succeed in my courses. I had to regulate the time I spent studying and the time I spent socializing. I had to decide when to go to bed, when and what to eat, when and what to drink, and with whom to be friendly.**

**set** *v.*

cause to exist 树立, 制定

e.g. Parents should set a good example for their children.

家长应该给孩子树立一个好榜样。

The school set high standards for its students.



学校给学生们设定了高标准。

**regulate** *vt.*

control (time, speed, etc.) so that it functions as desired 调整, 调节 (时间、速度等)

*e.g.* regulate one's life 调整生活

regulate the temperature of a room 调节室温

● 语法

本课文使用了较多连接代词和副词引导的不定式。这类副词和代词引导的不定式可以用于动词、介词或一些固定的短语之后。除本句中的副词 **when** 和代词 **what, whom** 外, 类似的副词和代词还有 **where, how** 等。

*e.g.* I don't know how to get there.

我不知道怎么去那里。

It's time for you to decide when to leave and where to go.

你该决定何时离开, 前往何处了。

- 参考译文: 如果我要在学业上取得成功, 我就必须制订一份学习计划。我必须调整花在学习上的时间和花在社交上的时间。我必须决定什么时候上床睡觉, 什么时候喝什么, 对什么人表示友好。

**6. (Para. 2) These questions I had to answer for myself.**

本倒装句中的 **These questions** 是动词 **answer** 的宾语, 置于句首是为了与上文衔接更紧密。

- 参考译文: 这些问题我都得自己回答。

**7. (Para. 3) Shortly, however, I had my life under control. I managed to go to class on time, do my first assignments and hand them in, and pass my first exams with fairly good grades.**

**shortly** *adv*

in a short time; not long; soon 不久; 很快

*e.g.* I'll be with you shortly.

我很快就来。

They began their work shortly after New Year's Day.

元旦过后不久, 他们就开始工作了。

● 拓展

**Shortly before** ……前不久

**Shortly after** ……以后

**have sth. under control**

使某事恢复正常; 使某事处于控制之下

*e.g.* Don't worry. I'll soon have everything under control.

别担心。我很快就会控制一切。

The soldiers had had the fire under control by 9:00 p.m.

到晚上 9 点, 战士们已控制住了火势。

**manage to do sth.**

deal with sth. successfully 设法完成



e.g. We managed to solve all the problems.

我们设法解决了所有问题。

Anyway, we managed to get there on time.

不管怎样, 我们还是准时赶到了那里。

- **参考译文:** 然而不久, 我就控制住了自己的生活。我做到了按时上课, 完成并交上了第一批作业, 而且以相当好的成绩通过了前几次考试。

### 8. (Para. 2) I set up a routine that was really my own— a routine that met my needs.

破折号后的 a routine that met my needs 系同位语, 强调和补充说明上文的 a routine.

**routine** n.

fixed and regular way of doing things 惯常的程序; 常规

e.g. She found it difficult to establish a new routine after retirement.

她退休后发现很难建立起新的生活秩序。

**set up**

establish 建立

e.g. The government has set up a working party to look into the problem of drug use.

政府已成立工作组调查滥用毒品问题。

- **参考译文:** 我建立了一种真正属于我自己的常规——一种满足了我的需要的常规。

### 9. (Para. 4) As a result, I began to look upon myself from a different perspective.

**as a result**

coming or happening as a natural consequence 结果

e.g. He made one big mistake and, as a result, lost his job.

他犯了一个大错, 结果丢了工作。

He was late as a result of heavy snow.

因为下雪, 他来晚了。

- **拓展**

**result from** 源自/于, 由于

**result in** 导致

**look on/upon ...as**

regard sb./sth. in the specified way 以(特定眼光或情绪)看, 看待

e.g. We look on her as our own daughter.

我们把她看作自己的女儿。

I look on him with dislike.

我以厌恶的眼光看待他。

- **参考译文:** 结果, 我开始从一个不同的视角看待我自己了。

### 10. (Para. 4) I began to see myself as a person responsible for myself and responsible for my friends and family.

...a person responsible for myself...: 短语作定语时, 一般置于其所修饰的名词之后。相同的例子还有 a person dependent on my family...

**see ...as**



regard ...as; think of...as; look on...as 把...看作

e.g. He saw himself as a great man.

他把自己看作是一个伟人。

**be responsible for**

answerable for one's behavior 对……负责

being the cause of 导致

e.g. A drunk can't be fully responsible for his actions.

醉汉不能为其行为负全部责任。

Smoking is responsible for many cases of lung cancer.

吸烟是许多人患肺癌的致病因素。

- **参考译文：**我开始把自己看作是一个对自己负责也对朋友和家人负责的人。

**11. (Para. 4) It felt good to make my own decisions and see those decisions turn out to be wise ones.**

● **语法**

本句中 It 是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的 to make ...and see ...这两个不定式短语。动词 see, hear, feel 等后面用作宾语补语的不定式通常不带 to。felt 是连系动词，意为“给人某种感觉。”又如：How does it feel to be a college student?

e.g. It's faster to fly than to go by train.

乘飞机比坐火车快。（主语为“to fly”）

It's no use worrying.

担心是没用的。（主语为“worrying”）

It's a pity you couldn't come.

你不能来，真遗憾。（主语为“you couldn't come”）

**turn out (to be)/that**

prove to be/that 证明是；原来是

e.g. She turned out to be a friend of my sister.

她原来是我妹妹的朋友。

It turned out that the job was harder than we thought.

这工作结果比我们想的要难。

- **参考译文：**凡事由我自己作决定并看到这些决定最终证明是明智的决定，这种感觉很好。

**12. (Para. 5) What did life have in store for me? At that stage in my life, I really was not certain where I would ultimately go in life and what I would do with the years ahead of me.**  
was not certain 后跟了分别由 where 和 what 引导的宾语从句。

**in store (for)**

about to happen; waiting 即将发生；等待着

e.g. You never know what is in store for you.

你永远也不知道等待着你的的是什么。



### ahead of

further forward in space or time than (sb./sth.); in front of  
(在时间或空间上) 比某人/物更前, 更早

e.g. London is about five hours ahead of New York.

伦敦时间比纽约早五小时左右。

I will come here ahead of time.

我会提前来这里的。

- **参考译文:** 在人生的这一阶段, 我真的不能确定我的人生之路最终将会走向何方, 我真的不知道在以后的几年中我会做什么。

### 13. (Para. 5) But I would be able to handle what was ahead because I had successfully jumped this important hurdle in my life: I had made the transition from a person dependent on my family for emotional support to a person who was responsible for myself.

#### handle vt.

deal with ; manage; control 处理, 应付; 管理; 操纵, 控制

e.g. An officer must know how to handle his men.

当军官的应当懂得怎样统率士兵。

I was impressed by her handling of affairs.

我觉得她对此事的处理很了不起。

#### transition n.

(instance of) changing from one state or condition to another 过渡; 转变; 变迁

e.g. His attitude underwent a sudden transition.

他的态度突然转变了。

- **参考译文:** 但我知道, 我能应对未来, 因为我已经成功地跃过了我生命中的这一重要难关: 我已经完成了从一个依赖家人给予感情支持的人向一个对自己负责的人的过渡。

## Text Comprehension

### Answer the following questions according to the text.

- 1) What was the writer afraid of when he first became a college student?
- 2) What are the three questions he had about his classmates and himself?
- 3) What did the writer have to do in order to do well on his studies?
- 4) What mistakes did the writer make at first?
- 5) What happened to him shortly after?
- 6) What other things did the writer do in addition to his studies?
- 7) How did the writer begin to see himself as a result?
- 8) What did he think of his future at that time?
- 9) Why was the writer so sure about himself and his own future?
- 10) What does the expression "this important hurdle in my life" mean?





## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the forms where necessary.

comfortable    enter    fear    handle    however    Manage  
responsible    share    shortly    smart    succeed    Surround

- 1) George is a very \_\_\_\_\_ boy; he is one of the best students in his class.
- 2) You have to work hard if you want to \_\_\_\_\_ in your courses.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ after you left, a girl came into our office looking for you.
- 4) At first, the course was a bit difficult for me but I \_\_\_\_\_ to pass the final exam with a fairly good grade.
- 5) Mary is my best friend and I always \_\_\_\_\_ my secrets (秘密) with her.
- 6) The lost traveler was filled with \_\_\_\_\_ when he saw a bear running toward him.
- 7) When you're away from your family, you have to be \_\_\_\_\_ for yourself.
- 8) At first, he was afraid of being off by himself. Shortly, \_\_\_\_\_ he became used to living alone.
- 9) Children in China \_\_\_\_\_ school at the age of 6 or 7 and must study there for at least nine years.
- 10) The earth is \_\_\_\_\_ by air, which makes up its atmosphere (大气层).
- 11) If you can't \_\_\_\_\_ the job, I'll get someone else to do it.
- 12) John was so \_\_\_\_\_ and warm in bed that he didn't want to get up.

### 2. Fill in the blanks with the expressions given below. Change the forms where necessary.

as a result    make friends with    set up    grow up    in addition  
keep up with    be up to    at first    turn out    under control

- 1) You can ask him for advice but the final choice \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- 2) Everything is developing (发展) so quickly in today's world that I am afraid I can't \_\_\_\_\_ all the changes.
- 3) The brave sailors (海员) managed to keep their boat \_\_\_\_\_ during the storm.
- 4) If \_\_\_\_\_ you don't succeed, try, try again.
- 5) The boy said that he wanted to be a computer scientist (科学家) when he \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Today young people from different countries can easily \_\_\_\_\_ one another through e-mail.
- 7) Mark wanted to finish his homework in two hours, but it \_\_\_\_\_ to be harder than he thought.
- 8) Tom fell and broke his leg. \_\_\_\_\_ He would have to be away from school for a month or two.
- 9) A new school has been \_\_\_\_\_ there.



10) \_\_\_\_\_, I have something else to do this weekend.

3. The suffixes -tion, -ment, -al and -sion can be used to form nouns. Study the following models and complete the following table with appropriate words.

Models: develop—development	persuade—persuasion
refuse—refusal	pollute—pollution

v.	Nouns	v.	Nouns
permit			punishment
	possession	employ	
produce		propose	
	presentation		management
promote			survival

## Structure

1. Study the models and complete the following sentences by translation.

**Model A:** I had to decide **when to** go to bed, **when** and **what to** eat, **when** and **what to** drink., and with **whom to** be friendly.

**Model B:** At that stage in my life, I really was not sure **where** I would ultimately go in life and **what** I would do with the years ahead of me.

- 1) My friend told me \_\_\_\_\_ long ago, but I have forgotten it now (如何玩这个戏).
- 2) The taxi driver asked me \_\_\_\_\_ (我要去什么地方).
- 3) Henry was not sure \_\_\_\_\_ (他们会不会接受他).
- 4) Tom always tells others \_\_\_\_\_, but seldom does it himself (做什么事, 如何做).
- 5) As a college student now, you have to know \_\_\_\_\_ (爱什么人, 不爱什么人).
- 6) I am not certain \_\_\_\_\_ (他什么时候做出那个决定).

2. Study the following example. Then, with the verb provided translate each of the sentences into English using the “V+ Object +as ” structure.

**Model:** I began to see myself as a person responsible for myself and responsible for my friends and family.

- 1) 我把李明看作是我最好的朋友, 我们有同样的爱好和兴趣。(see...as)

- 2) 他们把数学老师视为他们最好的教师。(regard...as)

3) 我们把这地方视为我们的家。(think of ...as)

4) 他们把自己的大学生活看作一生中最幸福的几年。(look on/upon...as)

## Comprehensive Exercises

**1. Directions: There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A), B), C) and D). Choose the one that best completes the passage.**

A woman saw three old men sitting in her front yard. She said, "I don't think I know you, but you 1) \_\_\_\_\_ be hungry. Please come in and have something to eat."

"We do not go into a house together," they said.

"Why is that?" She wanted to know.

One of the old men explained, "His name is Wealth, this is Success, and I am Love." There he 2) \_\_\_\_\_, "Now go in and discuss with your husband which one of us you want in your home." Then the woman went in and told her husband 3) \_\_\_\_\_ was said.

Her husband said, "Let's invite Wealth. Let him come and fill our home 4) \_\_\_\_\_ wealth."

His wife 5) \_\_\_\_\_, "My dear, why don't we invite Success?"

Then the daughter made a 6) \_\_\_\_\_, "Would it better to invite Love? Our home will be then filled with love!"

"Let's 7) \_\_\_\_\_ our daughter's advice," said the father.

So the woman went out and asked, "Which one of you is Love? Please come in and be our guest." Love got up and started walking toward the house. The 8) \_\_\_\_\_ two also got up and followed him. 9) \_\_\_\_\_, the lady asked Wealth and Success, "I only invited Love. Why are you coming in?"

The old men replied together, "If you had invited Wealth or Success, the other two of us would have stayed out, but since you invited Love, 10) \_\_\_\_\_ he goes, we go with him. Wherever there is Love, there are also Wealth and Success!"

- |                  |               |                 |                |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1) A. can        | B. would      | C. must         | D. could       |
| 2) A. added      | B. talked     | C. spoke        | D. told        |
| 3) A. that       | B. all        | C. it           | D. what        |
| 4) A. in         | B. of         | C. with         | D. on          |
| 5) A. disagreed  | B. agreed     | C. accepted     | D. denied      |
| 6) A. decision   | B. suggestion | C. claim        | D. word        |
| 7) A. want       | B. keep       | C. give         | D. take        |
| 8) A. others     | B. another    | C. different    | D. other       |
| 9) A. Surprising | B. Surprised  | C. Unsurprising | D. Unsurprised |
| 10) A. wherever  | B. when       | C. whenever     | D. however     |



2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in brackets.

1) 令我们惊讶的是鲁先生竟然是小刚的爸爸。(turn out)

2) 这次事故是由于工人粗心造成的。(be responsible for)

3) 我保证明天早上提前到学校。(ahead of time)

4) 我努力学习以便能赶上班里其他同学。(keep up with)

5) 能不能解决问题取决于你们双方的态度。(be up to)

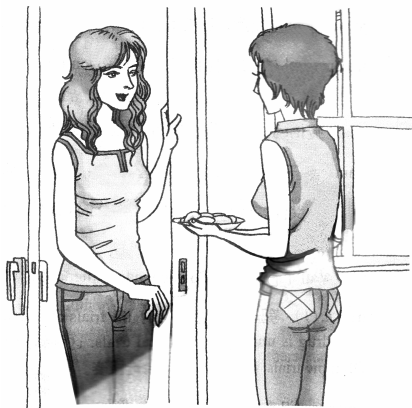
## Part III Extensive Reading (I)

## Text B

### Sunshine on a Rainy Day

1 Have you ever had a day when everything seemed to go wrong, and nothing seemed to go right? Not too long ago, I was having one of those days. I was discouraged, weary, and plain sad. My focus was on me, me, me. After all, no one else was experiencing the same trials as I was.

2 I expressed my downcast state to my mother, hoping for some pity. Instead, she said, "I heard Jamie was having a difficult day too. Why don't you make her some cookies and we'll take them to her this afternoon?" I didn't really want to, but decided that I didn't want to go back to my other problems just yet. I made the cookies and arranged them on a little plate. Then I made a card with a sunflower on it and wrote a small note of empathy.



3 That afternoon we dropped by my friend's house. I went to the door and rang the bell. Soon, Jamie came to the door and looked at me in surprise for the unexpected visit. Before she could say anything I rushed, "I heard you were having a hard day and decided to bring you something. I hope your day goes better". The look that came over Jamie's face was one that I could never put into words. It was as if a darkened sky was suddenly lit with the golden rays of the sun; it was as if in that small act, her day was

brightened

4 I got back into the car and for some amazing reason I felt a lot better myself. That day I experienced the truth that James Barric attempted to describe, “Those who bring sunshine to the lives of others cannot keep it from themselves”.

(296 words)

## New Words

trial	/'traɪəl/	<i>n.</i>	(act of) testing the ability, quality, performance etc. of sb./sth. 测试; 试验
Downcast	/'daʊnkæst/	<i>adj.</i>	depressed; sad 悲哀的; 沮丧的
empathy	/'empəθi/	<i>n.</i>	同情, 移情
rush	/rʌʃ/	<i>v.</i>	(cause to) act hastily 使仓促行事
amazing	/ə'meɪzɪŋ/	<i>adj.</i>	making surprised 令人惊异的
discourage	/dɪs'kɔ:ɪdʒ/	<i>vt.</i>	take away one's confidence or hope of sth. 使丧失信心, 使沮丧
weary	/'wiəri/	<i>adj.</i>	very tired 疲惫的, 厌倦的
plain	/pleɪn/	<i>adv.</i>	absolutely, purely 简直, 绝对
cookie	/'kuki/	<i>n.</i>	biscuit 饼干
arrange	/ə'reɪndʒ/	<i>v.</i>	put sth. in order; make tidy, neat or attractive 整理; 布置 plan the details of (a future event); organize in advance 安排, 筹备
sunflower	/'sʌn, flauə/	<i>n.</i>	向日葵花
darkened	/'dɑ:kənd/	<i>adj.</i>	becoming dark 变暗的
ray	/rei/	<i>n.</i>	光线

## Phrases and Expressions

not just yet	这会还不
drop by	顺便走访
in surprise	惊讶地
seem to	似乎, 好像
go wrong	发生故障, 出毛病
focus on	关注
after all	毕竟



## Notes

### 1. *seem to* 似乎, 好像

e.g. He seems to know what has happened.

他好像知道发生了什么。

### 2. *go wrong* 发生故障, 出毛病

e.g. My watch keeps going wrong.

我的表不断地出毛病。

### 3. *discourage* vt. 使灰心, 使丧气

e.g. Don't be discouraged by the first failure.

第一次失败, 别灰心丧气。

### 4. *weary* adj. tired, exhausted 疲倦的, 劳累的

e.g. She suddenly felt old and weary.

她突然感到了衰老和疲倦。

### 5. *plain* adv. (用于强调) 简直, 绝对

e.g. plain stupid 简直愚蠢至极; plain wrong 绝对错误

### 6. *arrange* v.

1) put sth. in order; make tidy, neat or attractive 整理; 布置

e.g. Please arrange the books on the shelves.

请整理好书架上的书。

She arranged all the business affairs before going on holiday.

她在度假前把业务都安排好了。

2) plan the details of (a future event); organize in advance 安排, 筹备

Her marriage was arranged by her parents.

她的婚姻是父母包办的。

*arrange for sb./sth. to do sth.*

make sth. happen; ensure that sth. happens

使某事发生; 确保某事发生

e.g. I've arranged for a car to meet you at the airport.

我安排了一辆车到机场接你。

The company arranged for a dinner party to welcome him.

公司为他安排了一场欢迎晚宴。

*arrangement* n. 安排; 筹备; 整理

### 7. *focus on* 关注

e.g. We shall maintain our focus on the needs of the customer.

我们将继续重点关注顾客的需要。

### 8. *after all* 毕竟

e.g. So you made it after all!

你毕竟成功了。

**9. trial n.**

## 1) 考验, 磨难

e.g. the trials of married life 婚姻生活的磨练

## 2) 试验

e.g. The new drug is undergoing clinical trials.  
这种新药正在进行临床试验。

## 3) 预赛, 选拔赛

e.g. Olympic trials 奥林匹克运动会选拔赛

**10. downcast 沮丧的, 垂头丧气的**

e.g. A group of downcast men stood waiting for food.  
一群人垂头丧气地站在那儿等着吃饭。

**11. not just yet 这会还不**

e.g. I can't give you the money just yet.  
我这会儿还不能给你钱。

**12. empathy 同情**

e.g. empathy for other people's situations 对他人所处情况的同情

**13. drop by 顺便访问**

e.g. Drop by sometime.  
有空儿来坐坐。

**14. rush 仓促行事, 匆忙行事**

e.g. Don't rush me.  
别催我。

**15. as if 好像, 仿佛**

e.g. He behaved as if nothing had happened.  
他装作若无其事的样子。

**16. amazing 令人惊喜的; 惊人的**

e.g. an amazing achievement 惊人的成就  
an amazing discovery 惊人的发现  
an amazing performance 惊人的表演

## ● 拓展

**amaze vt.** (esp passive) fill sb. with surprise or wonder (多用被动语态) 使惊异/惊奇

e.g. We are amazed at/by the change in his appearance.

他的样子变得让我们大吃一惊。

It amazed her that he was still alive.

他居然还活着让她大为吃惊。

**be amazed at/by** 对……感到惊异

**amazement n.** 吃惊, 惊讶

**amazing adj.** 令人惊异的

**amazingly adv.** 出奇地



## Exercises

### 1. Answer the following questions according to the content of the text.

- 1) What kind of a day has the author experienced not too long ago?
- 2) How did the author feel that day?
- 3) Why did the author express downcast state to the mother?
- 4) What is the mother's suggestion in the text?
- 5) Which truth did the author experience in the text?

### 2. Read the text and answer the following question or fill in the gap by choosing the best answer from A, B, C and D.

- 1) Which of the following cannot describe the author's mood? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Amazing  
B. Discouraged  
C. Sad  
D. Weary
- 2) Why did the author do as the mother suggested though not really want to? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Because the author didn't want to make her mother unhappy  
B. Because the author hasn't met her friend for a long time  
C. Because the author wanted to practice making cookies  
D. Because the author didn't want to go back to her other problems just yet
- 3) Jamie is \_\_\_\_\_ of the author.  
A. the sister  
B. a friend  
C. the daughter  
D. a relative
- 4) Jamie came to the door and looked at the author in surprise for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the cookies  
B. the author's discouraged expression  
C. the author's mother  
D. the unexpected visit
- 5) What is the meaning of the truth, "Those who bring sunshine to the lives of others cannot keep it from themselves." ? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. It means that we can get the same sunshine as others  
B. It means that we need not worry about sunshine  
C. It means that we should bring sunshine to others  
D. It means that we can get happiness from helping others



**3. Fill in the blanks with the given phrases. Change the form where necessary.**

be amazed at	drop by	seem to	go wrong
arrange for ...to	in surprise	after all	as if

- 1) All of us \_\_\_\_\_ his rude manners at the party.
- 2) I'll \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow if it is convenient to you.
- 3) She laughed heartily \_\_\_\_\_ she had got one million dollars.
- 4) It \_\_\_\_\_ rain this evening.
- 5) Don't be too strict with her. \_\_\_\_\_, she is only 6 years old.
- 6) Don't worry. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ a driver \_\_\_\_\_ meet you at the station.
- 7) "What? You are my boss?" He shouted at me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8) Something has \_\_\_\_\_ with this machine.

**4. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.**

- 1) It was as if a darkened sky was suddenly lit with the golden rays of the sun; it was as if in that small act, her day was brightened
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

- 2) That day I experienced the truth that James Barric attempted to describe, "Those who bring sunshine to the lives of others cannot keep it from themselves."
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**Part IV Extensive Reading (II)****Text C****Today**

- 1 There are two days in every week about which we should not worry, two days which should be kept from fear and anxiety.
- 2 One of these days is Yesterday with its mistakes and cares, its faults and blunders, its aches and pains. Yesterday has passed forever beyond our control. All the money in the world cannot bring back Yesterday. We cannot undo a single act we performed; we cannot erase a single word we said. Yesterday is gone.
- 3 The other day we should not worry about is Tomorrow with its possible troubles, its burdens, its large promise and poor performance. Tomorrow is also beyond our control. Tomorrow's sun will rise, either in splendor or behind a mask of clouds — but it will rise. Until



it does we have no stake in Tomorrow, for it is as yet unborn.

4 This leaves only one day — Today. Anyone can fight the battles of just one day. It is only when you and I add the burdens of those two awful eternities — Yesterday and Tomorrow — that we break down.

5 It is not the experience of Today that drives you mad — it is the regret or bitterness for something which happened Yesterday and the dread of what Tomorrow will bring.

(211 words)

## New Words

anxiety	/æŋ'zaɪəti/	<i>n.</i>	troubled feeling caused by fear and uncertainty about the future 焦虑; 担心
care	/kɛə/	<i>n.</i>	sympathetic concern; worry, anxiety 关心; 担心, 忧虑
blunder	/'blʌndə/	<i>n.</i>	stupid or careless mistake (愚蠢或粗心的) 错误
undo	/'ʌn'du:/	<i>v.</i>	open sth.; 打开 untie (knots or buttons) 解开; cancel 取消
trouble	/'trʌbl/	<i>n.</i>	(situation causing )worry, pain, difficulty (环境引起的) 忧虑, 痛苦, 困难
burden	/'bɜ:dn/	<i>n.</i>	thing or person that is carried; heavy load; (fig.) duty, obligation etc. that is hard to bear 所负载的人或物; 负担; (难以承担的) 责任、义务等
promise	/'prɒmis/	<i>n.</i>	Written or spoken declaration that one will give or do or not to do sth.; likelihood or hope of sth. 承诺; 可能性, 希望
splendor	/'splendə/	<i>n.</i>	quality of being splendid or grand 华丽, 壮观
mask	/mɑ:sk/	<i>n.</i>	(usu single 通常用作单数) thing that hides the truth; pretence 用作掩盖的事物; 掩饰; 伪装
unborn	/'ʌn'bɔ:n/	<i>adj.</i>	not born 未出世的
awful	/'ɔ:ful/	<i>adj.</i>	very bad, terrible 糟糕的, 可怕的
eternity	/'i:tə:niti/	<i>n.</i>	time without end 永恒
regret	/'ri'gret/	<i>n.</i>	(for) feeling of sadness at the loss of sb./sth.; feeling of annoyance or disappointment 懊悔; 遗憾; 失望
bitterness	/'bitənis/	<i>n.</i>	the state of not sweet; sorrow 苦涩; 痛苦, 悲伤
dread	/dred/	<i>n.</i>	strong fear 害怕, 恐惧

## Phrases and expressions

(go/be) beyond	超出……之外，非……所能及
beyond our control	无法控制
worry about	担忧
bring back	送回，归还；使回忆起；恢复，重新使用
drive someone mad	迫使某人发疯
break down	垮掉，被打垮
be kept from	远离
fight a battle	斗争，作战

## Notes

1. (Para. 1) There are two days in every week about which we should not worry, two days which should be kept from fear and anxiety.

*be kept from* 远离

e.g. She is kept from sleeping at night.

她夜不能寐。

The children should be kept from the fire.

孩子们要远离火。

### ● 语法

**there be 结构** 表示某地存在有某人/物

该结构在英语中是一种常见的句子结构，there 后常接动词 be 的各种形式，然后才是主语，主语之后又常有表时间和地点的状语。它像是一种倒装句，但它已变成成为一种自然的词序。在这种结构中 there 本身无词义，其后的动词 be 具有“存在”之义。另外，如果要表达“有人在做某事”，要用 “There + be+ 表示人的主语 + -v-ing + 状语”。

e.g. There are three people in my family.

我家有三个人。

There is a clock on the desk.

书桌上有一个闹钟。

There were a group of boys playing basketball when I passed by the playground.

我走过操场时有一群男孩在打篮球。

**介词+which 引导的定语从句**

此句中还包含两个定语从句。用作定语的从句叫做定语从句，通常置于所修饰的名词（或代词）之后。在该句中 about which we should not worry 修饰先行词 week, which should be kept from fear and anxiety 修饰先行词(two) days。定语从句中的谓语如果是固定动词短语，关系代词是 which，动词后的介词可提到 which 前面，构成“介词+which”引导的定语从句结构。



e.g. This is the result for which we are longing.

这正是我们期待的结果。

The postman comes at 6:30 in the morning, at which time (ie when) I am usually fast asleep.  
邮递员早上六点半来, 这个时候我通常还在睡大觉。

- **参考译文:** 每周中有两天是我们不应该为之烦恼的, 这两天不应该被担心和恐惧所笼罩。

## 2. (Para. 2) One of these days is Yesterday with its mistakes and cares, its faults and blunders, its aches and pains.

**With + 名词:** 表示人或事物的特征

e.g. I have a dictionary with a blue cover.

我有一本蓝色封面的字典。

She is a girl with long hair and big eyes.

她是一个批着长发的大眼睛女孩。

- **参考译文:** 这其中的一天是昨日, 昨日有着种种错误和顾虑、缺点和过失、疼痛和痛苦。

## 3. (Para. 2) Yesterday has passed forever beyond our control.

**pass vi.**

(of time) go by, be spent (时间) 流逝, 过去

e.g. Six months passed and we still had no news of him .

六个月已经过去了, 而我们仍然没有他的消息。

The holidays passed far too quickly.

假期过得太快了。

**beyond prep.**

not within the range of; surpassing 超出(某事物)的范围; 超越

e.g. beyond my control 无法控制

beyond my reach 够不着

beyond my ability 超出我的能力范围

The bike is beyond repair.

这辆自行车已不能修了。

The results has gone beyond our expectation.

结果远远超出我们的预期。

- **参考译文:** 昨日已经永远地过去了, 是我们再也无法控制的。

## 4. (Para. 2) All the money in the world cannot bring back Yesterday.

**Bring back**

1) 送回, 归还

e.g. He brought me back in his car.

他用车把我送回家。

2) 使回忆起, 使想起

e.g. The photographs brought back many pleasant memories.



照片给人带来很多美好的回忆。

### 3) 恢复, 重新使用

e.g. Most people are against bringing back the death penalty.

大多数人反对恢复死刑。

I brought a T-shirt back for Mark.

我给马克带回来一件 T 恤衫。

## 5. Yesterday is gone. (paragraph 2)

**gone** *adj.*

past, departed 一去不复返, 离去

e.g. The days are gone when you could leave your door unlocked at night.

夜不闭户的时代一去不复返。

- 参考译文: 昨日永不复返。

## 6. (Para. 3) The other day we should not worry about is Tomorrow with its possible troubles, its burdens, its large promise and poor performance.

**The other** 两个中的一个, 通常与 “one” 搭配

e.g. He raised one arm and then the other.

他先举起一只胳膊, 然后举起另一只。

There are two girls in my family. One is my younger sister, the other is me.

我们家有俩女孩子, 一个是我妹妹, 另一个是我。

- 参考译文: 我们不应该担心的另一天是明天, 明天可能会有麻烦, 有负担, 有很大的希望和糟糕的表现。

## 7. (Para. 3) Tomorrow's sun will rise, either in splendor or behind a mask of clouds—but it will rise.

**either...or...**

(对两事物的选择) 或者……或者……, 不是……就是……

e.g. I think she's either Russian or Polish.

我看她不是俄罗斯人就是波兰人。

Either you or I must help him with his maths.

要么你要么我必须帮助他学数学。

- 拓展

**neither...nor...**

既不……也不……, 两者都不

e.g. She is neither clever nor beautiful.

她既不聪明也不漂亮。

Neither Tom nor Mary is likely to look after their mother because they are abroad.

汤姆和玛丽都不可能照顾母亲, 因为他们在国外。

- 参考译文: 明天的太阳会升起, 要么光芒四射, 要么躲在云层后, 不管怎样, 它总会升起。



8. (Para. 3) **Until it does we have no stake in Tomorrow, for it is as yet unborn.**

**have no stake in** 与……无关系

e.g. Many young people feel they have no stake in society.

很多年轻人觉得他们与社会无关。

● 语法

**否定词+until** “直到……才”(置于句首时, 主句要部分倒装)

e.g. He didn't leave until the rain stopped.

雨停了他才离开。

Not until your work is finished **can you go to bed.**

你必须完成了工作才可以睡觉。

**for** 引导的原因状语从句

此句中 for 用来引导原因状语从句。for 引导的原因状语从句并不说明主句行为发生的直接原因, 只是提供一些有助于说明情况的补充说明, 且不可位于主句前。

e.g. He must be tired, for he went to bed early.

他一定是累了, 因为他早早地上床睡觉了。

● 参考译文: 太阳升起之前, 我们无法拥有明日, 因为它尚未降临。

9. (Para. 4) **It is only when you and I add the burdens of those two awful eternities — Yesterday and Tomorrow — that we break down.**

**break down**

1) cease to work (因故)停止运转, 失灵

e.g. Our car broke down on the way.

我们的车中途抛锚了。

2) fail; collapse 失败; 崩溃; 瓦解

e.g. If law and order break down, the society will be in disorder.

法治一垮, 整个社会就会陷入混乱。

3) (of sb.'s health) become very bad; collapse (某人健康)越来越糟糕; 弄垮

Her health broke down under the pressure of work.

工作的压力把她的身体弄垮了。

● 拓展

**break away from** 脱离; 逃脱

**break in** 强行进入屋内; 打断, 干扰

**break off** 暂停

**break out** (战争、瘟疫、洪水等)突然爆发, 发生

**break through** 突破

**break up** 解散; (关系)破裂, 终止

● 语法

**It is (was)+主语/状语+that+句子(强调句型)**

这种结构用来强调除了谓语以外的任何句子成分, 包括主语、宾语、状语等。当强调的主语是人时, 可用 that 和 who; 表示状语成分的可以是单词、词组或句子。强调的如果是原



因状语从句，只能由 **because** 引导，不能由 **since**、**as** 或 **for** 引导。

e.g. It is Mr. Li that/who teaches me how to be a wise man.

是李先生教会我如何做一个智慧之人。

It is a new bike that he has been longing for.

他一直想要的是一辆自行车。

It was at the airport that I met her brother.

我是在机场见到她哥哥的。

It was because of her lack of experience that she was refused.

因为没有经验，她被拒绝了。

- **参考译文：**只有当你我把那两个可怕的永恒——昨日和明日——压在身上时，我们才会被打垮。

10. (Para. 5) It is not the experience of Today that drives you mad — it is the regret or bitterness for something which happened Yesterday and the dread of what Tomorrow will bring.

- **参考译文：**真正让你发狂的不是今天的经历，而是昨天发生的让你懊悔或者痛苦的事情，以及对明天即将发生之事的恐惧。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 告别寒暄与天气谈论

#### Departure and Weather Talking

在英语中，告别是比较讲究的。人们通常不会突然分手或者匆匆离去，一般情况下，他们会先结束谈话，然后再告别离开。同样，彼此不太熟悉的人们之间（尤其是英国人）要开始谈话，最好的话题莫过于谈天气了。以下列出一些常用的告别及谈天气时使用的典型句型（破折号后面为可选择的应答语）。

#### Key Sentences for Departure

- ✧ It's been a most pleasant stay.
- ✧ It's been lovely seeing you.
- ✧ I've enjoyed talking with you.
- ✧ I had a very good time this evening. Thank you for inviting me.
- ✧ It's getting late. I must go now.



- ✧ I'm afraid I'd better say goodbye. / I must go. / I have to go.
- ✧ I really can't stay any longer.
- ✧ I'm on my way. /  
Good night/ Goodbye and thanks for everything.

- So soon? Can't you stay a little longer?
- Good night
- OK. See you.
- I hope to see you again sometime.
- It's lovely seeing you again.
- Remember me to your wife.
- Say hello to your father for me.
- So long! / See you later. / Until tomorrow then.
- Stay in touch. /Keep in touch.

### Key Sentences for Weather Talking

- ✧ How do you like the weather here?  
——I like it very much. It's neither too hot nor too cold.  
——I don't like it very much. It's too cold/hot.
  
- ✧ What's the weather like in your hometown?  
——It's really hot in summer/ really cold in winter.
  
- ✧ What's the weather like in spring/ summer/autumn/winter?  
——It's warm in spring./ It's cool in autumn.
  
- ✧ How is the weather today?  
——It's going to be a foggy day/ a sunny day.  
——The sky is overcast.  
——Another heat wave is coming on.
  
- ✧ It's a fine day today, isn't it?  
——Yes, isn't it? /It certainly is.
  
- ✧ What a beautiful sunset!
- ✧ It's raining cats and dogs.
- ✧ What a beautiful sunset!
- ✧ He hopes it will clear up soon.
- ✧ We usually have a hot and humid summer.





◇ It's fine/windy/cloudy/sunny today, isn't it?

### Exercise

Choose the answer that best completes each dialogue.

1) — I'm afraid I have to say goodbye to you.

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. I'm sorry.

B. That's all right.

C. Never mind

D. Good night

2) — \_\_\_\_\_

—Why not stay for another cup of tea?

A. I'm pleased to meet you.

B. See you some time later.

C. I'd better leave now.

D. I'm sorry I'm not free now.

3) —It's getting late. I'm afraid I must go now.

—OK. \_\_\_\_\_

A. Take it easy.

B. Go slowly.

C. Stay longer

D. See you.

4) —Good night and thanks for everything.

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. You can't say that.

B. No, no. It's what I can do.

C. How can you say that?

D. Good night.

5) —Sorry, I must be leaving now, because there's a meeting.

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Oh, no, you can't.

B. Yes, you can leave if you like.

C. So soon? Can't you stay a little longer?

D. Oh, I understand.

6) —How's the weather outside now?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. It's raining cats and dogs.

B. Yes, it's not bad.

C. It rained yesterday.

D. It's cold in summer.

7) — \_\_\_\_\_

—It's really hot and wet in summer.

A. How's the weather today?

B. How is the climate here?

C. How's the weather like in your hometown?

D. How do you like the weather?

8) — It's a sunny day today, isn't it?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. No, it isn't.

B. Yes, isn't it?

C. No, it is.

D. Yes, it isn't.



# Grammar

## 名词 Nouns

### 一、名词的种类

名词分为专有名词和普通名词两大类。

#### 1. 专有名词

表示某一特定的人、团体、地方、机构、报刊等, 这些名词被认为是独一无二的。专有名词中的实词的第一个字母一定要大写。如 Mary, Mrs. Smith, America, The United Nations 等。

#### 2. 普通名词

表示一类人或事物的名称, 或某种物质或抽象概念。普通名词可以分为以下四类:

- 1) 个体名词: 表示单个的人或事物, 如 girl, teacher, cat, house, tree 等。
- 2) 集体名词: 表示一群人或一些事物的总称, 如 family, class, police, committee 等。
- 3) 物质名词: 表示无法分为个体的物质或材料, 如 iron, rice, water, glass 等。
- 4) 抽象名词: 表示动作、状态、品质、情感等抽象概念, 如 work, love, health 等。

### 二、可数名词与不可数名词

表示可以计数的事物的名词叫可数名词, 一般有单复数之分。表示不可以计数的名词叫不可数名词。不可数名词没有单复数之分, 并且不能用不定冠词或数词 one 修饰。个体名词和大多数集体名词一般是可数的, 如 tree, apple, person, dog, class 等; 物质名词和抽象名词一般是不可数的, 如 water, air, bread, milk, furniture, information, paper 等。不过, 由于语言差异, 在名词的可数概念上, 汉英并不完全一致。不少名词在英语中是不可数的, 而在汉语中却是可数的, 例如, news: No news is good news. 没有消息就是好消息。

可数名词的复数可以被 few, a few, many, a great many, a large number 等修饰, 而不可数名词只能和 little, a little, much, a great deal, a large amount of, a large quantity of 等连用, 这两类名词都可以和 a lot of, lots of, plenty of 连用。

不可数名词要表示“一件/片/张/块/段/瓶”等概念时, 前面要加“a ... of”这类定语, 如 a piece of cake/equipment/information/paper/thread 一块蛋糕/一件家具/一则信息/一张纸/一根线  
a loaf of bread 一个面包 a can of beer 一听啤酒 a jar of jam 一罐果酱  
a small amount of sugar 少量白糖 a bar of chocolate 一大块巧克力  
这类定语还可以用来修饰复数名词, 如 A herd of cattle/deer 一群牛/鹿 a swarm of ants 一群蚂蚁  
a bunch of keys 一串钥匙 a pair of shoes/trousers 一双鞋/一条裤子 a packet of cigarettes 一盒香烟

### 三、名词的数

英语可数名词（个体名词和集体名词）有单复数之分。名词由单数变为复数形式，其构成方法有规则变化和不规则变化两种。不规则变化无规律可循，需要积累并记住。

#### 1. 规则变化

情 况	构 成 法	例 词
一般名词(包括以 e 结尾的名词)	直接加-s	brothers, flowers, maps, desks, days, schools, books, faces, noses, houses
以字母 s, x, sh, ch 结尾和以“辅音字母+o”结尾的名词	直接加-es	buses, classes, boxes, foxes, brushes, dishes, watches, matches, heroes, potatoes
以“辅音字母+y”结尾的名词	变 y 为 i 再加-es	ladies, countries, stories, cities, parties
以 f, fe 结尾的名词	变 f, fe 为 v 再加-es	life-lives, leaf-leaves, knife-knives (但 roof-roofs, chief-chiefs, proof-proofs, belief-beliefs, cliff-cliffs 等例外)

#### 2. 不规则变化

##### 1) 改变元音

foot-feet, man-men, woman-women, tooth-teeth, mouse-mice, goose-geese

##### 2) 词尾变化

child-children, ox-oxen

##### 3) 单复数同形

sheep-sheep, deer-deer, Chinese-Chinese, Japanese-Japanese, species

##### 4) 只有复数形式

Trousers, glasses, clothes, shorts, pants, arms, contents, assets, remains, savings, earnings

##### 5) 复数形式，单数意义

works (工厂), means (手段/方法), politics (政治)

##### 6) 复合名词的复数分三种情况

A. 只把复合名词中的主体变为复数形式，如：

looker-on—lookers-on son-in-law—sons-in-law, editor-in-chief—editors-in-chief

B. 没有主体名词，则在最后一个词的后面加-s，如：

grown-up—grown-ups, boyfriend—boyfriends, fire-engine—fire-engines

C. 有些复合名词的组成部分都要变成复数形式，如：

man driver—men-drivers, woman doctor—women doctors

### 四、名词的格

英语中的名词有三个格：主格（做主语），宾格（做宾语）和所有格（表示所有关系）。其中所有格有形式变化。



1. 表示有生命的東西的名詞所有格

1) 單數名詞後直接加-'s, 如:

my wife's cousin, Philip's new address, my father's study, the monkey's tail

**注意:** Jane and Mary's room (簡和瑪麗共用的房間)

Jane's and Mary's rooms (簡和瑪麗各自的房間)

2) 以-s 或-es 結尾的複數名詞的所有格旨在名詞後加撇號('), 如:

the students' books, workers' desire, the teachers' reading-room

3) 不以-s 結尾的複數名詞後加-'s, 如:

men's clothes, women's rights, children's books

2. 表示無生命的東西的名詞一般用“of+名詞”的結構來表示所有關係, 如:

a map of China, the window of the classroom, the cover of the book

3. 表示時間、距離、國家、城鎮的無生命的名詞也可以用's 表示所有格(複數形式只加撇號“'”), 如:

China's agriculture, tomorrow's meeting, an hour's walk, Beijing's streets

**Exercise**

**Choose the best answer for each of the following sentences.**

1) He lives in a \_\_\_\_\_ building.

- A. ten-story                      B. ten stories                      C. ten story                      D. ten-stories

2) Mr. Smith raises many \_\_\_\_\_ on his farm.

- A. deers                      B. sheeps                      C. oxes                      D. chickens

3) Everybody needs at least \_\_\_\_\_ shoes in his daily life.

- A. a piece of                      B. a cake of                      C. a herd of                      D. a pair of

4) I met her at \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

- A. the barber's                      B. barber's                      C. a barber                      D. the barber

5) Some friends of \_\_\_\_\_ joined the political party.

- A. my mother                      B. my mothers'                      C. my mother's                      D. my mothers

6) For most people, the car is still their main \_\_\_\_\_ of transportation.

- A. means                      B. mean                      C. meanings                      D. meant

7) She got married while she was still \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. in her teen                      B. in her teens                      C. a teen                      D. teenager

8) Did your aunt buy \_\_\_\_\_ when she moved into the new house?

- A. many new furnitures                      C. much new furnitures  
C. many new furniture                      D. much new furniture

9) Tom has three \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. brother-in-law                      B. brothers-in-law  
C. brothers-in-laws                      D. brother-in-law's

10) The bookshelf over there is \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. Mary's and Jane's  
C. Mary and Jane's

- B. Mary's and Jane  
D. Mary and Jane

## Writing Skills

### 句子种类和基本句型

#### Types of English Sentences and Basic Sentence Patterns

句子是进行交际的基本语言单位。准确地说，句子是由词或词组按一定的语法规则组合在一起，表达一个完整意思的语言单位。要写出一篇好的作文，首先我们要了解英语句子的种类和常用的基本句型。

#### 一、句子种类

##### 1. 按结构分类

英语句子按其语法结构可分为简单句、并列句和复合句三种类型。简单句是构成各类句子的基础；两个或两个以上的意义相关的简单句可以联结成并列句；简单句的每个句子成分（谓语除外）可以扩展成从句而构成复合句。

##### 1) 简单句 (Simple Sentence)

只包含一个主语和谓语的句子称为简单句。但有时一个句子可包含两个或两个以上并列的主语 (subject) 或谓语 (predicate)，还仍为简单句。例如：

Mary is majoring in economics at Harvard University.

玛丽在哈佛大学主修经济学。

I enjoy playing badminton and look forward to it every weekend.

我喜欢打羽毛球，每周末都期盼着做这项运动。

##### 2) 并列句 (Compound Sentence)

包含两个或两个以上互不依从的主谓结构的句子称为并列句。在意义上，各分句 (independent clause) 是同等重要并相互关联的；在语法结构上，它们是平行且相互间没有从属关系的。并列句的各个分句常用一定的并列连词 (coordinating conjunctions)、连接副词 (conjunctive adverbs) 和分号 (semicolon) 连接在一起。例如：

I dislike jogging, but I love hiking.

我讨厌/不喜欢慢跑，但我喜欢远足。

This is the best book I have ever read; it kept me up all night.

这是我读过的最好的一本书，我读了整整一个晚上。

##### 3) 复合句 (Complex Sentence)

由一个主句 (main clause) 和至少一个从句 (subordinate clause) 构成的句子称为复合句。在复合句中，主句是整个句子的主体部分，从句只是整个句子的一个成分，不能独立存在，在句法关系上从属于主句。从句须用关联词 (connective) 引导，来表明与主句的关



系。例如:

Although many people were unknown to each other before, they have got acquainted with each other through e-mail.

虽然许多人以前并不相识,但他们通过电子邮件彼此熟悉。

Most Westerners who travel to the Orient for the first time will experience culture shock.  
大多数西方人第一次到东方旅行时都会经历文化冲击。

When you go for a job interview, it is important to create a good first impression.  
在你去面试时,留下良好的第一印象是很重要的。

## 2. 按使用目的分类

### 1) 陈述句 (Declarative Sentence)

用来表达观点或事实的句子称为陈述句。陈述句是英语中最常见的句子,包括肯定 (affirmative) 结构与否定 (negative) 结构,句末使用句号。例如:

Browsing on the internet is my favorite pastime.

上网浏览是我最喜欢的消遣。

There aren't as many trees here as there used to be.

这里的树没有以前多了。

### 2) 疑问句 (Interrogative Sentence)

用来提问的句子称为疑问句。疑问句主要分为一般疑问句 (general question)、特殊疑问句 (special question)、选择疑问句 (alternative question) 和附加疑问句 (tag question) 四种类型,句末用问号。例如:

Did you hear about the new project?

你听说过这个新的研究项目吗?

What's today's exchange rate for US dollars against Japanese yen?

今天美元对日元的汇率是多少?

Is your favorite winter outdoor activity skiing or skating?

你所喜爱的冬季户外活动是滑雪还是滑冰?

The youngsters' values are quite different from their parents' at present, aren't they?

现在年轻人的价值观与其父母的大不相同,是吗?

### 3) 祈使句 (Imperative Sentence)

用来表达命令、要求、请求、劝告或建议的句子称为祈使句。祈使句的主语一般是第二人称 you, 在句中通常省略。祈使句的谓语用动词原形,其否定结构为“don't+动词原形”。句末一般使用句号或感叹号。例如:

Please send my kind regards to your parents.

请代我向父母致以问候。

Let's not waste our time arguing about the current topic.

咱们不要再浪费时间辩论当前这个话题了。

Don't hesitate to give me a call if you have any problem.

如果有问题请一定给我打电话。

### 4) 感叹句 (Exclamatory Sentence)

用来抒发强烈感情的句子称为感叹句。如抒发喜悦、赞叹、惊异、愤怒、厌恶、痛苦之情等，句末用感叹号。what 用来修饰名词；how 用来修饰形容词、副词或动词。例如：

What a great idea (it is)!	多好的主意啊！
How beautiful the scenery is!	景色多美呀！
Well, here we are at last!	好了，终于到了！

## 二、基本句型

英语共有五种基本句型，文章中出现的所有句子都是由这五种句型演变、发展而来的，它们是写出正确的英语句子的基础。掌握好五种基本句型的关键是学好动词，动词是句子的主干，使用不同类型的动词，句子的主要成分就会不同，从而形成不同的句型。这五种基本句型是：

1. 主谓句型	(SV)
2. 主谓宾句型	(SVO)
3. 主系表句型	(SVC)
4. 主谓间宾/直宾句型	(SVoO)
5. 主谓宾宾补句型	(SVOC)

注：S=subject V=verb O=(direct) object C=complement o=indirect object

### 1. 主谓句型 (SV)

主谓句型是最基本的简单句句型，由主语 S 和谓语 V (vi.) 构成，可简称为主谓结构。主语通常是名词或代词，谓语是不及物动词或动词短语。这一句型还常带有状语 A (adverbial)，用来说明时间、地点、目的、原因、方式或程度等。句子的状语可以是副词、介词短语、不定式 (短语)、分词 (短语)、形容词词组、从句等。例如：

She is trembling all over. 她浑身发抖。  
How did the accident come about? 事故是怎样发生的?  
The concert came off well. 音乐会开得很成功。

There + be 结构是一种较常见的特殊句子结构，可以看作是 SV 句型的一种变体。There + be + S + A 是一个倒装句型：主语在谓语动词 be 之后，there 是引导词，无实际意义；A 是表示地点、时间或范围的状态语。这种结构主要表示“有”、“存在”或“出现”的概念，所以也有人称之为“存在句”(existential sentence)。其否定形式是：在 be 之后加否定词 no, not 或 not any。变为疑问句时，须将 be 移至 there 之前。例如：

There's a wide range of current and back issue journals in our university library.  
我们学校的图书馆里有各种不同的现刊和过刊。

There is no serious problem to control the temperature.  
在温度控制方面没有严重问题。

在 There + be 句型中，谓语除用 be 外，还可用 appear, come, enter, exist, happen, lie, live, occur, remain, rise, seem, stand 等动词。例如：

There exist a variety of opinions on this question.  
关于这个问题存有不同意见。



There stands the Statue of Liberty on Liberty Island in the New York Harbor.

自由女神像屹立在纽约港的自由岛上。

## 2. 主谓宾句型 (SVO)

此句型中的动词是及物动词, 直接跟宾语, 作宾语的有: 名词, 代词, 动名词、名词短语, 疑问词加不定式短语, 从句等。例如:

He always takes offence at any kind of criticism.

听到任何批评意见他都会生气。

You must learn when to give advice and when to be silent.

你必须学会什么时候出主意, 什么时候沉默。

Would you mind filling out this application form?

请填写一下这张申请表好吗?

## 3. 主系表句型 (SVC)

此句型中的谓语一般是系动词, 和表语构成系表结构, 通常作表语的有名词、代词、数词、形容词、副词、不定式、动名词、分词、介词短语、从句等。常见的系动词有: be, feel, look, taste, smell, sound, become, grow, get, turn, continue, remain, keep, prove, seem 等。例如:

Hard work and honesty are the keys to success.

努力工作和诚实是成功的秘诀。

When autumn comes, the leaves of the trees turn yellow and fall to the ground.

当秋天来临, 树上的叶子变黄落到地上。

At the new job he proved himself to be a good worker.

他新的工作岗位上证明自己是个工作优秀者。

## 4. 主谓间宾/直宾句型 (SVoO)

此句型内的谓语是双宾语动词, 往往有“给予”的含义, 要求后接双宾语意义才能完整。间接宾语通常是人, 常用名词或代词表示, 有时可与介词 to, for 构成短语置于句末。直接宾语通常是物。常用于此句型的动词有: allow, bring, buy, get, give, lend, offer, award, make, inform, show 等。例如:

They awarded her a special scholarship.

他们颁发给她一份特别奖学金。

He assured the passengers that there was no danger.

他向乘客保证没有危险。

Can you inform me where Miss Green lives?

你可否告诉我格林小姐住在哪里?

Give me what books you have on the subject.

把你有关这问题的书全都给我。

用于这个句型中的一些动词, 如 advise, show, teach, tell 等, 后接的直接宾语可以在不定式的前面加上疑问代词、疑问形容词和疑问副词, 如 what, which, whether, whatever, how, when 等。例如:





Can you advise me which medicine to take?

你能建议我该服哪种药吗?

The doctor has told the nurse when to draw a blood sample.

医生已告诉护士什么时候抽取血液样品。

### 5. 主谓宾宾补句型 (SVOC)

此句型内谓语动词尽管带有宾语, 但意思不完整, 需要补足宾语 (简作宾补), 意思才完整。宾补一则用于补充谓语动词的不足, 二则表明宾语的性质。宾语和宾语补足语合称做复合宾语, 并在逻辑上构成主谓关系或系表关系。宾语补足语可以由名词、形容词、副词、分词 (短语)、不定式 (短语)、介词 (短语) 等构成。用不定式作宾语补足语, 表达和强调已发生的事实; 用现在分词作宾语补足语, 表达和强调正在进行的状态和发生的事情; 用过去分词作宾语补足语, 表达和强调被动的概念和状态。例如:

The accused man declared himself innocent.

被告宣称自己是无辜的。

He considered the situation there to be deteriorating.

他认为那里的局势正在恶化。

She could hear the rain pattering against the windows.

They made the girl vice-director of the factory.

他们让这姑娘当了副厂长。

注意, 使役动词 (causative verb) have, let, make, 和感觉动词 (perceptive verb) feel, hear, notice, see, watch 等后接不定式作其宾语补足语时, 省略不定式符号 to; 但当这类动词用在被动语态中时, to 则不能省略。动词 help 后的不定式可带 to, 亦可不带 to。例如:

Louise made her daughter study deep into the night in order that she would come out top in the class.

或者 Louise's daughter was made to study deep into the night in order that she would come out top in the class.

为了让女儿在班上名列前茅, 路易斯要她学习到深夜。

Regular exercise helps people (to) achieve better health.

经常锻炼使人健康。

### Exercise

#### 1. Put the following groups of words in proper order so that they form correct sentences.

**Model:** lived, in the village, we, have, for three years.

We have lived in the village for three years.

1) morning, looks, the, early, especially, the Summer Palace, beautiful, in

2) before, smoke, he, people, other, hates, to



3) do, film, want, see, when, to, you, the

---

4) not, so, the, have, late, should, boy, stayed

---

5) but, class, paper, the, it, to, to, writing, Sally, forgot, finished, bring

---

**2. Identify the basic sentence pattern of each of the following sentences, and then underline the subject and the verb.** (判断下列句子的句型, 并将主语(\_\_\_\_)和谓语动词(\_\_\_\_)用下划线划出。)

**Model:** Babies drink milk. (SVO)

- 1) There is a hole in the bottom of the sea.
- 2) Dogs and cats are sometimes the best of friends.
- 3) I find the film interesting.
- 4) I teach him English composition.
- 5) The noodles smell wonderful.

**3. Classify each of the following sentences as simple, compound, complex, or compound-complex. In addition, note any sentences that could be classified as imperative, interrogative, or exclamatory.** (说出下列句子属于什么类型: 简单句、并列句、复合句还是并列复合句。此外, 判断这些句子是祈使句、疑问句还是感叹句。)

- 1) The news that there will be an earthquake (地震) soon spread.
- 2) Tell me where he is.
- 3) If she had been more careful, she would have come out the first.
- 4) Have you decided when to start?
- 5) What a lovely day!
- 6) My parents do not expect me to become a scientist.
- 7) I am not a good researcher, but I believe I am a good teacher.
- 8) Look at what you have done!
- 9) You aren't here to make trouble, are you?
- 10) She wanted to go to college, so she studied very hard.

# Festival

## Part I Pre-reading

A festival is a day or time of the year when people have a holiday from work and celebrate some special events, often religious ones. Since ancient times, festivals have been playing an important role in people's life all over the world. People hold special ceremonies and get family reunions on festivals. As English learners, we have to know about the important festivals in English-speaking countries, especially in America and England.

### Questions

- 1) Can you name some festivals in English-speaking countries?
- 2) Do you know how people celebrate Christmas Day?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### Holiday Life in England

- 1 In England, Christmas Day and Good Friday have been holidays (literally "holy days") for religious reasons since the establishment of Christianity in this country. Christmas is celebrated on December 25, not Christmas Eve as in several other European countries.
- 2 Britain has fewer public holidays compared with other European countries. They are



usually described as Bank Holidays because they are days when banks are officially closed. The other public holidays (or "Bank Holidays") are Easter Monday, May Day (May 1<sup>st</sup>), the Spring Bank Holiday (the last Monday in May), the Summer Bank Holiday (the Last Monday in August), December 26<sup>th</sup> (Boxing Day), and New Year's Day. The term "Bank Holiday" goes back to the Bank Holidays Act of 1871, which owes its name to the fact that banks are closed on the days specified.

3 Boxing Day is a holiday of particularly British origin. The holiday takes its name from the old custom of giving employees or tradesmen (such as the milkman) an annual present or "Christmas box" on that day, and it has nothing to do with the sport of "boxing". If Christmas Day or Boxing Day falls at the weekend, the weekday which follows December 25<sup>th</sup> and 26<sup>th</sup> becomes a Bank Holiday. It is common to spend the day with family members or friends as a sort of "second" Christmas Day, where presents may be exchanged, the left-overs of the previous day are eaten or another family meal is prepared in celebration. It is also a day when stores launch one of the year's biggest sales periods. Boxing Day in the U.K. is traditionally a day for sporting activity, originally fox hunting, but as this is now banned, other hunts take place.

4 Easter Monday is usually regarded as an unofficial ceremony of spring. In many towns there are funfairs. The fair on Hampstead, Heath, in the north of London, is particularly famous. Easter Monday used to be the day on which the ladies would parade in the parks, wearing new dresses and hats. Although this custom is dying out, the tradition still provides the ladies with an excuse for buying spring clothes.

5 The August Bank Holiday is probably the most popular one of the year, partly because it comes at a time when children are not at school. Very many people try to make this a long weekend, and go away to seaside or the country. The result is that anyone who can manage to take a holiday at another time would be well advised to do so, for the roads get crowded with traffic (in England, there are more vehicles per mile of road than in any other country).

(447 words)

## New Words

literally	/ 'lɪtərəli /	adv.	according to the most basic or original meaning of a word or expression 照字面意义地
holy	/ 'həuli/	adj.	connected with God and religion 与神或宗教有关的, 神的, 上帝的; regarded as sacred; consecrated 视为神圣的; 神圣化的
religious	/ ri'lidʒpəs/	adj.	of religion 宗教的; 宗教上的; (of a person) believing in and practising a religion (指人) 笃信宗教的, 虔诚的



establishment	/is'tæbliʃmənt/	<i>n.</i>	action of creating or setting up 设立; 建立
Christianity	/,kristi'æni:/	<i>n.</i>	the religion that is based on the teachings of Jesus Christ and the belief that he was the son of God 基督教
celebrate	/'selibreit/	<i>v.</i>	to show that a day or an event is important by doing sth. special on it 庆祝, 庆贺
officially	/ə'fɪʃəli/	<i>adv.</i>	publically or formally 正式地
specify	/'spesɪfaɪ/	<i>vt.</i>	to state something in an exact and detailed way 明确说明, 具体指定
particularly	/pə'tɪkjʊləli/	<i>adv.</i>	especially; more than usual or more than others 特别, 尤其
origin	/'ɒrɪdʒɪn/	<i>n.</i>	the place or situation in which something begins to exist 起点, 开端, 来源
custom	/'kʌstəm/	<i>n.</i>	something that is done by people in a particular society because it is traditional 习俗, 风俗
tradesman	/'treɪdzmən/	<i>n.</i>	someone who buys and sells goods or services, especially in a shop 店主, 商人
annual	/'ænjuəl/	<i>adj.</i>	happening once a year 年度的
sale	/seɪl/	<i>n.</i>	(in a shop, etc.) occasion when goods are sold at lower prices than usual (商店等的) 廉售, 贱卖
exchange	/ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/	<i>vt.</i>	give sth. and receive sth. (from another person) in return 交换; 交易
left-overs		<i>n.</i>	food that has not been eaten at the end of a meal 剩饭 (菜)
previous	/'pri:vjəs/	<i>adj.</i>	coming before in time or order (时间或顺序上) 先的, 前的
celebration	/,selɪ'breɪʃən/	<i>n.</i>	an occasion or party when you celebrate something 庆祝 (会), 庆典
launch	/lɔ:ntʃ/	<i>vt.</i>	to start an activity, especially an organized one 发动, 推出, 发射
fox	/fɒks/	<i>n.</i>	a wild animal like a dog with reddish-brown fur, a pointed face, and a thick tail 狐狸
hunt	/hʌnt/	<i>vt.</i>	to chase animals and birds in order to kill or catch them 打猎
		<i>n.</i>	act of hunting wild animals; chase 打猎
ban	/bæn/	<i>vt.</i>	to forbid sth. officially 取缔, 查禁
unofficial	/,ʌnə'fɪʃəl/	<i>adj.</i>	not official 非官方的; 非正式的
ceremony	/'serɪməni/	<i>n.</i>	a public or religious occasion that includes a series of



funfair	/'fʌnfər/	<i>n.</i>	formal or traditional actions 典礼, 仪式 an event held in a park or field at which people pay to ride on various machines for amusement or try to win prizes in games 游艺会, 游艺场, 游乐园
fair	/fɛə/	<i>n.</i>  <i>adj.</i>	an event at which people, businesses, etc. show and sell their goods 集市 treating everyone in a way that is right or equal 公平的
parade	/pə'reid/	<i>vi.</i>	march or walk in a procession or in order to display sth. 游行
tradition	/trə'dɪʃən/	<i>n.</i>	a belief, custom or way of doing sth. that has existed for a long time among a particular group of people; a set of these beliefs or customs 传统, 惯例
excuse	/ɪks'kju:z/	<i>n.</i>	(true or invented) reason given to explain or defend one's behavior; apology 理由; 解释; 道歉
partly	/'pɑ:tli/	<i>adv.</i>	to some extent; not completely 在一定程度上, 部分地
seaside	/'si:said/	<i>n.</i>	the areas or towns near the sea, where people go to enjoy themselves 海滨
vehicle	/'vi:ɪkl/	<i>n.</i>	(formal) a machine with an engine that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck 交通工具, 车辆

## Phrases and Expressions

compare... with...	比较
go back	回去; 追溯
owe sth.to sb./sth.	将某事物归因、归源或归功于某人/某事物
have nothing to do with	与……毫无关系
take place	发生, 进行, 举行
be regarded as	被认为是
used to do	表达过去经常的或持续的行为; 过去常常
die out	逐渐消失, 灭绝

## Proper Names

Christmas Day	圣诞节(基督教节日, 12月25日, 纪念耶稣的诞生)
Good Friday	耶稣受难节(基督教节日, 即复活节前的星期五, 纪念耶稣)

Christmas Eve	基督在十字架上受刑而死)
Easter Monday	圣诞节前夜, 耶诞夜
	复活节次日
Boxing Day	(英)(致赠员工、信差等的) 耶诞节后第一个周日, 耶诞礼物日, 节礼日 (通常为耶诞节的次日, 即十二月二十六之公休日 (bank holiday), 如遇星期日则顺延一天)
Bank Holidays Act	银行假日法令
Hampstead	汉普斯特 (英国伦敦一旧行政区)

Notes

1. (Para. 1) In England, Christmas Day and Good Friday have been holidays (literally “holy days” ) for religious reasons since the establishment of Christianity in this country.

*religious* *adj.*  
of religion 宗教的; 宗教上的 (of a person) believing in and practising a religion (指人) 笃信宗教的, 虔诚的  
e.g. religious worship, belief, faith  
宗教礼拜, 信仰

*establishment* *n.*  
action of creating or setting up 设立; 建立  
e.g. the establishment of a new college  
新学院的成立

- 参考译文: 在英国, 由于宗教原因, 自从基督教在这个国家建立以来, 圣诞节和耶稣受难日就一直是节日 (字面意思即 “神圣的日子” )。

2. (Para. 2) They are usually described as Bank Holidays because they are days when banks are officially closed.

*describe...as...*  
say what sb./sth. is like; depict sth. in words 把……形容、描述成……  
e.g. The man was described as tall and dark, and aged about 20.  
那名男子被描述为又高又黑, 大概 20 岁。

- 参考译文: 它们一般被称做银行假日, 因为在这些日子银行不营业。

3. (Para. 2) The term "Bank Holiday" goes back to the Bank Holidays Act of 1871, which owes its name to the fact that banks are closed on the days specified.

*go back to*  
be made or started at 追溯到  
e.g. The story went back to thousands of years ago. 这个故事追溯到几千年以前。

*owe sth. to sb./sth.*  
1) be in debt to (sb.) (for goods, etc.) 欠 (某人) 债 (因货物等)



e.g. He still owes (us) for the goods he received last month.

他上月收到货物, 现在还欠着(我们)款呢。

2) recognize sb./sth. as the cause or source of sth. 将某事物归因、归源或归功于某人/某事物

e.g. We owe this discovery to Newton.

我们的这一发现归功于牛顿。

**specify** vt.

to state something in an exact and detailed way 明确说明, 具体指定

e.g. The directions specify how the medicine is to be used.

说明书上规定了这药如何服用。

**the days specified** 指定的日子

specified: 过去分词作定语, 修饰 days, 表示被动意义。

- **参考译文:**“银行假日”这一说法可以追溯到 1871 年颁布的《银行假日法令》, 因为在指定日期银行不营业, 这一法令故此得名。

4. (Para. 3) It is common to spend the day with family members or friends as a sort of “second” Christmas Day, where presents may be exchanged, the left-overs of the previous day are eaten or another family meal is prepared in celebration.

*It is common to do sth.*

做某事很普遍

e.g. It is common to catch cold these days.

这些天得感冒很普遍。

- **扩展**

**It is + adj. + to + v. :** 做某事很…

**It is + adj. + that…:** 做某事很…

e.g. It is nice to see you here.

在这儿见到你真高兴。

It is nice that you come here.

你来这里真好。

- **参考译文:** 和家人或朋友一起把这天当做“第二个”圣诞节来过是很普遍的, 可以互换礼物, 把前一天剩下的饭菜吃掉, 或者重新准备一顿家庭大餐。

5. (Para. 3) Boxing Day in the U.K. is traditionally a day for sporting activity, originally fox hunting, but as this is now banned, other hunts take place.

**as** conj.

because 因为

e.g. We didn't know what to do as we were just visiting there.

我们不知道该怎么办, 因为当时我们仅仅在那里作访问。

**ban** vt.

to forbid sth. officially 取缔, 查禁

e.g. Swimming is banned in this lake.

这个湖里不准游泳。



- **参考译文：**在英国，按照传统，节礼日会进行一些体育运动，起初是猎狐，但是现在已被禁止，所以代之以其他的捕猎活动。

**6. (Para. 4) Although this custom is dying out, the tradition still provides the ladies with an excuse for buying spring clothes.**

*provide sb. with sth.*

give sth. to sb. or make it available for them to use 提供某物给某人

e.g. The firm have provided me with a car.

公司供给我一辆汽车。

- **参考译文：**尽管这一风俗正在慢慢消失，这个传统还是给女士们提供了一个买春装的借口。

**7. (Para. 5) The result is that anyone who can manage to take a holiday at another time would be well advised to do so, for the roads get crowded with traffic**

*so adv.*

used to refer back to an idea, action, quality, situation etc. that has just been mentioned 像这样

e.g. “Will I need my umbrella?”

“我需要带伞吗？”

“I don’t think so.”

“我不这样认为。”

在这句话中 so 指代的是 “to take a holiday at another time”。

“who can manage to take a holiday at another time” 作 anyone 的定语。

- **参考译文：**结果就是，人们会建议在可能的情况下尽量选择在其他时间出行度假，因为路上交通实在太拥挤了。

## Text Comprehension

**1. Decide whether the following statements are true or false according to the text.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) In England, Christmas Day and Good Friday have been holidays for religious reasons.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2) In England Christmas is celebrated on Christmas Eve.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3) The term “Bank Holiday” owes its name to the fact that banks are opened on the days specified.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4) Fox hunting used to take place on Boxing Day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5) Easter Monday is usually regarded as an official ceremony of spring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6) The most popular Bank Holiday in England is the Spring Bank Holiday.

**2. Answer the following questions according to the text.**

- 1) When did Christmas Day become a holiday in England?
- 2) Why are Britain public holidays described as Bank Holidays?
- 3) What days are public holidays in England?
- 4) How does Boxing Day take its name?



- 5) Does fox hunting still take place on Boxing Day nowadays?
- 6) How is Easter Monday celebrated?
- 7) Why is the August Bank Holiday probably the most popular one of the year?
- 8) What is the result that so many people take holiday during the August Bank Holiday?

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

launch	annual	previous	religious	hunt
origin	celebrate	ban	ceremony	tradition

- 1) November is a good time to \_\_\_\_\_ deer.
- 2) Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his 24<sup>th</sup> birthday two days ago.
- 3) The wedding (婚礼) \_\_\_\_\_ was held on April fifteenth.
- 4) She is very \_\_\_\_\_ and goes to church three times a week.
- 5) Companies report to their shareholders (股东) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) Swimming is \_\_\_\_\_ in this lake.
- 7) The workers \_\_\_\_\_ a strike (罢工).
- 8) What was the \_\_\_\_\_ of the quarrel?
- 9) In many countries young people still keep up the \_\_\_\_\_ that women will get married in a long white dress.
- 10) It happened \_\_\_\_\_ to his arrival there.

### 2. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words in their correct forms.

#### custom, customer, customary

- 1) My father asked me to see the \_\_\_\_\_ to the door.
- 2) It is \_\_\_\_\_ to tip (给小费) the waiter.
- 3) The celebration of Christmas is a \_\_\_\_\_.

#### change, exchange, exchangeable

- 4) Sale goods in this shop are not \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ some pounds for dollars.
- 6) On second thoughts he would \_\_\_\_\_ his mind.

#### office, official, unofficial

- 7) She received several \_\_\_\_\_ letters this morning.
- 8) This news is \_\_\_\_\_, so don't be serious.
- 9) His \_\_\_\_\_ is on the third floor.

### part, partly, depart

- 10) The early \_\_\_\_\_ of her life was spent in Paris.
- 11) We will \_\_\_\_\_ for London at 10 am.
- 12) I feel \_\_\_\_\_ responsible for the problems we're in.

3. The suffix *-en* can be added to some adjectives to form verbs meaning “become” or “make (sth.) become”. It can also be added to certain nouns to form verbs meaning “gain [noun]” or “add to sth.’s [noun]”. Study the following models and complete the table with appropriate words.

<b>Models:</b>	short – shorten	thick – thicken
	length – lengthen	fright – frighten

Adjectives or Nouns	Verbs	Adjectives or Nouns	Verbs
broad		hard	
sharp		short	
weak		red	
wide		deep	
light		bright	

4. Fill in each of the blanks with a suitable preposition or adverb.

- 1) He turned \_\_\_\_\_ the light before going out.
- 2) They are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ her visit.
- 3) Marry lives near \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) The film has nothing to do \_\_\_\_\_ romance.
- 5) Professor White spoke \_\_\_\_\_ this book yesterday.
- 6) Many old customs have died \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7) I've earned my own living \_\_\_\_\_ I was seven, doing all kinds of jobs.
- 8) If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, no matter \_\_\_\_\_ great it is.

## Structure

1. Study the models and rewrite the following sentences.

<b>Model A:</b>	To spend the day with family members or friends as a sort of “second” Christmas Day is common. <i>It is common to spend the day with family members or friends as a sort of “second” Christmas Day.</i>
<b>Model B:</b>	That you practise oral English daily is very important. <i>It's important that you practise oral English daily.</i>



1) To cross the busy street is dangerous.

2) That he lost one of his legs in that accident was heartbreaking.

3) To cry over the spilt milk is useless.

4) To finish this project in a week is unable for us.

5) That we need more practice is obvious.

**2. Study the model and complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English using “so” .**

**Models:** The result is that anyone who can manage to take a holiday at another time would be well advised to do *so*.

“Will I need my umbrella?” “I don't think *so*.”

1) They asked me to call them, \_\_\_\_\_ (我那样做了).

2) “Do you believe that we'll win the game?” “\_\_\_\_\_” (我相信会).

3) I might be away next week. \_\_\_\_\_ (如果那样的话, 我就见不到你了).

4) I hear that you're a writer. \_\_\_\_\_ (是那样吗)?

5) “Is he coming tomorrow?” \_\_\_\_\_ (我希望会).

## Comprehensive Exercises

**1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.**

The fourth Thursday in November is called Thanksgiving Day (感恩节). 1) \_\_\_\_\_ this day, families and friends gather together, 2) \_\_\_\_\_ a meal, and give thanks for the blessings of good health, food, jobs, and families.

In 1620, a group of Pilgrims (清教徒) left from England to search for 3) \_\_\_\_\_ freedom, part of whom were Protestants (新教徒).

And they 4) \_\_\_\_\_ to America on a small sailboat named the Mayflower finally. And they 5) \_\_\_\_\_ at what is now Plymouth, Massachusetts (普利茅斯, 马萨诸塞州), in icy November. The price in human lives and tragedy had been great. 6) \_\_\_\_\_ the other hand, they saw new hope for

the future. The first 7) \_\_\_\_\_ Thanksgiving in America took place in Plymouth colony (殖民地), Massachusetts in October 1621. Thanksgiving did not become a national holiday 8) \_\_\_\_\_ 1863 during the American Civil War.

In the United States, thanksgiving dinner is practically the same all over the country. The table is always loaded with delicious food of many different kinds. Naturally, the main course is turkey (a bird 9) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Americans), with an array of vegetables and desserts. Pumpkin pie is often served in remembrance 10) \_\_\_\_\_ the first settlers.

- |                |               |              |               |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1) A. For      | B. On         | C. From      | D. By         |
| 2) A. shape    | B. share      | C. shame     | D. shave      |
| 3) A. religion | B. region     | C. religious | D. regional   |
| 4) A. shipped  | B. boated     | C. swam      | D. sailed     |
| 5) A. landed   | B. reached    | C. got       | D. settled    |
| 6) A. By       | B. At         | C. On        | D. In         |
| 7) A. official | B. government | C. office    | D. unofficial |
| 8) A. in       | B. until      | C. till      | D. after      |
| 9) A. born     | B. live       | C. native    | D. natural    |
| 10) A. with    | B. for        | C. to        | D. of         |

**2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in brackets.**

- 1) 他的家族可追溯到 18 世纪。(go back to)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2) 这位演员把他的成功归功于他妻子的支持。(owe...to...)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) 很多野生动物面临着灭绝的危险。(die out)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4) 在大学时我经常打篮球。(used to do)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) 乔治声称自己与这次事故无关。(have nothing to do with)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Part III Extensive Reading (I)

## Text B

### Working Christmas Day

- 1 It was unusually quiet in the emergency room on December 25.
- 2 I was triage nurse that day. I didn't think there would be any patients, sighing about



having to work on Christmas. Just then five bodies showed up at my desk, a pale woman and four small children.

3 “Are you all sick?” I asked.

4 “Yes,” she said weakly and lowered her head.

5 But when it came to descriptions of their presenting problems, things got a little unclear. Two of the children had headaches, but the headaches weren't accompanied by the normal body language of holding the head or trying to keep it still. Two children had earaches, but only one could tell me which ear was affected. The mother complained of a cough but seemed to work to produce it.

6 Something was wrong, but I didn't say anything but explained that it might be a little while before a doctor saw her. She responded, “Take your time; it's warm in here”.

7 I checked the chart after the admitting clerk had finished registering the family. No address—they were homeless. The waiting room was warm.

8 I looked out at the family huddled by the Christmas tree. The littlest one was pointing at the television and exclaiming something to her mother. The oldest one was looking at a decoration on the Christmas tree.

9 I went back to the nurses' station and mentioned we had a homeless family in the waiting room. The nurses, grumbling about working Christmas, turned to pity for a family just trying to get warm on Christmas. The team went into action, much as we do when there's a medical emergency. But this one was a Christmas emergency.

10 We were all offered a free meal in the hospital restaurant on Christmas Day, so we claimed that meal and prepared a big dinner for our Christmas guests. We needed presents. We put together oranges and apples in a basket. We collected from different departments candies, colored pencils and other things available that could be presents. As seriously as we met the physical needs of the patients that came to us that day, our team worked to meet the needs, and go beyond the expectations of a family who just wanted to be warm on Christmas Day.

11 Later, as the family walked to the door to leave, the four year old came running back, gave me a hug and spoke quietly to me, “Thanks for being our angels today”.

(417 words)

## New Words

emergency	/i'mə:dʒənsi/	<i>n.</i>	an unexpected and dangerous situation that must be dealt with immediately 紧急状况, 紧急需要, 紧急事件
emergency room		<i>n.</i>	急诊室
triage nurse	/'traɪdʒnə:s/	<i>n.</i>	分诊护士



patient	/'peɪʃənt/	<i>adj.</i>	able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behavior etc. without becoming angry 耐心的
		<i>n.</i>	someone who is receiving medical treatment from a doctor or in a hospital 病人
sigh	/sai/	<i>vt.</i>	to breathe in and out making a long sound, especially because you are bored, disappointed, tired etc. 叹息, 叹气
		<i>n.</i>	an act or sound of sighing 叹息, 叹气
pale	/peil/	<i>adj.</i>	(of a person, their face, etc.) having skin that is almost white; having skin that is whiter than usual because of illness, a strong emotion, etc 苍白的
lower	/'ləʊə/	<i>v.</i>	to reduce sth. or to become less in value, quality, etc. 放下, 降下, 降低
headache	/'hedeɪk/	<i>n.</i>	a pain in the head 头痛
accompany	/ə'kʌmpəni/	<i>vt.</i>	(formal) to travel or go somewhere with sb. 陪伴, 伴随
body language			肢体语言
still	/stil/	<i>adj.</i>	(almost) without movement or sound; quiet and calm (几乎) 不动或无声的; 静止的; 寂静的
earache	/'iəreɪk/	<i>n.</i>	pain inside the ear 耳痛
affect	/ə'fekt/	<i>vt.</i>	have an influence on (sb./sth.); produce an effect on 影响
complain	/kəm'pleɪn/	<i>v.</i>	say that one is dissatisfied, unhappy, etc. 投诉; 抱怨; 诉苦; 发牢骚
cough	/kɒf/	<i>vi.</i>	send out air from the lungs violently and noisily, esp to clear one's throat or when one has a cold, etc. 咳嗽
		<i>n.</i>	act or sound of coughing 咳嗽; 咳嗽声
respond	/rɪ'spɒnd/	<i>v.</i>	to do something as a reaction to something that has been said or done; to say or write something as a reply 回答, 答复, 作出反应
check	/tʃek/	<i>vt.</i>	to examine sth. to see if it is correct, safe or satisfactory 检查
		<i>n.</i>	(US)cheque 支票
admitting clerk			接待员
register	/'redʒɪstə/	<i>vt.</i>	put name on list 登记, 注册, 挂号
address	/ə'dres/	<i>n.</i>	details of where a person lives, works or can be found, and where letters, etc may be delivered 住址; 地址; 通讯处



homeless waiting room	/ˈhəʊmlɪs/	adj.	having no home 无家的, 无家可归的 a room where people can sit while they are waiting, for example for a bus or train, or to see a doctor or dentist 等待室, 候车室, 候诊室
huddle	/ˈhʌdl/	v.	(cause sb./sth. To) crowd or be heaped together, esp. in a small space (使某人/某物)聚集在一起 (尤指在某狭小空间内)
exclaim	/ɪksˈkleɪm/	v.	cry out suddenly and loudly from pain, anger, surprise, etc. (因疼痛、愤怒、惊奇等)惊叫, 呼喊
the nurse' station mention	/ˈmenʃən/	vt.	护士站 write or speak about sth./sb. briefly; say the name of sth./sb.; refer to sth./sb. 写到、说到或提到某事物/某人
grumble	/ˈgrʌmbl/	v.	to keep complaining in an unhappy way 抱怨, 咕哝
offer	/ˈɔːfə/	vt.	to ask someone if they would like to have something, or to hold something out to them so that they can take it 给予, 提供
		n.	statement offering to do or give sth. to sb. 提议, 建议
			statement offering to do or give sth. to sb. (为某人做某事物或给某人某事物的)提议, 建议
claim	/kleɪm/	vt.	say sth. is true 声称 demand legal right 索取 saying sth. is true 声称
		n.	legal right 对某事物的权利
department	/dɪˈpɑːtmənt/	n.	a section of a large organization such as a government, business, university, etc. 部, 部门, 系
available	/əˈveɪləbl/	adj.	(of things) that can be used or obtained (指物)可用的或可得到的 (of people) free to be seen, talked to, etc. (指人)可会见的, 可与之交谈的等
physical	/ˈfɪzɪkəl/	adj.	of the body 身体的; 肉体的 of or concerning physics 物理的; 物理学的
expectation	/ˌekspekˈteɪʃən/	n.	a belief that sth. will happen because it is likely 期待, 预期



## Phrases and Expressions

show up	来到，露面
when it comes to...	当谈到
take your time	别着急，慢慢来
point at	用手指着
meet the needs of	满足……的需要
go beyond one's expectation/ the expectation of sb.	超过……的预期
give sb. a hug	拥抱……

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 2) I didn't think there would be any patients, sighing about having to work on Christmas.

*sigh* v.

1) to breathe in and out making a long sound, especially because you are bored, disappointed, tired etc. 叹息，叹气

e.g. He sighed with pleasure after the excellent meal.

他美餐一顿之后，满足地叹了口气。

2) an act or sound of sighing 叹息，叹气

e.g. We all breathed a sigh of relief when we heard they were safe.

听说他们是安全的，我们全都松了一口气。

● 参考译文：我想不会有什么病人来的，叹息着圣诞节还要工作。

### 2. (Para. 5) But when it came to descriptions of their presenting problems, things got a little unclear.

*when it comes to sth.*

当谈到、提及

e.g. That has been particularly true when it comes to Burma.

当涉及缅甸问题时，这一点尤其正确。

● 参考译文：但是当他们开始描述现在的病情时，事情就有点让人摸不着头脑了。

### 3. (Para. 5) The mother complained of a cough but seemed to work to produce it.

*complain* v.

1) say that one is dissatisfied, unhappy, etc. 投诉；抱怨；诉苦；发牢骚  
(to sb.) (about/at sth.); complain (that + 从句)

e.g. She complained to me about his rudeness.

她向我诉苦说他粗鲁。

He complained (to the waiter) that his meal was cold.

他（向服务员）抱怨说饭菜是凉的。

2) report (a pain, etc.) 诉说（病痛等）；主诉



**complain of sth.**

e.g. The patient is complaining of acute earache.

病人说耳部剧痛。

- 参考译文: 孩子的母亲诉说她有咳嗽症状, 但咳嗽好像是用力装出来的。

**4. (Para. 8) I looked out at the family huddled by the Christmas tree.**

**huddle v.**

(cause sb./sth. to) crowd or be heaped together, esp. in a small space (esp. passive 尤用于被动语态) (使某人/某物) 聚集在一起 (尤指在某狭小空间内)

e.g. We all huddled around the radio to hear the news.

我们大家围聚在收音机旁听新闻广播。

- 参考译文: 我向外看去, 看着挤在圣诞树旁的一家人。

**5. (Para. 9) The nurses, grumbling about working Christmas, turned to pity for a family just trying to get warm on Christmas.**

**grumble v.**

to keep complaining in an unhappy way 抱怨, 咕哝

(at/to sb.) (about/at/over sth.); grumble that + 从句

e.g. Farmers are always grumbling about the weather.

农民总是抱怨天气。

They kept grumbling that they were cold.

他们一直抱怨说冷。

- 参考译文: 原本抱怨圣诞节还要上班的护士们都转而对在圣诞节只祈求温暖的这家人感到非常同情。

**6. (Para. 9) The team went into action, much as we do when there's a medical emergency.**

**go into action**

start sth. planned, esp. military attack (军事) 行动; 动手

e.g. As soon as the guards left, the prisoners went into action according to their escape plan.

哨兵刚离开, 囚犯们就按越狱计划开始行动。

**much as**

very much like 好像

e.g. He likes apples, much as his wife likes bananas.

他喜欢吃苹果, 就好像他妻子喜欢吃香蕉。

- 参考译文: 我们团队马上展开行动, 就好像对待医疗紧急情况一样。

**7. (Para. 10) As seriously as we met the physical needs of the patients that came to us that day, our team worked to meet the needs, and go beyond the expectations of a family who just wanted to be warm on Christmas Day.**

**as...as**

used in comparisons 同……一样

e.g. It is as white as snow.

它像雪一样白。

Jerry knows all this as well as I do.

杰里和我一样，对此十分清楚。

**meet the needs of**

satisfy the needs of 满足…的需要

e.g. We'll do our best to meet the needs of our customers.

我们将尽力满足顾客的需要。

go beyond one's expectation/ the expectation of sb.

be better than one has expected 超出某人的预期/预想

e.g. Her performance in the final examination went beyond the expectation of her parents.

她的期末考试成绩超出了她父母的预期。

- **参考译文：**我们的团队严肃地工作，就像满足当天其他患者的需要一样，我们尽力满足这家人只想过一个温暖圣诞节的愿望，并远远超乎了他们的期望。

## Exercises

### 1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words according to the text.

It was on a 1) \_\_\_\_\_ Day. I had to work, being a 2) \_\_\_\_\_ nurse. Having to work on Christmas made me upset. Then a mother and her four small children 3) \_\_\_\_\_ up. They told me that they were ill, but soon I found that it was not true. As soon as I realized that they came into the hospital in order to get 4) \_\_\_\_\_, I went to the nurses' 5) \_\_\_\_\_ and told the nurses. Turing to 6) \_\_\_\_\_ for this family, we went into 7) \_\_\_\_\_. We offered our meal to them, and collected some suitable things as 8) \_\_\_\_\_ for the children. What we did went beyond the 9) \_\_\_\_\_ of the family. When they left, a boy came to me and said: "thanks for being our 10) \_\_\_\_\_ today."

### 2. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

complain	emergency	pale	lower
available	accompany	claim	still

- 1) You must be ill. You look rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) Tickets are \_\_\_\_\_ free of charge from the school.
- 3) She \_\_\_\_\_ that the exam was too hard.
- 4) Mary \_\_\_\_\_ that the ring was stolen, not lost.
- 5) Food prices \_\_\_\_\_ during the fall.
- 6) The room was \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the speech.
- 7) Lightning usually \_\_\_\_\_ thunder.
- 8) There are four \_\_\_\_\_ exits in the department store.

### 3. Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English using "as...as".

- 1) He has earned \_\_\_\_\_ (和我一样多的钱).



- 2) Amy will \_\_\_\_\_ (很快就和她妈妈一样高了).  
 3) We worked \_\_\_\_\_ (像美国其他球队一样努力).  
 4) Tell me \_\_\_\_\_ (尽快告诉我你的决定).

#### 4. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

- 1) But when it came to descriptions of their presenting problems, things got a little unclear. Two of the children had headaches, but the headaches weren't accompanied by the normal body language of holding the head or trying to keep it still. Two children had earaches, but only one could tell me which ear was affected.

---

---

---

- 2) The nurses, grumbling about working Christmas, turned to pity for a family just trying to get warm on Christmas. The team went into action, much as we do when there's a medical emergency.

---

---

---

## Part IV Extensive Reading (II)

### Text C

### Merry Christmas

1 Christmas is looked forward to by a child with even greater excitement than the excitement with which he look forward to his own birthday, because Christmas is everybody's birthday, with the party going on all over the world. Christmas is to every child, in his own way, the wonder of the world and the light of life.

2 Christmas is smells, brought in from the cold to the fire, a mixture of perfume made of the pleasant of snow mixing with the scent of holiness; of Christmas tree mingling with the gifts of new clothes and new shoes; of Christmas candy and the bright, painted toys mixing with the smell of happiness that comes out of people at Christmas, no matter how deeply it is buried.

3 Christmas is sounds—the talking and the laughing, the shouting and the singing of childhood's hymns—the tinkling of the music box, which says “Hosanna” in the child's language of gladness, no matter if it is only saying, “This is the way we wash our clothes,

wash our clothes, wash our clothes!” in English.

4 Christmas is tastes—the round, golden taste of the orange—the taste of the perfect round object, which has hung among the leaves in the warm sun. It is the red-and-white-striped taste of peppermint. It is the sharp, sweet juice of the apple from the toe of the stocking.

5 Because it is the child’s day, the coming of Christmas up the white steps of December transforms mothers and fathers into the children they once were—until at last, on Christmas Eve, their Christmas songs beside the tree is with the serious voice of childhood. And the tears in their eyes are once again the tears caused by great expectations of wonderful things to come.

(296 words)

## New Words

wonder	/'wʌndə/	<i>n.</i>	feeling of surprise mixed with admiration, bewilderment or disbelief 惊奇; thing or event that causes this feeling 令人感到惊奇的事物
		<i>v.</i>	to be very surprised by sth.感到惊奇; to think about sth. and try to decide what is true, what will happen, what you should do, etc.想知道
mixture	/'mɪkstʃə/	<i>n.</i>	a combination of different things 混合物
perfume	/'pə:fju:m/	<i>n.</i>	a sweet or pleasant smell 香味
scent	/sent/	<i>n.</i>	a pleasant smell that something has 气味, 香味
mingle	/'mɪŋɡl/	<i>v.</i>	form a mixture with sth.; combine 与某物混合; 结合
bury	/'beri/	<i>vt.</i>	to place a dead body in a grave 埋葬; to hide sth. in the ground 埋藏
childhood	/'tʃaɪldhʊd/	<i>n.</i>	the period of sb.’s life when they are a child 童年
hymn	/hɪm/	<i>n.</i>	a song of praise to God 赞美诗, 圣歌, 颂歌
tinkling	/'tɪŋkliŋ/	<i>n.</i>	叮当声
Hosanna	/həu'zænə/	<i>Interj.</i>	shout of praise and worship to God 和散那 (赞美和崇敬上帝的呼喊声)
object	/əb'dʒekt/	<i>n.</i>	a thing that can be seen and touched, but is not alive 物体
hang	/hæŋ/	<i>v.</i>	be supported, or support (sth.) from above, esp. so that the lower end is free 悬挂, 吊; to kill someone by dropping them with a rope around their neck, or to die in this way, especially as a punishment for a serious crime 绞死
peppermint	/'pepə,mɪnt/	<i>n.</i>	a plant with a strong taste and smell, often used in sweets 胡椒薄荷; a sweet with the taste of peppermint 薄荷糖



toe	/təʊ/	<i>n.</i>	one of the five small parts that stick out from the foot 脚趾; part of a sock, shoe, etc. that covers the toes (袜、鞋等的)足尖部
stocking	/ˈstɒkɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	either of a pair of tight-fitting coverings for the feet and legs, reaching to or above the knee 长筒袜
transform	/trænsˈfɔ:m/	<i>vt.</i>	completely change the appearance or character of sth./sb. 完全改变某事物/某人的外观或特性
wonderful	/ˈwʌndəfəl/	<i>adj.</i>	very good, pleasant or enjoyable 极好的

## Phrases and Expressions

look forward to sth.	盼望, 期待
be made of	由……组成/构成
minge with	混合
no matter	无论, 不管
transform into	把……变成……
to come	未来的

## Notes

1. (*Para. 1*) Christmas is looked forward to by a child with even greater excitement than the excitement with which he look forward to his own birthday, because Christmas is everybody's birthday, with the party going on all over the world. Christmas is to every child, in his own way, the wonder of the world and the light of life.

*look forward to sth.*

expect; be eager for; anticipate 期待; 盼望

*e.g.* Frank was looking forward to that evening's date.

弗兰克期待着那天晚上的约会。

Jim has been working hard and looks forward to spending his vacation lying on the beach doing nothing.

吉姆一直工作努力, 他渴望能躺在海边什么也不干, 度过假期。

*even adv.*

even bigger/better/brighter etc.

(used to emphasize a comparative 用以加强比较级的语气) still; yet 甚至; 还

*e.g.* This will make our job even more difficult.

这会让我们的工作更难得多。

The new version is even better than the old one.

新版本比旧版本好得多。

**go on**

happen 发生

e.g. I don't know what's going on.

我不知道发生了什么事。

What were the children doing while all this was going on?

当这一切发生的时候孩子们在做什么？

**in one's own way**

in one's own manner; freely 按自己的方式；自由地

e.g. They can act in their own way.

他们可以按自己的办法行事。

- **参考译文：**每个孩子都很期待圣诞节，比期待自己的生日更兴奋，因为圣诞节是每个人的生日，全世界都会举行聚会。对每个孩子而言，圣诞节以他们自己的方式，成为了世界的奇迹和生命之光。

**2. (Para. 2) Christmas is smells, brought in from the cold to the fire, a mixture of perfume made of the pleasant smell of snow mixing with the scent of holiness; of Christmas tree mingling with the gifts of new clothes and new shoes; of Christmas candy and the bright, painted toys mixing with the smell of happiness that comes out of people at Christmas, no matter how deeply it is buried.**

**mixture n.**

a combination of different things 混合物

e.g. The city was a mixture of old and new buildings.

该市是新旧建筑物的混合体。

这句话难点在于弄清楚这部分的结构，即 a mixture of perfume made of ..., of..., of..., 后面三个 of 是并列结构，都是 made of 结构的组成部分，made of 作定语修饰 perfume。而这三个 of 后面跟着的名词又各有其修饰成分，分别是：mixing with..., mingling with..., mixing with...。

**be made of**

由.....做成

e.g. Ships used to be made entirely of wood.

从前的船全是用木头造的。

**mix A with B / mix with sth.**

if two or more substances mix or you mix them, they combine, usually in a way that means they cannot easily be separated 混合

e.g. Shake the bottle well so that the oil mixes with the vinegar.

使劲摇晃瓶子，以便油和醋能混合在一起。

**no matter how/who/what/when/where etc.**

regardless of; in spite of 无论；不管

e.g. He had to get the car fixed no matter how much it cost.

无论花多少钱他都得把车子送去修一下。



No matter when he comes, I won't see him.

无论他什么时候来,我都不会见他。

I'll always love you, no matter what happens.

无论发生什么事情,我将永远爱你。

- **参考译文:** 圣诞节是气味,这种气味被从寒冷的屋外带到温暖的炉火旁,这种气味是各种美妙味道的混合:雪的芬芳混合着圣洁的气息;圣诞树的气味和着新衣服新鞋子等圣诞礼物的味道;圣诞糖果和色彩亮丽的玩具的香味交汇着圣诞节快乐的气息,不管这种气息埋藏得有多深。

### 3. (Para. 5) ...the coming of Christmas up the white steps of December transforms mothers and fathers into the children they once were...

*transform... into...*

completely change the appearance or character of sth./sb. 完全改变某事物/某人的外观或特性

e.g. The movie transformed her almost overnight from an unknown schoolgirl into a megastar.

这部电影几乎一夜之间就使她由一个寂寂无名的学生变成了一个巨星。

- **参考译文:** 踏着十二月的白色阶梯而来的圣诞节把父亲和母亲们变回了孩童时代的他们。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 打电话

#### Making the Phone

正如在其他很多情境下,汉语表达和英语表达存在差异一样,我们需要了解在不同语言环境下的常见打电话用语也是有差异的。因此,在英语学习过程中,了解并掌握打电话时常用的英语表达对提高口语表达水平是很必要的。

#### Useful Expressions

1. A: Hello!

B: Hello! (若是较正式或礼貌,可报出接电话人姓名、公司名或电话等)

2. A: May I speak to Daisy? / Is Daisy here? / Can you connect me to Daisy?

B: 若接电话的正是本人,则:

Speaking.

This is Daisy/ she.



You're speaking/ talking to her.

若现在不方便接电话，则：

Hi, I'm busy; I'll get back to you in a minute.

Can I call back? Something has come up.

I'll have to take your number and call you back.

若接电话的不是本人，要去叫他/她来接听，则：

Would you like to hold?

Hold the line, please.

Hold on, please.

Sure, I'll go and get her.

若打错电话，则：

I'm afraid you've got the wrong number.

若要找的人不在，则：

He's not here right now.

He's out.

He's not available right now.

He's in a meeting right now.

You've just missed him.

He's just stepped out.

...

可留下口信：

Can I take a message?

Would you like to leave a message?

询问是否当要找的人回来时，是否需要他/她回电话：

Should I tell him you'll call back, or do you want him to call you?

If you leave your name and number, I'll have him call you back as soon as he's available.

### 3. 询问是谁打来的电话：

A: Hello.

B: Hello.

A: May I speak to Mr. Johnson?

B: This is him. Who's that? /Who's calling, please? /Who's speaking, please? / May I ask who's calling?

A: This is David. (不用 I am ..., 或 My name is...)

...

## Practice

Choose the answer that best completes each dialogue.

1) A: May I speak to Dr. Smith?

B: \_\_\_\_\_



A. I'm Dr. Smith

C. Who are you?

2) A: Hello. Is Judy here?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. She's not available now.

C. Who's that?

3) ...

B: May I ask who's calling?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

A. I'm Peter.

C. This is Sam.

4) A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Yes. Please tell him that the meeting will be held at 3 o'clock.

A. When will the meeting be held?

C. Anything wrong?

5) A: Can you connect me to Helen?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. Hold on, please.

C. Hold out, Please.

B. I'm him.

D. Speaking, please.

B. She doesn't want to speak to you.

D. Tell me your name.

B. My name is Peter.

D. Speaking

B. May I take a message?

D. Why?

B. Hold in, please.

D. Hold up, please.

## Grammar

### 动词

### Verbs

表示动作和状态的词叫做动词。根据其在句中的功能，动词可分为四类，分别是：实义动词 (Notional Verb)、连系动词 (Link Verb)、助动词 (Auxiliary Verb)、情态动词 (Modal Verb)。

#### 一、连系动词

连系动词也称系动词。有些不具词义；有些具有词义，但不能单独用作谓语，后边必须跟表语（亦称补语），构成系表结构说明主语的状况、性质、特征等情况。

常用的连系动词有：表示状态存在的 be, seem, appear, look, feel, smell, sound, taste, remain; 表示状态变化的 become, grow, get, come, go, turn 等。例如：

I **am** a student.

我是一名学生。

The trees **turn** yellow in autumn.

秋天树叶变黄。

The dish **smells** good.



这道菜闻起来很香。

He **seems** (to be) very sad.

他看起来很伤心。

She **grew** rich within a short time.

她没多长时间就富了。

## 二、实义动词

实义动词也称主动词或行为动词。是表示动作的动词。可分为以下三类：

A. 及物动词 (*vt.*)：后面需要带宾语，意义才完整。

Mary **opened** the door to me.

玛丽给我开了门。

He **asked** the teacher a few questions.

他问了老师几个问题。

Children and young people **like** bright colors.

孩子和年轻人喜欢明亮的颜色。

B. 不及物动词 (*vi.*)：本身意义完整，后面不带宾语。

The car **stopped**.

车停了。

George's father **lives** here.

乔治的父亲住在这里。

The exam **ended** at 11:30 a.m.

考试上午十一点半结束。

C. 兼作及物动词和不及物动词：许多动词既可以作及物动词，又可以作不及物动词，如 close, begin, Study, leave, work 等。

He **studied** English at Middle School.

他在中学学过英语。( *vt.* )

He **studied** very hard.

他学习很用功。( *vi.* )

The post office **closes** at 9:00 p.m.

邮局晚上九点关门。( *vi.* )

**Close** the window, please.

请关一下窗户。( *vt.* )

Shall we **begin** now?

我们现在开始吗？( *vi.* )

Bill **began** working as a sailor after he left school.

比尔毕业后当水手。( *vt.* )

## 三、助动词

协助主要动词构成谓语动词词组的词叫助动词 (Auxiliary Verb)。被协助的动词称



作主动词(Main Verb)。

助动词自身没有词义,不可单独使用,例如:

He doesn't like English.

他不喜欢英语。

(doesn't 是助动词,无词义; like 是主动词,有词义)

#### A. 基本助动词

基本助动词只有三个: be, do, have。作为助动词, be, do, have 本身没有词汇意义,只在句中帮助主要动词构成一定的时态、语态、语气,或帮助构成否定句和疑问句, 例如:

I **am** listening to a Beethoven symphony.

我正在听一首贝多芬交响乐。(用于现在进行时)

My wife **doesn't** like chicken.

我妻子不喜欢鸡肉。(用于否定结构)

John **has** seen that movie.

约翰已经看过那个电影了。(用于现在完成时)

When **do** we meet again?

我们什么时候再见面?(用于疑问句)

The idea **was** given up years ago.

这个念头几年前就打消了。(用于被动语态)

**Do** come to the party tomorrow evening.

明晚一定来参加晚会。(加强语气)

He **did** know that.

他的确知道那件事。(加强语气)

#### B. 半助动词

半助动词指某些兼有主动词和助动词特征的语法结构。常见的半助动词结构有 have to, seem to, be able to, be going to 等, 例如:

I **have to** buy a new car.

我得买辆新车。

He **seems to** be disappointed.

他似乎很失望。

### 四、情态动词

情态动词具有一定词义,表示某种感情和语气,但不能单独用作谓语,在句中需和主要动词一起构成谓语。常用的情态动词有 can (could), may (might), must, have to (had to), ought to, used to, need, dare, shall, should, will, would。

It **may** snow before nightfall.

天黑前会下雪。

She grew up in Naples. She **must** know how to speak Italian.

她在那不勒斯长大的。她一定会说意大利语。

**Would** you let me use your pen a minute?



你能把钢笔借我一会儿吗?

If she became a movie star, she **could** afford a new home.

如果她成了电影明星的话, 她就会买得起新房子。

### Exercise

Choose the best answer for each of the following sentences.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ you follow her talk?  
A. Can                      B. Should                      C. Have                      D. Were
- 2) The lecture began before we \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. were seating              B. were seated              C. were sit              D. seated
- 3) Absorbed in reading a book on the bus, he had his wallet \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. stealing              B. to steal              C. have been stolen              D. stolen
- 4) Collecting stamps \_\_\_\_\_ a good hobby.  
A. is              B. are              C. was              D. were
- 5) I'm not feeling good. I \_\_\_\_\_ so much chocolate last night.  
A. didn't                      B. shouldn't  
C. should                      D. shouldn't have had
- 6) If he were here, we \_\_\_\_\_ ask him.  
A. will              B. can              C. could              D. do
- 7) He \_\_\_\_\_ CDs every time he goes shopping.  
A. bought              B. buy              C. buys              D. buying
- 8) \_\_\_\_\_ come and join us.  
A. Do              B. Will              C. May              D. Not
- 9) They \_\_\_\_\_ when I got there.  
A. had already leaving              B. have left  
C. are about to leave              D. were about to leave
- 10) My watch keeps good time, but his \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. do              B. doesn't              C. isn't              D. won't

## Writing Skills

### 常见句子错误

#### Sentence Structure Problems

英美句子是受严格的语法规则制约的, 在写作中如果违背这些规则, 那么写出的句子就会使人无法理解或引起歧义。以下是一些常见的典型句子错误及分析, 避免了这些问题的出



现, 才会写出符合语法规范的正确句子。

## 一、漏词

### 【例 1】

原句 The traveler was too tired and found a rock to sit.

评析 动词 sit 为不及物动词, 带宾语需跟介词, 此处在后面掉了介词 on。

试改 The traveler was too tired and found a rock to sit on.

## 二、混淆词义

### 【例 2】

原句 Good study habits attributed to his performance on tests.

评析 attribute...to 意为“把……归因于”; contribute to...意为“有助于”。

试改 His good study habits contributed to his good performance on tests.

He attributed his good performance on tests to his good study habits.

## 三、词性误用

### 1. 形容词错用

#### 【例 3】

原句 General speaking, pollution in China is not so serious as in America.

试改 Generally speaking, pollution in China is not so serious as that in America.

### 2. 动词错用

#### 【例 4】

原句 We hope the new machine will work faster, thus cut down on our costs.

试改 We hope the new machine will work faster, thus cutting down on our costs.

### 3. 名词错用

#### 【例 5】

原句 We must learn the base skills of language.

试改 We must learn the basic skills of language.

### 4. 指代不清

#### 【例 6】

原句 The old woman told my mother that she was right.

试改 The old woman said she was right and said so to my mother. /

“I am right. ” the old woman said to my mother.

## 四、主谓不一致

### 【例 7】

原句 There are a girl student and four boy students in the library.

评析 在“there+be”结构中, 谓语动词往往和靠近它的主语保持一致。这里, 靠近谓语动词的第一个主语是 a girl student。



试改 There is a girl student and four boy students in the library.

【例 8】

原句 Mary is one of the students who refuses to accept the invitation to the evening party.

评析 在“one of the+名词+who”结构中，who 引导的从句的谓语动词形式应与先行词保持一致。这里的先行词为复数名词 students。

试改 Mary is one of the students who refuse to accept the invitation to the evening party.

【例 9】

原句 Neither you nor he are capable of doing such work alone.

评析 两个或两个以上做主语用的名词或代词由并列连词 either...or, neither...nor 连接时，谓语动词的形式采用就近原则。

试改 Neither you nor he is capable of doing such work alone.

【例 10】

原句 Many a student have that kind of experience.

评析 many a 或 more than one 所修饰的词用作主语时，谓语动词多用单数形式。

试改 Many a student has that kind of experience.

【例 11】

原句 It is reported that the police is on the track of the two criminals.

评析 集体名词做主语，谓语动词的形式有所变化。当主语表示一个整体时，谓语动词用单数；当主语强调集体中的成员时，谓语动词用复数。常见的集体名词有 family, audience, army, class, crew, company 等。但是，集体名词 police, cattle, people, poultry 等做主语时，无论在什么情况下，谓语动词都用复数。

试改 It is reported that the police are on the track of the two criminals.

## 五、非平行结构

【例 12】

原句 The old woman was sure of her son's coming with many birthday presents and that her daughter would send her a present.

评析 此句宾语不平行。

试改 The old woman was sure that her son was coming with many birthday presents and that her daughter would send her a present.

## 六、悬垂修饰语

【例 13】

原句 Looking up at the sky, a bird was flying round the tree.

评析 此句为悬垂分词。

试改 Looking up at the sky, he saw a bird flying round the tree.

【例 14】

原句 To ski properly, a course of instruction is necessary.

评析 此句为悬垂动词不定式。



试改 To ski properly, a beginner should take a course of instruction.

【例 15】

原句 When only a small boy, my father took me with him to Chicago.

评析 此句为悬垂省略从句。

试改 When I was only a small boy, my father took me with him to Chicago.

## 七、修饰语错误

【例 16】

原句 The old woman was so disappointed after reading the letter with trembling fingers that she tore it into bits.

评析 状语修饰不明, 实际描述的动作是 tore。

试改 After reading the letter, the old woman was so disappointed that she tore it into bits with trembling fingers.

## 八、中国式英语

【例 17】

汉语 现在人们的生活离不开塑料。

原句 Now people's life can't leave plastics away.

评析 此句的主题是 people, 而不是 life, 实际意思是人们在生活中离不开塑料。

试改 Now people cannot do without plastics in their lives.

【例 18】

汉语 他说他于 1993 年在上海结的婚。

原句 He said he married in 1993 in Shanghai.

评析 英语中的时间状语应放在地点状语之后, 这与汉语截然相反; 英语中有些谓语动词有语态的变化, 而在汉语中只有主动语态, 无被动语态。

试改 He said he got married in Shanghai in 1993.

【例 19】

汉语 计算机正在改变人们的生活和工作方式。

原句 Computers are changing people's live way and work way.

评析 英汉词序有所不同, 英语定语可后置, 而汉语则一般是把定语放在被限定词的前面。此外, “人们的生活和工作” 做宾语可后置, live 和 work 为动词, 做定语时应改用动名词形式。

试改 Computers are changing the way people live and work.

【例 20】

汉语 他回来已有两星期了, 但我一直没空去看望他。

原句 He has returned (= come back) for two weeks. But I have no time to pay him a visit.

评析 英汉语中有些动词时态与时间关系表示有所不同, 此处 return (回来) 属瞬时动词。英语语法对此有规定: 肯定句中不用 “for + 时间段” 短语。

试改 He has been back for two weeks. But I have no time to pay him a visit.



**Exercise**

**Tell whether each of the following sentences is grammatically correct. If it is problematic, tell why it is so and then correct the mistake.**

- 1) One of the politicians were taken to the prison.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 2) The tests were easy. Especially the essay questions. We felt confident that we had done well.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 3) I never buy fresh vegetables at that store because they charge too much.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 4) The leaders of the union (工会) have called for a strike.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 5) There is many secretaries who do their bosses' jobs as well as their own.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 6) At the back of the classroom are sitting two teachers from other classes.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 7) Either you or he have to leave.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

- 8) Economics are difficult to understand.

错误: \_\_\_\_\_

修改句: \_\_\_\_\_

# Friendship

## Part I Pre-reading

### What's Friendship?

F	Friendly	A Friendly person should always smile and say hello when greeting other people.
R	Respect	Always treat people the way you would want them to treat you.
I	Integrity	Do something good for someone when no one is looking.
E	Encouraging	Always lift up your friends' spirits with positive words and actions.
N	Nice	Always be courteous, pleasant, and never misbehave.
D	Diversity	Always respect others differences: gender, abilities, culture, race, and ethnicity.
S	Sincerity	Always speak and act genuinely.
H	Helpful	You should assist others when they are in need.
I	Individual	Do not be a follower. Do not sacrifice character.
P	Polite	Always show consideration for others.

### Questions

- 1) What would you do if you want to befriend someone?
- 2) Describe one of your good friends.

**Part II Intensive Reading****Text A****Friends**

1 Twenty-one years ago, my husband gave me Sam, an eight-week-old schnauzer(髯狗), to help ease the loss of our daughter. Sam and I developed a very special bond over the next fourteen years. It seemed nothing that happened could ever change that.

2 At one point, my husband and I decided to move from our New York apartment to a new home in New Jersey. After we were there for a short time, our neighbor, whose cat had recently had babies, asked us if we would like one. We were a little worried that Sam would be unhappy, but we decided to risk it and agreed to take a baby cat.

3 We picked a little, gray, playful ball of fur. It was like having a roadrunner in the house. She raced around chasing imaginary mice and jumped from table to chair in the blink of an eye, so we named her Lightning.

4 At first, Sam and Lightning were very careful with each other and kept their distance. But slowly, as the days went on, Lightning started following Sam—up the stairs, down the stairs, into the kitchen to watch him eat, into the living room to watch him sleep. As time passed, they became close friends. When they slept, they were always together; when they ate, they were always next to each other. When I played with one, the other joined in. If Sam barked at something, Lightning ran to see what it was. When I took either one out of the house, the other was always waiting by the door when we returned. That was the way it was for years.

5 Then, without any warning, Sam fell ill. The vet told me that he was having a weak heart. I had no other choice but to have him put down. The pain of making that decision, however, was nothing compared with what I experienced when I had to leave Sam at the vet and walk into our house alone. This time, there was no Sam for Lightning to greet and no way to explain why she would never see her friend again.

6 In the days that followed, Lightning seemed heart-broken. She could not tell me in words that she was suffering, but I could see the pain and disappointment in her eyes whenever anyone opened the front door, or the hope whenever she heard a dog bark.

7 The weeks wore on and the cat's sadness seemed to be lifting. One day as I walked into our living room, I happened to glance down on the floor next to our sofa where we had a statue of Sam that we had bought a few years before. Lying next to the statue, one arm wrapped around the statue's neck, was Lightning, contentedly sleeping with her best friend.

(471 words)



## New Words

ease	/i:z/	v.	to become or to make sth. less unpleasant, painful, severe, etc.减轻(痛苦、严重程度等)
bond	/bɒnd/	n.	something that unites two or more people or groups, such as love, or a shared interest or idea 关系, 联系
risk	/risk/	n.	the possibility that something bad, unpleasant, or dangerous may happen 危险, 风险
		v.	to put something in a situation in which it could be lost, destroyed, or harmed; to get into a situation where something unpleasant may happen to you 冒险
fur	/fə:/	n.	the thick soft hair that covers the bodies of some animals, such as cats, dogs, and rabbits 毛皮
roadrunner	/ˈrəʊdˌrʌnə/	n.	a small bird that runs very fast and lives mainly in deserts 榭鸡; 走鹃
chase	/tʃeɪs/	v.	to quickly follow someone or something in order to catch them 追逐, 追赶
imaginary	/iˈmædʒɪnəri/	adj.	existing only in the mind or imagination; not real 想象中的; 假想的
lightning	/ˈlaɪtnɪŋ/	n.	a flash, or several flashes, of very bright light in the sky caused by electricity 闪电
kitchen	/ˈkɪtʃɪn/	n.	room or building in which meals are cooked or prepared 厨房
bark	/bɑ:k/	v.	(at sb./sth.) when a dog barks, it makes a short loud sound (狗) 吠
warning	/ˈwɔ:niŋ/	n.	a statement, an event, etc. telling sb. that sth. bad or unpleasant may happen in the future so that they can try to avoid it 警告
vet	/vet/	n.	someone who is trained to give medical care and treatment to sick animals (兽医)
alone	/əˈləʊn/	adj. adv.	without any other people 孤单, 孤独
greet	/gri:t/	vt.	to say hello to someone or welcome them 欢迎
heart-broken		adj.	extremely sad because of something that has happened 悲伤的, 心碎的
suffer	/ˈsʌfə/	v.	to experience physical or mental pain 遭受, 忍受, 经历
glance	/glɑ:ns/	v.	to quickly look at someone or something 看一下, 一瞥



statue	/ˈstætʃuː/	<i>n.</i>	figure of a person, an animal, etc. in wood, stone, bronze, etc., usu. life-size or larger 雕像, 塑像, 铸像 (其大小通常等于或大于真人或实物)
wrap	/ræp/	<i>v.</i>	cover or enclose sth. 包装, 缠绕
contented	/kən'tentɪd/	<i>adj.</i>	happy and satisfied because life is good 满足的, 满意的

## Phrases and Expressions

at one point	一度, 在某一时刻
in the blink of an eye	眨眼之间
keep one's distance	保持距离
put down	杀死(动物)
make decision	做决定
wear on	(时间) 消逝
happen to do sth.	碰巧
next to...	在……旁边

## Proper Names

New Jersey	美国新泽西州
------------	--------

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) ...to help ease the loss of our daughter.

#### ease

1) *vt.* to become or to make sth. less unpleasant, painful, severe, etc. 减轻(痛苦、严重程度等)

*e.g.* The aspirins eased my headache.

阿司匹林使我头疼减轻。

Talking eased his anxiety.

那一番谈话打消了他的顾虑。

2) *n.* freedom from work, discomfort, pain or anxiety 安逸; 舒适; 无痛苦; 无忧虑

*e.g.* a life of ease

安逸舒适的生活

ease of mind

心情舒畅

**(be/feel) at (one's) ease:** (be/feel) comfortable and unworried; (be/feel) completely relaxed (感到) 舒适而无忧虑; (感到) 完全松弛



e.g. I never feel at ease in his company.

我跟他在一起总是感到很不自在。

Finish the work at your ease.

你可以从容地把这项工作做完（在你方便时）。

**with ease:** without difficulty 容易地；无困难地

e.g. He passed the test with ease.

他轻而易举地考及格了。

● **参考译文：**以帮助减轻失去女儿的痛苦。

## 2. (Para. 2) ...but we decided to risk it and agreed to take a baby cat.

**risk**

1) vt. to put something in a situation in which it could be lost, destroyed, or harmed; to get into a situation where something unpleasant may happen to you 冒险

e.g. risk one's health, fortune, neck (ie. life)

冒丧失健康、财富、生命之险

risk failure

失败亦在所不惜

risk getting caught in a storm

不怕赶上暴风雨

2) n. the possibility that something bad, unpleasant, or dangerous may happen 危险，风险

e.g. Is there any risk of the bomb exploding?

这个炸弹有爆炸的危险吗？

● **参考译文：**但是我们决定冒一下险，答应领养一只小猫。

## 3. (Para. 3) ...She raced around chasing imaginary mice and jumped from table to chair in the blink of an eye.

**chase** v.

to quickly follow someone or something in order to catch them 追逐，追赶

**(after) sb/sth**

e.g. My dog likes chasing rabbits.

我的狗喜欢追逐兔子。

He chased (after) the burglar but couldn't catch him.

他追赶窃贼却未捉住。

● **参考译文：**她四处奔跑，追逐假想的老鼠，还在眨眼之间从桌子跳到椅子上。

## 4. (Para. 5) I had no other choice but to have him put down.

**have no choice but to do sth.**

除了……之外别无选择；别无办法，只好……

e.g. I'm afraid I have no other choice but to let you go.

恐怕我已没有选择，非让你走不可。

I have no other choice but to wait until he comes back.

我没有其他选择，只有等他回来。

**put down**

kill an animal 杀死（动物）

e.g. If the horse's leg is broken, it'll have to be put down.

要是马腿断了，那只能把它杀了。

- 参考译文：我别无他法，只得把他杀死。

5. (Para. 5) The pain of making that decision, however, was nothing compared with what I experienced when I had to leave Sam at the vet and walk into our house alone.

**be nothing compared with sth.**

和……比起来简直不算什么

e.g. Your so-called success is nothing compared with your father's.

和你父亲的成功比起来，你所谓的成功简直不算什么。

- 参考译文：做这个决定很痛苦，但是，和当我把山姆留在兽医那里，独自走回家时感受到的痛苦比起来，简直不算什么。

6. (Para. 6) She could not tell me in words that she was suffering, but I could see the pain and disappointment in her eyes whenever anyone opened the front door, or the hope whenever she heard a dog bark.

**in words**

用语言；口头上

e.g. Real friends do not talk about friendship in words.

真正的朋友不把友谊挂在口上。

**suffer v.**

to experience physical or mental pain 遭受，忍受，经历

e.g. She's suffering a lot of pain.

她正承受着极大的痛苦。

We suffered huge losses in the financial crisis.

我们在金融危机中损失惨重。

**suffer from**

e.g. Do you suffer from headaches?

你常头痛吗？

- 扩展

**suffering:** n. 痛苦

**sufferings:** n. 痛苦、不幸等的感觉；苦恼；折磨

**whenever conj.**

1) at any time, regardless of when 在任何时候；无论何时

e.g. I'll discuss it with you whenever you like.

你愿意什么时候我就什么时候和你商量这件事。

2) every time that a particular thing happens 每次；每当

e.g. Whenever she comes, she brings a friend.

她每次来都带个朋友。



● 扩展

whatever 无论什么

wherever 无论何地

however 无论怎样地……

whoever 无论是谁

- 参考译文：她无法用语言告诉我她所承受的痛苦，但是每次有人开门的时候，我能从她眼中看到痛苦和失望，每次听到狗叫的时候，我能看出她眼里的希望。

7. (Para. 7) ...I happened to glance down on the floor next to our sofa where we had a statue of Sam that we had bought a few years before.

*happen to do sth.*

chance to 碰巧

e.g. I happened to be out when he called.

他来访时我碰巧外出了。

- 参考译文：我碰巧瞥了一眼沙发旁边的地板，我们在那儿放着一个几年前买的山姆的雕像。

8. (Para. 7) Lying next to the statue, one arm wrapped around the statue's neck, was Lightning, contentedly sleeping with her best friend.

1) 这句话是倒装句(inversion)，正常语序为：Lightning was lying next to the statue...，在这句话中倒装的目的是强调。在带有助动词“be”的句子中，动词-ing 和-ed 形式可移至句首，主语移至“be”后面，形成全部倒装。

2) “...one arm wrapped around the statue's neck...”：过去分词的独立主格作句子的状语。

- 扩展 分词短语作状语时，若分词的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致，分词前须加上自己的逻辑主语(名词或主格代词)，这个结构叫分词的独立主格结构。如：

Supper finished (=After supper was finished), we started to discuss the picnic.

吃完晚饭，我们开始讨论野餐的事。

All things considered (=If all things are considered), your article is of greater value than hers.  
全面考虑起来，你的文章比她的文章更有价值。

Weather permitting (= If weather permits), we are going to visit you tomorrow.

如果天气允许，我们明天去看你。

3) “...contentedly sleeping with her best friend”：现在分词短语作句子的状语。

- 参考译文：闪电躺在雕像旁，一条胳膊搂着雕像的脖子，安心地和她的最好的朋友一块睡着。

## Text Comprehension

### 1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words according to the text.

I got Sam, a dog, as a present from my husband to 1) \_\_\_\_\_ the loss of our daughter. We developed a special 2) \_\_\_\_\_ over the following 3) \_\_\_\_\_ years. Then my family moved to New Jersey, where we took a baby 4) \_\_\_\_\_ to our home. At first, Sam and the baby cat, we





called her 5) \_\_\_\_\_, were very careful with each other. But as the days went on, they became close 6) \_\_\_\_\_. They were always together. When Sam died of a 7) \_\_\_\_\_ heart, all of us were very sad. Though lightning could not tell me in 8) \_\_\_\_\_, I knew that she missed Sam, and one day I 9) \_\_\_\_\_ to find that she was 10) \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping with Sam's statue.

## 2. Decide whether the following statements are true or false according to the text.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) Sam came to my home fourteen years ago.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 2) My husband and I decided to move from New Jersey to New York.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 3) The little bird was named lightning.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 4) Sam and lightning became friends as soon as they met each other.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 5) Sam died of a weak heart.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 6) I felt painful when I left Sam at the vet and went home alone.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 7) Lightning forgot Sam soon.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 8) There was a statue of Lightning in our living room.

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

heart-broken	suffer	warning	greet	bond
chase	risk	bark	kitchen	glance

- 1) He saved my life at the \_\_\_\_\_ of his own.  
 2) The dogs saw him running and \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
 3) He was \_\_\_\_\_ when his wife died in that accident.  
 4) The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ each child with a friendly "Hello!"  
 5) My father \_\_\_\_\_ from high blood pressure.  
 6) Daisy \_\_\_\_\_ around the room to see who was there.  
 7) Sam went into the \_\_\_\_\_ to make a pot of tea.  
 8) The red light is a \_\_\_\_\_ sign for stop.  
 9) There has been a close \_\_\_\_\_ between them ever since she saved him from drowning.  
 10) The dog \_\_\_\_\_ when the stranger came near.

### 2. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words in their correct forms.

#### *image, imagine, imaginary*

- 1) You can't \_\_\_\_\_ how surprised I was.  
 2) The coin bore an \_\_\_\_\_ of the president.  
 3) All the characters in this book are \_\_\_\_\_.

#### *alone, lonely, along*

- 4) For years Mary lived \_\_\_\_\_ in New York.



- 5) I was driving my car \_\_\_\_\_ a muddy path.  
6) He has so few friends that his life is \_\_\_\_\_.

*ease, easy, easily*

- 7) Take this pill. It will \_\_\_\_\_ your pain.  
8) You can find books \_\_\_\_\_ in this library.  
9) It's \_\_\_\_\_ to find out where he lives.

3. The suffixes *-ify* and *-ize/-ise* can be used to form verbs from many adjectives, nouns, or word roots, meaning “to make sth. full of [noun] or similar to [noun]”, “to use sth. as [noun]”, etc.” or “to make sth. [adj.]”. Study the following models and complete the table with appropriate words.

<b>Models:</b>	beauty – beautify	simple – simplify
	modern – modernize	symbol – symbolize

Adjectives , Nouns, or word roots	Verbs	Adjectives , Nouns, or word roots	Verbs
class		popular	
just		intense	
clear		glory	
industrial		organ	
globe		human	

4. Fill in each of the blanks with a suitable preposition or adverb.

- 1) Thanks \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet, we can do shopping at home.  
2) This painting is characteristic \_\_\_\_\_ of Monet.  
3) The rabbit disappeared \_\_\_\_\_ the blink of an eye.  
4) Judy felt less confident about completing the course as the week wore \_\_\_\_\_.  
5) \_\_\_\_\_ one point I thought she was going to refuse, but in the end she agreed.  
6) This twin sisters look exactly \_\_\_\_\_. How can you tell them from each other?  
7) Her parents always regarded her \_\_\_\_\_ the cleverest of their children.  
8) The new teacher made a good impression \_\_\_\_\_ the students.

## Structure

1. Study the models and rewrite the following sentences.

<b>Model:</b>	Lightning was lying next to the statue. <i>Lying next to the statue was Lightning.</i>
---------------	---



1) A stream is running across the village.

2) His wife was standing beside the table.

3) Two paintings of my grandfather are hanging on the wall.

4) The new manager is walking into the meeting room.

5) My little daughter was smiling sweetly.

2. Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English using “whatever”, “however”, “wherever”, “whoever” or “whenever”.

1) \_\_\_\_\_ (不管发生什么), remember to keep calm.

2) \_\_\_\_\_ (不管你去哪里), I'll be right here waiting for you.

3) \_\_\_\_\_ (不管多饿), I never seem to be able to finish off a whole pizza.

4) \_\_\_\_\_ (不管我什么时候去那里), they seem to be in bed.

5) \_\_\_\_\_ (谁最胜任谁就) should get the job.

## Comprehensive Exercises

1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.

A good 1) \_\_\_\_\_ is better than a fortune, for a fortune cannot 2) \_\_\_\_\_ those elements of character which make companionship a blessing. The best companion is one who is 3) \_\_\_\_\_ and better than ourselves, for we are inspired 4) \_\_\_\_\_ his wisdom and virtue (美德) to nobler deeds.

“5) \_\_\_\_\_ good company, and you shall be one of the number,” said George Herbert. “A man is known by the company he keeps.” Character makes character in the associations of life faster than anything 6) \_\_\_\_\_. This fact makes the 7) \_\_\_\_\_ of companions in early life more important even than that of teachers and guardians

Companionship is education, good or bad; it develops manhood or womanhood, high or 8) \_\_\_\_\_; it lifts the soul upward or drags it downward; it ministers to virtue or vice (恶行). Sow virtue, and the 9) \_\_\_\_\_ will be virtue. Sow vice, and the harvest will be vice. Good companionships help us to sow virtue; 10) \_\_\_\_\_ companionships help us to sow vice.

- |                |              |              |                   |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1) A. company  | B. accompany | C. companion | D. companionship. |
| 2) A. purchase | B. chase     | C. merchant  | D. pursuit        |



- |               |           |           |            |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 3) A. worse   | B. wider  | C. wiser  | D. clever  |
| 4) A. of      | B. for    | C. with   | D. by      |
| 5) A. Take    | B. Get    | C. Keep   | D. Form    |
| 6) A. other   | B. else   | C. rather | D. another |
| 7) A. search  | B. goal   | C. path   | D. choice  |
| 8) A. tall    | B. low    | C. deep   | D. long    |
| 9) A. harvest | B. result | C. end    | D. aim     |
| 10) A. devil  | B. better | C. wise   | D. evil    |

**2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in brackets.**

- 1) 车祸发生的时候我碰巧在现场。(happen to do sth.)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2) 我的新邻居看起来不很友善,我得和他们保持距离。(keep one's distance)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) 妈妈再三告诉我在做重要决定前要三思。(make decision)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4) 夜深了,我觉得更疲倦了。(wear on)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) 我可以把我的椅子移到你的旁边吗?(next to)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Part III Extensive Reading (I)**

**Text B**

**How the Americans View Friendship**

- 1 Steve and Yaser first met in their chemistry class at an American university. Yaser was an international student from Jordan. He wanted to learn more about American culture and hoped that he and Steve would become good friends.
- 2 At first, Steve seemed very friendly. He always greeted Yaser warmly before class. Sometimes he offered to study with Yaser. He even invited Yaser to eat lunch with him. But after the semester was over, Steve seemed more distant. The two former classmates didn't see each other very much at school. One day Yaser decided to call Steve. Steve didn't seem very interested in talking to him. Yaser was hurt by Steve's change of attitude. "Steve said we were friends," Yaser complained. "and I thought friends were friends forever."
- 3 Yaser is a little confused. As a foreigner, he doesn't understand the way Americans view

friendship. Americans use the word friend in a very general way. They may call both casual acquaintances and close companions "friends". These friendships are based on common interests. When the shared activity ends, the friendship may fade. Now as Steve and Yaser are no longer classmates, their friendship has changed.

4 In some cultures friendship means a strong life-long bond between two people. In these cultures friendships develop slowly, since they are built to last. American society is one of rapid change. Studies show that one out of five American families moves every year. American friendships develop quickly, and they may change just as quickly.

5 People from the United States may at first seem friendly. Americans often chat easily with strangers. But American friendliness is not always an offer of true friendship.

6 After an experience like Yaser's, people who've been in this country for only a few months may consider Americans to be changing. Learning how Americans view friendship can help non-Americans avoid misunderstandings. It can also help them make friends the American way.

(325 words)

## New Words

view	/vju:/	vt.	consider sth. in the mind; regard sth. (as sth.) 考虑或认为某事物
chemistry	/'kemistri/	n.	the scientific study of the structure of substances, how they react when combined or in contact with one another, and how they behave under different conditions 化学
international	/,intə'næʃənəl/	adj.	relating to or involving more than one nation 国际的
semester	/si'mestə/	n.	one of the two periods of time that a year at high schools and universities is divided into, especially in the US (尤指美国的大专院校的) 学期(半年)
distant	/'distənt/	adj.	far away in space or time (空间或时间) 远隔的, 遥远的; not very friendly; reserved 不太友好的; 不太热情的; 冷漠的
former	/'fɔ:mə/	adj.	of an earlier period or time 以前的; being the first mentioned of two things or people 前者的 (两者中先提到的)
attitude	/'ætɪtju:d/	n.	the opinions and feelings that one usually has about something 态度, 看法



confused	/kən'fju:zd/	adj.	unable to understand or think clearly what someone is saying or what is happening 困惑的
general	/'dʒenərəl/	adj.	affecting all or most people, places or things 普遍的; 全面的; overall 整体的
casual	/'kæʒjuəl/	adj.	slight; superficial 轻微的; 表面的; 肤浅的; happening by chance 偶然的; 碰巧的; made or done without much care or thought 不经意的; (of clothes) for informal occasions (衣物) 便服的, 非正式的; not permanent; irregular; part-time 非永久的; 不定期的
acquaintance	/ə'kweintəns/	n.	person whom one knows but who is not a close friend 相识而非密友者; 泛泛之交; (often slight) knowledge of sth./sb. 对某事物/某人(常为略微的) 了解
companion	/kəm'pænjən/	n.	person or animal that goes with, or spends much time with, another 同伴, 伙伴
fade	/ feid/	v.	to gradually disappear 消失; to lose colour and brightness, or to make something do this 褪色, 使褪色
life-long		adj.	continuing or existing all through your life 终身的, 毕生的
rapid	/'ræpid/	adj.	happening or done very quickly and in a very short time 迅速的
last	/la:st/	v.	continue for a period of time; endure 延续; 持续; 维持; 持久
chat	/tʃæt/	n.	friendly informal conversation 聊天
		v.	have a chat 聊天
stranger	/'streindəʒə/	n.	person that one does not know 陌生人; person in a new or an unfamiliar place or with people that he does not know 外地人
misunderstanding	/'misʌndə'stændɪŋ/	n.	a situation in which a comment, an instruction, etc. is not understood correctly 误会, 误解

## Phrases and Expressions

no longer	不再
be based on	基于, 以……为基础



## Proper Names

Steve	史蒂夫
Yaser	亚西尔
Jordan	约旦（亚洲国家名）

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 3) They may call both casual acquaintances and close companions "friends".

- 参考译文：他们会把泛泛之交和亲密的伙伴都称为“朋友”。

### 2. (Para. 3) These friendships are based on common interests.

*be based on*

use sth. as grounds, evidence, etc for sth. else 基于；以……为基础

e.g. This novel is based on historical facts.

这部小说是以历史事实为根据的。

*common* *adj.*

1) usual or familiar; happening or found often and in many places 普通的；通常的；常见的

e.g. a common flower, sight, event

普通的花、风景、事件

2) shared by, belonging to, done by or affecting two or more people, or most of a group or society 共有的；共同做的；共同受到的

e.g. We share a common purpose.

我们有共同的目标。

He and I share a common interest: we both collect stamps.

我和他有共同的爱好，我们都集邮。

- 参考译文：这些友谊是建立在共同兴趣的基础上的。

### 3. (Para. 3) When the shared activity ends, the friendship may fade.

- 参考译文：当他们不再一起做事的时候，友谊就会消失。

### 4. (Para. 4) Studies show that one out of five American families moves every year.

*one out of five*

五分之一

- 扩展

分数表示法：

1/2 a half

1/3 one third 或 a third

1/4 one quarter 或 a quarter

2/3 two thirds

3/4 three quarters 或 three fourths

1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> one and a half



3  $\frac{1}{4}$  three and one fourth

- 参考译文: 研究表明, 每年有五分之一的美国家庭搬家。

## 5. (Para. 6) Learning how Americans view friendship can help non-Americans avoid misunderstandings.

*non-American*

非美国人

- 扩展

**Non-** is used in front of adjectives and nouns to form adjectives that describe something as not having a particular quality or feature. 否定前缀, 可加在形容词或名词之前, 表示不具有某种特质或特征。

e.g. nonsense 无意义的事, 荒唐, 荒谬的言行

non-fiction 非小说的写实文学

non-alcoholic 不含酒精的

non-profit-making 非盈利的

*misunderstanding* n.

a situation in which a comment, an instruction, etc. is not understood correctly 误会, 误解

e.g. There must be some misunderstanding. I thought I ordered the smaller model.

一定是误会。我以为我订的是小一些的模型。

- 参考译文: 弄清楚美国人怎样看待友谊能帮助非美国人避免误会。

## Exercises

### 1. Decide whether the following statements are true or false according to the text.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) Steve was an international student from Jordan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2) Yaser didn't understand the Steve's change of attitude.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3) Americans only call close companions "friends".
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4) In American cultures friendship means a strong life-long bond between two people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5) American friendliness is not always an offer of true friendship.

### 2. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

International	general	former	last
view	distant	fade	misunderstand

- 1) Jane and Mary are good friends; the \_\_\_\_\_ is a teacher, the latter is a nurse.
- 2) There must be some \_\_\_\_\_. I never asked for these chairs to be delivered.
- 3) The country violated (违反) the \_\_\_\_\_ agreement.
- 4) Flowers soon \_\_\_\_\_ when they have been cut.
- 5) Please give me a \_\_\_\_\_ idea of the work.
- 6) The hot weather \_\_\_\_\_ for the whole month of June.





7) The President hopes to visit Ireland in the not too \_\_\_\_\_ future.

8) If we \_\_\_\_\_ the problem from a different angle (角度), a solution may become more obvious.

**3. Fill in the blanks with either English words or Chinese ones as required.**

three quarters	
	五分之三
two thirds	
	二分之一
	二十分之七
one and a half	

**4. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.**

1) As a foreigner, he doesn't understand the way Americans view friendship. Americans use the word friend in a very general way. They may call both casual acquaintances and close companions "friends".

---

---

---

2) In some cultures friendship means a strong life-long bond between two people. In these cultures friendships develop slowly, since they are built to last.

---

---

---

## Part IV Extensive Reading (II)

## Text C

### How to Make Friends

1 Everyone needs friends, and if you fail to make friends, you should examine yourself and see if there is something wrong with your personality.

2 Maybe you have social faults, such as snobbishness, talkativeness, and using slang, etc., which drive away your new acquaintances. Whatever your social faults may be, look at them honestly, and make real effort to correct them.

3 To be friendly you must feel friendly. Cheerfulness is the basis of friendliness. A cheerful person smiles. A smile is a magnet which draws people. Smile at someone and you are



almost sure to get a smile in return.

4 A friendly person does his best to make a stranger feel at home, wherever he happens to be. Put yourself in the other person's place and make him feel welcome.

5 Try to remember names. It makes your new acquaintances feel happy when you call them by their names. It gives them the feeling that they have made an impression on you and that must mean something to them because you remember them.

6 If you do not agree with other people on a certain matter, you should appear to be friendly. Do not argue, but discuss. You always lose friends if you argue too much.

7 A friendly person thinks of others, and does not insist on his own "rights". People who refuse to consider others have few friends.

8 Finally, don't treat people only according to their socially positions. Really friendly people respect everyone at all times.

(248 words)

## New Words

personality	/ˌpɜːsəˈnæliti/	<i>n.</i>	someone's character, especially the way they behave towards other people 个性, 性格
fault	/fɔːlt/	<i>n.</i>	mistake or offence 过错; 过失; a bad or weak aspect of sb.'s character 缺点, 毛病
snobbishness	/'snɒbɪʃnɪs/	<i>n.</i>	the state of having attitudes based on the feeling that you are better than others in some way, esp. in terms of social class 势利; 谄上欺下
talkativeness	/'tɔːkətɪvnɪs/	<i>n.</i>	the state of talking a lot, or excessively 爱说话, 饶舌
slang	/slæŋ/	<i>n.</i>	very informal, sometimes offensive, language that is used especially by people who belong to a particular group, such as young people or criminals 俚语
cheerful	/'tʃiəfəl/	<i>adj.</i>	in good spirits; happy 兴高采烈的; 精神振奋的; 快乐的
basis	/'beɪsɪs/	<i>n.</i>	the facts, ideas, or things from which something can be developed 基础, 根据
magnet	/'mæɡnɪt/	<i>n.</i>	a piece of iron or steel that can stick to metal or make other metal objects move towards itself 磁铁; something or someone that attracts many people or things 有吸引力之物/人
draw	/drɔː/	<i>vt.</i>	attract or interest sb. 吸引某人; 使某人感兴趣
impression	/ɪmˈpreʃən/	<i>n.</i>	the opinion or feeling one has about someone or something because of the way they seem 印象



## Phrases and Expressions

fail to do	未能……，做……失败
drive away	赶走，驱走
make effort	努力
in return	作为回报
feel/ be at home	感觉自在
call sb. by one's name	对……直呼其名
think of	想到，考虑
insist on	坚持
according to	根据，按照
at all times	总是，随时

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 2) Maybe you have social faults, such as snobbishness, talkativeness, and using slang, etc., which drive away your new acquaintances.

“…which drive away your new acquaintances” 作定语修饰 social faults

**fault** *n.*

1) mistake or offence 过错; 过失

e.g. Don't worry. It's not your fault.

别担心，这不是你的错。

2) a bad or weak aspect of sb's character 缺点，毛病

e.g. Every man has his faults.

人无完人，金无足赤。

**drive sb. away**

to behave in a way that makes sb. leave 赶走; 驱走

e.g. He was cruel because he wanted to drive me away.

他很残忍，因为他想把我赶走。

- **参考译文：**也许你在社交方面有些缺点，比如势利、多嘴多舌、爱用俚语等，这样会吓走你的新朋友。

### 2. (Para. 4) Put yourself in the other person's place and make him feel welcome.

*Put yourself in the other person's place*

to change your situation and try to think from the other person's perspective 设身处地为别人着想

- **扩展**

**put oneself in sb.'s shoes:** 设身处地为别人着想

- **参考译文：**设身处地为别人着想，让对方感到你的热情。



3. (Para. 5) It makes your new acquaintances feel happy when you call them by their names.

*by name*

1) using name or names 就名字; 凭名字

e.g. I still can't call every student in the class by name.

我还叫不出这个班每个学生的名字。

I only know him by name.

我只是听说过他的名字。

2) called 名叫

e.g. He is our new manager, George by name.

他是我们的新经理, 名叫乔治。

● 参考译文: 当你叫出新认识的人的名字时, 他们会感到很高兴。

4. (Para. 8) Really friendly people respect everyone at all times.

*at all times*

always 随时, 总是

e.g. I'm at your service at all times.

我随时为您效劳。

● 扩展

at times; 有时, 间或

at a time: 每次

at one time: 一度; 从前

at the same time: 同时

● 参考译文: 真正友善的人总是尊重每一个人。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 时间和日期 Time and Date

在日常交流中经常会涉及时间和日期, 而英语中时间和日期的表达和汉语有所不同, 以下这些句子中详细列举了日常用语中会用到的一些表达方式。



## Useful Expressions

### 1. 询问今天几号:

**A:** What's the date (today)?

What date is it today?

What's today's date?

**B:** It's August thirteenth.

It's the thirteenth of August.

\*表示日期的时候用序数词(在数字后面加 th, 但是 1 号、2 号、3 号分别是 first、second、third)。

### 2. 询问今天是星期几:

**A:** What day is it (today)?

**B:** It's Friday /Thursday, etc.

### 3. 询问时间:

**A:** Do you have the time? \*问时间时记住在 time 前加 the。

What time is it now?

Have you got the time?

What time have you got?

May I ask the time?

Could you tell me what time is it now?

**B:** It's one o'clock. (现在一点钟了。)

It's five after one. (现在 1 点 5 分。)

It's five past one.

It's five minutes after one o'clock.

It's a quarter to two. (1 点 45 分。)

\*a quarter 是四分之一的意思, 在这儿是 60 分钟的四分之一的意思, 即(一刻钟) 15 分钟。另外, 这里的 to 是表示“~前”的意思, 即“差 15 分 2 点”。

It's 1:45./It's one forty-five.

It's ten to two. (差十分到两点。)

It's 1:50 (one fifty).

It's 3:15. (现在 3 点 15 分。)

It's a quarter after three.

It's a quarter past three.

The clock says 3:15 (three fifteen).



My watch says 3:15.

It's nine thirty. (9 点半)

It's half past nine.

It's almost noon. (快到中午了。) \*夜里零点是 midnight。

## Practice

Choose the answer that best completes each dialogue.

1) A: What's the date today?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. It's Monday.

C. It's January fourth.

B. It's four January.

D. It's the four of January.

2) A: What day is it today?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. It's fine.

C. It's sunny.

B. It's noon.

D. It's Sunday.

3) A: Have you got the time?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. No, I'm busy.

C. It's a quarter to four.

B. Yes, I'm free today.

D. It's a quarter of four.

4) A: What time is it now?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. The clock says half past ten.

C. It's ten minutes.

B. It's one point five.

D. It's my birthday.

5) A: What's today's date?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A. It's windy.

C. It's October two.

B. It's the first of November.

D. It's Tuesday.

## Grammar

### 冠词 Articles

冠词分为不定冠词 (Indefinite Article), 定冠词 (Definite Article), 零冠词 (Zero Article)。



## 一、不定冠词的用法

### a, an

不定冠词用于名词之前，表示“一个”或“一”。a 用于一般名词前，an 用于在发音上以元音音素开头的词之前。例如，a book, a chair, an apple, an egg, an hour。

#### 1. 泛指

不定冠词是最常见的泛指限定词，来源于数词 one，只用于单数可数名词前。

1) 首次提到某人或某物，又不具体指明是哪一个。

I saw **an** Indian elephant in the zoo yesterday.

我昨天在动物园里看到了一头印度象。

2) 为了增加信息，可在名词前面或后面加一个描述性的修饰语。

I saw **a** big car parked nearby.

我看见一辆大汽车停在附近。

The information was contained in **an** article on biology.

那个信息是一篇关于生物学的文章里包含的。

3) 含有不定冠词的名词短语也可在系动词后作补语，说明人或事物。

My brother is planning to be **a** lawyer.

我的兄弟打算成为一名律师。

#### 2. 指一类事物

不定冠词与名词连用时，通常概括人或事物的整体，表示一类，即以其中的一个代表一类。

**A** post office is a place where people can post letters, parcels and so on.

邮局是人们寄信、寄包裹和其他东西的地方。

**A** dog likes to eat far more meat than **a** human being.

狗远比人更喜欢吃肉。

#### 3. 其他用法

1) 用在以-ing 结尾的名词前

There came **a** knocking at the door.

传来一阵敲门声。

2) 用在由动词转化而来的名词前，表示一次动作。这种用法中的动词通常有：give, take, make, 和 have

I'll give you **a** lift to the airport.

我顺便开车送你去机场。

He took **a** step towards me.

他向我走近了一步。

3) 用于人名前，表示说话人不认识这个人

Do you know **a** Tom Smith?

你认识一个叫汤姆·史密斯的人吗？



## 二、定冠词的用法

### the

#### 1. 特指

定冠词 **the** 是最常见的特指限定词，在意思上类似于 **this**, **these** 或 **that**, **those**, 可用在单数名词、复数名词和不可数名词前。

##### 1) 指代前面已提到过的人或事物

I got a letter yesterday. **The** letter was sent by my father from the U.S.

我昨天收到一封信。那封信是我父亲从美国寄来的。

##### 2) 在名词中心词后有一个起限定作用的修饰语

Is **the** train for Shanghai?

这是去上海的火车吗?

##### 3) 在特殊的语境中, 说话双方都明白所指的是什么

**The** students are not in the classroom.

学生们不在教室里。

#### 2. 指代一类事物

##### 1) 与人体某部分的名词连用

**The** heart supplies **the** arteries with blood,

心脏给动脉供血。

##### 2) 与 rich, poor, young, old, blind, deaf 之类的形容词, 以及 dying, injured, unemployed, wounded 等分词连用, 指具有这一特征的一类人

**The** sick have been cured, **the** lost have been found, and **the** dead have been revived.

生病的人已经痊愈, 失踪的人已经找到, 连死去的人也复活了。

##### 3) 与某些形容词, 如 true, good, beautiful, impossible, inevitable, ordinary, unknown 等连用表示具有某种性质的事物

**The** true, **the** good, and **the** beautiful would not exist without **the** false, **the** evil and **the** ugly.

如果没有虚伪、邪恶和丑陋, 就不会有真实、善良和美好。

#### 3. 指唯一的人或事物

##### 1) 在提到世界上独一无二的事物如 air, earth, ground, heaven, moon, sky, sun, world 等, 通常用定冠词 the, 但在某些特定特定的短语里(如 back to earth, go to sea 等)例外

**The** moon revolves around **the** earth.

月亮绕着地球转。

##### 2) 在某些专有名词或头衔前用定冠词

**The** Secretary General of the United Nations made an important visit to the Middle East.

联合国秘书长对中东进行了重要的访问。

#### 4. 其他用法

##### 1) 在表示“一家人”的专有名词前, 要加定冠词

**The** Browns are at home to visitors today.





布朗一家今天在家接待客人。

## 2) 演奏的乐器前通常用定冠词

Can you play that on **the** violin?

你能用小提琴演奏那首曲子吗?

## 三、零冠词的用法

### 不用冠词

#### 1. 首次提到复数名词和不可数名词, 或者不确定地指出人或物时

A group of tall trees stands on top of the hill.

山顶上长着一片高大的树木。

Fear began to creep into their hearts.

他们渐渐开始感到害怕。

#### 2. 在 breakfast, dinner, lunch, supper 等表示用餐的名词前

She sat besides me at dinner.

吃饭的时候她坐在我旁边。

#### 3. 用 by 表示交通或通讯手段时

I'm going to Shanghai by train.

我坐火车去上海。

## Exercise

Fill in the blanks with a, an, or the. Put a “-” where no article is needed.

1) \_\_\_\_\_ sun rises in \_\_\_\_\_ east and sets in \_\_\_\_\_ west.

2) China is \_\_\_\_\_ ancient country with \_\_\_\_\_ long history.

3) Is \_\_\_\_\_ meeting on?

4) I love \_\_\_\_\_ flowers in your garden.

5) Do you know the girl playing \_\_\_\_\_ piano?

6) When I was young, I used to go \_\_\_\_\_ fishing.

7) As we walked along together, I had \_\_\_\_\_ feeling that we were both thinking about \_\_\_\_\_ same thing.

8) He had told her at \_\_\_\_\_ lunch that he couldn't take her to the game.

9) \_\_\_\_\_ baby deer can stand as soon as it is born.

10) \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday is the day when members of the Christian religion go to church.

11) \_\_\_\_\_ Kennedys are probably the most famous family in the United States.

12) The doctor said to the woman: “Take \_\_\_\_\_ medicine three times \_\_\_\_\_ day. Stay in \_\_\_\_\_ bed and you'll be better soon.”

13) Are you busy? I want to have \_\_\_\_\_ word with you.

14) He is beginning to make a name for himself as \_\_\_\_\_ fashion designer with \_\_\_\_\_ original ideas.



15) We must change in \_\_\_\_\_ changing world.

## Writing Skills

### 英语句型精选 I Useful Sentence Patterns I

#### 一、强调句型 (Patterns of Emphasis)

强调句型突出句子的一部分含义。常见结构有:

##### 1. it is / was...that / who...

此句型的常用句式是“it is / was + 被强调的部分 + that / who 从句”。it 是引导词, 被强调的部分如果是人, 可用 who 或 that 引出; 被强调的部分如果是物, 则用 that 引出。中文可译为“(正)是……”。请看下列例句:

It was Tom who / that met your sister in the park yesterday. (强调主语)

是汤姆昨天在公园里见到你的妹妹。

It was your sister that Tom met in the park yesterday. (强调宾语)

汤姆昨天在公园里见到的是你妹妹。

It was in the park that Tom met your sister yesterday. (强调状语)

汤姆昨天是在公园里见到你妹妹的。

It was yesterday that Tom met your sister in the park. (强调状语)

汤姆是昨天在公园里见到你妹妹的。

##### 2. it is / was not...but...that...; it is / was... (and) not...that...

这两种句型是强调句型的复杂结构。在这种结构中, not...but...的意思是“不是……而是……”; ... (and) not...的意思是“是……而不是……”。这种结构强调的是主语, 在汉译时一般先翻译 that 之后的部分。例如:

It is not help but obstacles that make a man.

使人成才的不是助力而是阻力。

It is conflict and not unquestioning agreement that keeps freedom alive.

使自由保持活力的是冲突, 而不是绝对的一致。

It is not intelligence but diligence that leads one to success.

是勤奋而不是智慧使人成功。

It is peace not war that keeps the world alive.

是和平而不是战争使世界充满活力。

#### 二、There be 句型

“There+be+(not)”结构表示“有(没有)某人或某物”时, there 是无词义的引导词, be 是谓语动词, 它后面的名词是主语, 两者在数上必须一致。句末往往有表示地点或时间的状语。



### 1. 肯定式 (表示“有……”)

There + (助动词或情态动词) + be + 主语 + 地点(时间)状语。例如:

1) There are 24 hours in a day.

一天有 24 小时。

2) There were 1500 students in our school last year.

去年我校有 1500 名学生。

注: 如果 there+be 之后是并列主语, 第一个主语又是单数名词时, 在口语中可以用 There is ...。例如:

1) There are/ is a boy and a girl in the room.

屋里有一个男孩子和一个女孩子。

2) There are/ is a pen and some exercise books on her desk.

她的桌子上有一只钢笔和一些练习本。

### 2. 否定式 (表示“没有……”)

There + be + (助动词或情态动词) + not (any) (或+no) + 主语...。例如:

1) There is nothing more for me to do now.

现在没有别的什么事要我做了。

2) There was not a subway in Beijing before.

从前北京没有地铁。

### 3. 疑问式

#### A. 一般疑问句

a. Be + there + (any) + 主语...?

b. 助动词或情态动词+there+ be + (any) + 主语...?

例如: 1) Is there anything I can do for you?

我能为你做些什么吗?

2) Will there be a report by an old experienced teacher this afternoon?

今天下午有一位老教师做报告吗?

#### B. 特殊疑问句

疑问词 (+ 名词) + be + there + 状语?

例如: 1) How much money is there in the purse you have lost?

你丢的钱包里有多少钱?

2) When will there be lasting world peace?

什么时候世界上能有持久的和平?

4. 含有引导词 **there** 的句子里用 **seem to be, happen to be, used to be** 或 **live** 等词作谓语的结构。例如:

1) There seemed to be no point in refusing.

看来没有理由拒绝。

2) There once lived an old fisherman in a village by the sea.

从前, 在海边的一个村庄里住着一个老渔民。

3) There happened to be an old friend of mine in the shop.



恰好在商店里有我的一个老朋友。

4) There used to be a temple here.

以前这里有一座庙。

### Exercise

#### 1. Rewrite the following sentences according to the models.

Models:	My aunt bought me <u>a new bike</u> .
	<i>It was a new bike that my aunt bought me.</i>
	<u>My aunt</u> bought me a new bike.
	<i>It was my aunt that/who bought me a new bike.</i>

1) He spent a winter night with me.

2) Her father left her without saying goodbye.

3) Our being late caused him to serve dinner an hour later than usual.

4) He asked for leave because he was ill.

5) The training that he had as a young man made him such a good engineer.

#### 2. Translate the following sentences into English using “there be” structure.

1) 一定有很多困难要我们去克服。

2) 那里没有河流、湖泊。

3) 这个图书馆有许多英文小说吗?

4) 碰巧那时周围没有人。

5) 一位百岁老人在这个房子里住过。

6) 可能有很多人对这个计划感兴趣。

## Dreams

### Part I Pre-reading

Human life is like a dream. Edgar Allan Poe had asked “Is all that we see or seem/ But a dream within a dream?” What is a dream? Dreams are the wind for our sails on the ocean. Dreams kindle a flame to illuminate our dark roads. Dreams are the armor for our weak hearts. Martin Luther King had a dream — it was to have justice for all people. Lincoln had a dream — it was to set the slaves free. They sought their dreams and ultimately made them come true. When people have a dream and work for it, they have courage and confidence.

#### Questions

- 1) Do you have dreams? What are they?
- 2) How can you follow your dream and make them come true?

### Part II Intensive Reading

#### Text A

### American Dream

1 The term was first used by James Truslow Adams in his book *The Epic of America* which was written in 1931. He states: "The American Dream is that dream of a land in which life should be better and richer and fuller for everyone, with opportunity for each according to ability or achievement. It is a difficult dream for the European upper classes to explain



clearly, and too many of us ourselves have grown tired and don't believe it. It is not a dream of motor cars and high wages merely, but a dream of social order in which each man and each woman shall be able to reach the highest position, and be recognized by others for what they are, regardless of the fortunate factors of birth or position."

2 In the United States' Declaration of Independence, our founding fathers: "...held certain truths to be obvious, that all Men are created equal, that they are given by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are life, Liberty and the Pursuit of Happiness." Might this opinion be considered the foundation of the American Dream?

3 Were farmers who left the big cities of the east to find happiness and their piece of land in the unknown field finding these unalienable Rights? Were the immigrants who came to the United States looking for their life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness, their Dream? And what did the wish of the old soldier of World War II - to settle down, to have a home, a car and a family - tell us about this growing Dream? Can the American Dream be reached by all Americans? Would Martin Luther King feel his Dream was completed? Did Malcolm X achieve his Dream?

4 Some say, that the American Dream has become the pursuit of material success - that people work more hours to get bigger cars, fancier homes, the fruits of success for their families - but have less time to enjoy their success. Others say that the American Dream is beyond the hand of the working poor who must work two jobs to support their family. Yet others look toward a new American Dream with less focus on financial gain and more emphasis on living a simple, satisfactory life.

5 Thomas Wolfe said, "...to every man, regardless of his birth, his shiny, golden opportunity ...the right to live, to work, to be himself, and to become whatever thing his manhood and his vision can combine to make him."

6 Is this your American Dream?

(434 words)

## New Words

dream	/dri:m/	<i>n.</i>	a series of mental images and emotions occurring during sleep, 梦; imaginative thoughts indulged in while awake 梦想
		<i>v.</i>	have a daydream; indulge in a fantasy 做梦, 梦想
epic	/'epik/	<i>n.</i>	a long narrative poem telling of a hero's deeds 史诗, 叙事诗
state	/steit/	<i>vt.</i>	express in words 声明, 陈述
		<i>n.</i>	the territory occupied by a nation 国家; the territory occupied by one of the constituent administrative districts of a nation 州
opportunity	/,ɒpə'tju:niti/	<i>n.</i>	a possibility due to a favorable combination of circumstances 机会
ability	/ə'biliti/	<i>n.</i>	the quality of being able to perform 能力



achievement	/ə'tʃi:vmənt/	<i>n.</i>	the action of accomplishing something 成就, 功绩
European	/ˌjuərə'pi:ən/	<i>adj.</i>	欧洲的, 欧洲人的
		<i>n.</i>	欧洲人
explain	/iks'plein/	<i>v.</i>	make plain and comprehensible 解释, 说明
clearly	/'kliəli/	<i>adv.</i>	without doubt or question 明显地
tired	/'taiəd/	<i>adj.</i>	no longer sufficient of strength or energy 累的, 疲倦的
believe	/bi'li:v/	<i>v.</i>	accept as true; take to be true 相信, 认为
motor	/'məutə/	<i>n.</i>	machine that converts other forms of energy into mechanical energy and so imparts motion 发动机, 马达
wage	/weidʒ/	<i>n.</i>	payment 工资
merely	/'miəli/	<i>adv.</i>	nothing more 仅仅, 不过
social	/'səʊʃəl/	<i>adj.</i>	relating to human society and its members 社会的, 社交的
reach	/ri:tʃ/	<i>v.</i>	move forward or upward in order to touch 到达, 伸出
position	/pə'ziʃən/	<i>n.</i>	the particular portion of space occupied by something 位置; a job in an organization 职位
recognize	/'rekəgnaiz/	<i>v.</i>	accept (someone) to be what is claimed or accept his power and authority 承认, 认出
fortunate	/'fɔ:tʃənɪt/	<i>adj.</i>	having unexpected good fortune 幸运的
factor	/'fæktə/	<i>n.</i>	anything that contributes causally to a result 因素
found	/faʊnd/	<i>v.</i>	set up 建立, 创立
create	/kri'eit/	<i>vt.</i>	make or cause to be or to become 创造, 造成
equal	/'i:kwəl/	<i>adj.</i>	having the same quantity, value, or measure as another 相等的 (事物或数量)
creator	/kri'eitə/	<i>n.</i>	terms referring to the Judeo-Christian God 造物主
certain	/'sə:tn/	<i>adj.</i>	definite but not specified or identified 确定的, 某一个
unalienable	/ˌʌn'eɪljənəbl/	<i>adj.</i>	incapable of being repudiated or transferred to another 不可剥夺的
liberty	/'libəti/	<i>n.</i>	freedom of choice 自由, 自由权
pursuit	/pə'sju:t/	<i>n.</i>	the act of pursuing in an effort to overtake or capture 追求, 追赶
opinion	/ə'pinjən/	<i>n.</i>	a personal belief or judgment that is not founded on proof or certainty 意见, 看法
consider	/kən'sidə/	<i>vt.</i>	give careful consideration to 考虑, 认为
foundation	/faʊn'deɪʃən/	<i>n.</i>	the basis on which something is grounded 基础; an institution supported by an endowment 基金 (会)
immigrant	/'imigrənt/	<i>n.</i>	a person who comes to a country where they were not born in order to settle there 移民, 侨民
settle	/'setl/	<i>v.</i>	take up residence and become established 定居; bring to an end 解决



complete	/kəm'pli:t/	vt.	come or bring to a finish or an end 完成
fancy	/'fænsi/	adj.	not plain; decorative or ornamented 时髦的
enjoy	/in'dʒɔɪ/	v.	derive or receive pleasure from, get enjoyment from, take pleasure in 享受, 欣赏, 喜爱
support	/sə'pɔ:t/	v.	give moral or psychological support, aid, or courage to 支撑, 支持
focus	/'fəukəs/	n.	the concentration of attention or energy on something 中心, 焦点
financial	/faɪ'nænʃəl/	adj.	concerning money 财政的, 金融的
emphasis	/'emfəsis/	n.	special importance or significance 强调, 重点
satisfactory	/,sætɪs'fæktəri/	adj.	giving satisfaction 满意的
shiny	/'ʃaɪni/	adj.	reflecting light 闪耀的, 发亮的
golden	/'gəuldən/	adj.	likely to bring good luck 珍贵的; having the deep slightly brownish color of gold 金色的
manhood	/'mænhud/	n.	the state of being a man; manly qualities 成年, 勇气
vision	/'vɪʒən/	n.	the ability to see 视觉; the formation of a mental image of something that is not perceived as real and is not present to the senses 想象力, 幻想
combine	/kəm'baɪn/	v.	put or add together (使) 联合

## Phrases and Expressions

regardless of	不管, 不顾
look for	寻找, 寻求, 期待
settle down	定居
look toward	期待, 指向, 预计到

## Proper Names

James Truslow Adams	詹姆斯·特拉斯洛·亚当斯
United States	美国
Declaration of Independence	独立宣言 (1776 年 7 月 4 日, 本宣言由第二次大陆会议于费城批准)
Martin Luther King	马丁·路德·金 (1929-1968, 美国黑人运动领袖)
Malcolm X	马尔科姆·艾克斯 (1925-1965, 声望仅次于马丁·路德·金的黑人运动领袖)
Thomas Wolfe	托马斯·乌尔夫





## Notes

**1. (Para. 1) The term was first used by James Truslow Adams in his book *The Epic of America* which was written in 1931.**

句中 which 引导限定性定语从句，修饰限定 book。*The Epic of America* 是 book 的同位语。课文中还有类似的例子：

...and too many of us ourselves have grown tired and don't believe it. (Para.1)

我们中有太多的人已经疲惫，不再相信它。

- 参考译文：詹姆斯·特拉斯洛·亚当斯首次在 1931 年出版的《美国史诗》中使用了（美国梦）这一说法。

**2. (Para. 1) The American Dream is that dream of a land in which life should be better and richer and fuller for everyone, with opportunity for each according to ability or achievement.**

句中 which 引导的是限定性定语从句，修饰前面的 dream，做 in 的宾语。课文中还有类似的例子，见注释 3。

with 引导名词，作状语，说明实现的方式。

- 参考译文：美国梦是土地的梦，每个人根据其能力或成就，让生活更美好、富裕和充实。

**3. (Para. 1) It is not a dream of motor cars and high wages merely, but a dream of social order in which each man and each woman shall be able to reach the highest position, and be recognized by others for what they are, regardless of the fortunate factors of birth or position.**

**recognize** vi.

to accept to be what is claimed 承认，认出

e.g. His thorough knowledge and competence were recognized.

他的渊博的学识和工作能力得到了承认。

Can you recognize her from this picture?

你能从这张照片中认出她吗？

**regardless of**

不管，不顾（形容词短语，在句中作状语），课文中还有类似的例子：

...to every man, regardless of his birth, his shiny, golden opportunity ...

……对每个人来说，不管他的出身，令人羡慕的幸运机会……

e.g. I'll take the job regardless of the pay.

不管报酬多少我都要这份工作。

- 参考译文：这不仅仅是汽车和高工资的梦想，而是社会秩序的梦想，所有男人和女人，都能够到达人生的最高顶点，得到他人的承认，而不看他们的出身或者是地位等运气的因素。



4. (Para. 2) In the United States' Declaration of Independence, our founding fathers: "...held certain truths to be obvious, that all Men are created equal, that they are given by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are life, Liberty and the Pursuit of Happiness."

our founding fathers 之后引用原话,是直接引语,代表了建国者的直接观点。

在 to be obvious 后接三个 that 引导的同位语从句,对前面的 truths 作解释说明。同位语从句可以不紧跟在它说明的名词后面,而被其他单词隔开。

- 参考译文:在《独立宣言》中,我们的先辈拥护某些不言而喻的真理,所有人生来平等,被赋予某些不可剥夺的权利,它们是生活,自由和对快乐的追求。

5. (Para. 3) Were farmers who left the big cities of the east to find happiness and their piece of land in the unknown field finding these unalienable Rights?

主句使用过去进行时,说明在过去相当长的一段时间内,这些农场主都在追寻梦想,finding 是主句的谓语动词。句中 who 引导的是限定性定语从句,修饰限定主语 farmers。主句使用一般疑问句形式,但是表示肯定。第三段的所有句子都采用这种形式。

- 参考译文:那些离开东部大城市,想在未知的土地上寻找快乐和他们自己土地的农场主,是在一直寻找这些不可剥夺的权利?

6. (Para. 3) Were the immigrants who came to the United States looking for their life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness, their Dream?

who 引导限定性定语从句,修饰限定前面的名词 immigrants。

- 参考译文:那些来到美国的移民一直在追寻他们的生活、自由、追求快乐和梦想?

7. (Para. 3) And what did the wish of the old soldier of World War II - to settle down, to have a home, a car and a family - tell us about this growing Dream?

World War II 后破折号中间是插入语,对前面的 wish 进行解释,起强调的作用。

- 参考译文:第二次世界大战的老兵的希望——定居下来,有一座房子,汽车和家——给我们讲述不断变化的美国梦?

8. (Para. 4) Some say, that the American Dream has become the pursuit of material success - that people work more hours to get bigger cars, fancier homes, the fruits of success for their families - but have less time to enjoy their success.

Some say 是插入语,表示有人发表的观点,但是如果删除,对全句的意思没有影响。破折号后是插入语,对全句进行解释和说明。第二个破折号后接省略主语的从句,主语是前面的 they,表示转折。

- 参考译文:有人说,美国梦已经变成物质成功的追求,人们工作更长的时间,买更大的轿车,更舒适的房子,为了家庭的成功果实,但是只有更少的时间来享受他们的成功。

9. (Para. 4) Others say that the American Dream is beyond the hand of the working poor who must work two jobs to support their family.

beyond prep.

too far or too advanced for somebody or something 超出……之外;非……所能及

e.g. The exercise was beyond the abilities of most of the class.

这个练习超出了班上大多数学生的能力。

- 参考译文：有些人却说，对于必须做两份工作才能养家糊口的贫困劳动者来讲，美国梦超出了他们的能力范围。

**10. (Para. 4) Yet others look toward a new American Dream with less focus on financial gain and more emphasis on living a simple, satisfactory life.**

- 参考译文：当然，其他人寻求，新的美国梦，减少对物质收获的关注，更多强调简单和满足的生活。

**11. (Para. 4) Thomas Wolfe said, "...to every man, regardless of his birth, his shiny, golden opportunity ...the right to live, to work, to be himself, and to become whatever thing his manhood and his vision can combine to make him."**

- 参考译文：托马斯·乌尔夫说：“对每个人来说，不管他的出身，令人羡慕的幸运机会”他的权利，生存，工作，成为自我，成为他的勇气和想像力能够造就的一切。

## Text Comprehension

**1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words according to the text.**

The term, 1) \_\_\_\_\_, was first used by James Truslow Adams as a dream of social order in which men can be 2) \_\_\_\_\_ to reach the highest 3) \_\_\_\_\_, and be recognized by others 4) \_\_\_\_\_ what they are, regardless of the 5) \_\_\_\_\_ factors of birth or position. The United States' Declaration of Independence declares certain unalienable 6) \_\_\_\_\_, such as life, 7) \_\_\_\_\_ and the Pursuit of Happiness. Some believe that the American Dream has 8) \_\_\_\_\_ the pursuit of material success, some say that the American Dream is 9) \_\_\_\_\_ the hand of the working poor, and others put more emphasis on living a simple, satisfactory life than on 10) \_\_\_\_\_ gain.

**2. Answer the following questions according to the text.**

- 1) What is the definition of American Dream used by Adams?
- 2) What is the emphasis in Declaration of Independence?
- 3) Are the dreams of farmers same with the immigrants'?
- 4) Had Martin Luther King realized his Dream according to the text?
- 5) Why the American Dream is not simply the pursuit of material success?
- 6) What is a new American Dream according to the text?

## Vocabulary

**1. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.**

focus	satisfactory	explain	fortunate	vision
social	opinion	dream	believe	merely

- 1) I can't agree with your \_\_\_\_\_ in this respect.
- 2) I don't understand your idea. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ yourself a bit more?



- 3) The answer was not quite \_\_\_\_\_ to him.
- 4) Do you really want to go or are you \_\_\_\_\_ being amiable?
- 5) He always wants to be the \_\_\_\_\_ of attention.
- 6) Do you \_\_\_\_\_ that there are only two girls in my class?
- 7) I had some very strange \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- 8) You are \_\_\_\_\_ to have such a reasonable father.
- 9) I've had my eyes tested and the report says that my \_\_\_\_\_ is perfect.
- 10) Her research is centred on the \_\_\_\_\_ effects of unemployment.

2. The suffixes -able, -ible, -ive, -ing can be used to form adjectives. Study the following models and complete the following table with appropriate words.

<b>Models:</b> exhaust—exhaustible	connect—connectable
declare—declarative	touch—touching

Verbs	Adjectives	Verbs	Adjectives
read			comfortable
act		shock	
	responsible	relative	
surprise		remark	
	sensitive	suit	

3. Fill in each of the blanks with an appropriate preposition or adverb.

- 1) Nobody could prevent them \_\_\_\_\_ fighting a battle against pollution.
- 2) At the news we all felt sorry \_\_\_\_\_ the girl.
- 3) Families meet together for a big meal \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Eve.
- 4) We shouldn't judge a person \_\_\_\_\_ his looks and clothes.
- 5) They got the work done quickly, and well \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) She was \_\_\_\_\_ her early twenties when she went abroad.
- 7) An elephant was led \_\_\_\_\_ the road where the blind men stood.
- 8) Our teacher explained the lesson to us as \_\_\_\_\_ as he could.

## Structure

1. Study the model and combine the following pairs of sentences.

<p><b>Model:</b> Were farmers finding these unalienable Rights? These farmers left the big cities of the east to find happiness and their piece of land in the unknown field</p> <p>Were farmers who left the big cities of the east to find happiness and their piece of land in the unknown field finding these unalienable Rights?</p>
---

1) I bought a new book. This new book is very beautiful.

---

2) The house is again on the market. He bought the house in 1980 and sold two years later.

---

3) The park is very nice. We visited the park yesterday.

---

4) This is the largest clock in the world. The minute hand of the clock is six meters long.

---

5) My younger brother is now studying in Beijing University. He is twenty.

---

**2. Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese given in brackets, using the expression “regardless of” .**

1) Everyone should be respected by others, \_\_\_\_\_ (不管他的年龄和性别).

2) \_\_\_\_\_ (不顾危险), he climbed the tower.

3) They built the house in a short time, \_\_\_\_\_ (不管成本).

4) His family gave him great support, \_\_\_\_\_ (不管他是成功还是失败).

5) She insisted to travel abroad, \_\_\_\_\_ (不顾她父亲拒绝给她钱).

## Comprehensive Exercises

**1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.**

We lived in the country 1) \_\_\_\_\_ a nearby lake. I did not like to be at home. When my parents were home, my mother just yelled and criticized because nothing was ever 2) \_\_\_\_\_ in her life. She dreamed of a different life but she ended up living in the country far away from the city where she believed her dreams would have 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

I enjoyed hanging out by the water. I would sit there for hours and 4) \_\_\_\_\_ my reflection. There I was, looking nothing like a pretty ballerina dancer. 5) \_\_\_\_\_ don't lie. Once the waves would come, my reflection was gone. Washed 6) \_\_\_\_\_ just like my dream to dance.

As I grew older, I began to realize that the reason my dream was even born, was because it was something that was 7) \_\_\_\_\_ of me. The dream I had was never nurtured and 8) \_\_\_\_\_, so it slowly died. It's not that I wanted it to die, but I allowed it to die the day I started 9) \_\_\_\_\_ the words, “You can't do it.” When I finally 10) \_\_\_\_\_ from many years of dreaming, I realized that you can't settle for dancing in the wildflowers, you have to move on to the platform.

1) A. on B. by C. at D. within

2) A. unhappy B. sad C. bad D. perfect

3) A. realized B. come true C. gone D. come about



- |                 |             |                |                 |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 4) A. stare at  | B. look at  | C. see         | D. watch        |
| 5) A. Dancers   | B. Waves    | C. Reflections | D. Dreams       |
| 6) A. with      | B. away     | C. off         | D. up           |
| 7) A. outside   | B. out      | C. in          | D. inside       |
| 8) A. cared for | B. cared of | C. took care   | D. cared in     |
| 9) A. reading   | B. speaking | C. writing     | D. listening to |
| 10) A. woke up  | B. stood up | C. looked up   | D. got up       |

**2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in brackets.**

1) 许多人都看了电视新闻,但是没有人相信那是真的。(believe)

2) 每个人都想成功,但是只有少数人抓住了机会。(opportunity)

3) 他打开了灯找钥匙。(look for)

4) 在国外工作了几年后,他决定在北京定居。(settle down)

5) 在仔细端详之后,他认出了站在面前的正是多年前的朋友。(recognize)

**Part III Extensive Reading (I)**

**Text B**

**If the Dream is Big Enough**

1 I used to watch a girl from my kitchen window. She seemed so small as she pushed her way through the crowd of boys on the playground. The school was across the street from our home and I would often watch the kids as they played during break. A sea of children, and yet to me, she stood out from them all.

2 I remember the first day I saw her playing basketball. I watched in wonder as she ran circles around the other kids. The boys always tried to stop her but no one could. I began to notice her at other times, basketball in hand, playing alone. She would practice dribbling and shooting over and over again, sometimes until dark.

3 One day I asked her why she practiced so much. She looked directly in my eyes and immediately she said, "I want to go to college. The only way I can go is if I get a scholarship. I like basketball. I decided that if I were good enough, I would get a scholarship. I am going

to play college basketball. I want to be the best. My Dad told me if the dream is big enough, the facts don't count." Then she smiled and ran towards the court.

4 Well, I had to give it to her—she was determined. I watched her through those junior high years and into high-school. Every week, she led her school team to victory.

5 One day i n her senior year, I saw her sitting in the grass, head in her arms. I walked across the street and sat down in the cool grass beside her. I asked what was wrong. "Oh, nothing," came her reply. "I am just too short." The coach told her that at 5'5" she would probably never get to play for a top ranked team—much less offered a scholarship—so she should stop dreaming about college. She was sad and I felt her disappointment. I asked her if she had talked to her Dad about it yet. She lifted her head from her hands and told me that her father said those coaches were wrong. They just did not understand the power of a dream. He told her that if she really wanted to play for a good college, if she really wanted a scholarship, that nothing could stop her except one thing — her own attitude. He told her again, "If the dream is big enough, the facts don't count."

6 The next year, as she and her team went to the Northern California Championship game, she was seen by a college coach. She was indeed offered a scholarship, NCAA women's basketball team. She was going to get the college education that she had dreamed of and worked toward for all those years. It's true: If the dream is big enough, the facts don't count.

(476 words)

New Words

crowd	/kraud/	<i>n.</i>	a large number of things or people considered together 人群
playground	/ˈpleigraund/	<i>n.</i>	an area where many people go for recreation 运动场, 操场
across	/əˈkrɔːs/	<i>adv.</i>	to the opposite side 交叉地, 在对面
kid	/kid/	<i>n.</i>	a young person of either sex 小孩
break	/break/	<i>n.</i>	some abrupt occurrence that interrupts an ongoing activity 休息, 暂停
circle	/ˈsɜːkl/	<i>n.</i>	a figure bounded by one line, every point on which is equally distant from the centre 圆圈, 圈子
notice	/ˈnəʊtɪs/	<i>vt.</i>	discover or determine the existence, presence, or fact of 注意
practice	/ˈpræktɪs/	<i>v.</i>	carry out 练习, 实行, 实践
dribble	/ˈdribl/	<i>vi.</i>	play the ball 运球
shoot	/ʃuːt/	<i>v.</i>	send forth suddenly, intensely, swiftly 投球, 射击, 发射
immediately	/ɪˈmiːdiətli/	<i>adv.</i>	without delay or hesitation; with no time intervening 立即, 马上



scholarship	/ˈskɒləʃɪp/	<i>n.</i>	financial aid provided to a student on the basis of academic merit 奖学金
dad	/dæd/	<i>n.</i>	an informal term for a father; probably derived from baby talk 爸爸
count	/kaunt/	<i>v.</i>	determine the number or amount of 数, 计算
		<i>n.</i>	the total number counted 计数, 计算
court	/kɔ:t/	<i>n.</i>	an assembly (including one or more judges) to conduct judicial business 法院; a specially marked horizontal area within which a game is played 庭院
determine	/di'tə:min/	<i>v.</i>	establish after a calculation, investigation, experiment, survey, or study 决定, 使下定决心
junior	/ˈdʒu:njə/	<i>adj.</i>	younger; lower in rank 年少的, 初级的
lead	/led,li:d/	<i>v.</i>	cause to undertake a certain action 领导, 引导
victory	/ˈvɪktəri/	<i>n.</i>	a successful ending of a struggle or contest 胜利
senior	/ˈsi:njə/	<i>adj.</i>	older; higher in rank 年长的, 高级的
reply	/ri'plai/	<i>n.</i>	a statement (either spoken or written) that is made to answer to a question or request or criticism or accusation 答复
probably	/ˈprɒbəbli/	<i>adv.</i>	with considerable certainty 大概, 或许
coach	/kəʊtʃ/	<i>n.</i>	someone in charge of training an athlete or a team 教练
rank	/ræŋk/	<i>n.</i>	position in a social hierarchy 等级
		<i>v.</i>	take or have a position relative to others 排列, 归类
sad	/sæd/	<i>adj.</i>	experiencing or showing sorrow or unhappiness 忧伤的
lift	/lift/	<i>n.</i>	the act of giving temporary assistance 举起; lifting device consisting of a platform or cage that is raised and lowered mechanically in a vertical shaft in order to move people from one floor to another in a building 电梯
		<i>v.</i>	raise from a lower to a higher position 升高, 提高
except	/ɪk'sept/	<i>prep.</i>	除了……之外
indeed	/ɪn'di:d/	<i>adv.</i>	in truth (often tends to intensify) 真正地
championship	/ˈtʃæmpiənʃɪp/	<i>n.</i>	a competition at which a champion is chosen 锦标赛
education	/ˌedʒukeɪʃn/	<i>n.</i>	the activities of educating or instructing 教育

## Phrases and Expressions

push through	挤过
stand out from	从……突出, 脱颖而出
over and over again	再三, 反复不断地





have to	必须，不得不
sit down	坐下
walk across	步行穿过
much less	更不必说，何况，更少

## Proper Names

California	加利福尼亚州，位于美国西部，经济最发达、人口最多的州
NCAA	National Collegiate Athletic Association, 美国大学体育总会，它是由全美国千百所大专院校所参与结盟的一个协会

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) I used to watch her from my kitchen window.

used to (do) sth.

sth. that happened regularly or was the case in the past, but is not now. 指过去经常做某事，而现在则不了。

e.g. I used to smoke, but I gave up a couple of years ago.

我以前抽烟，但两年前就戒掉了。

试比较：

be used to sth./to doing sth.

sth. that you are familiar with so that it no longer seems new or strange to you. 指习惯于，适应于

e.g. we are used to the noise from the traffic now.

现在我们已经适应车辆往来的噪音了。

● 参考译文：我过去经常从家里厨房的窗户看到她。

### 2. (Para. 1) She seemed so small as she pushed her way through the crowd of boys on the playground.

as 是连词，引导时间状语从句，表示同时发生。课文中还有同样的句子，例如：

The next year, as she and her team went to the Northern California Championship game, she was seen by a college coach. (Para. 6)

第二年，当她和她的球队去参加北加利福尼亚冠军杯比赛时，她被一位大学教练看中了。

● 参考译文：当她在操场上挤过男孩群的时候，她显得是那么瘦小。

### 3. (Para. 1) A sea of children, and yet to me, she stood out from them all.

stand out

to be easily seen; to be noticeable 显眼；突出

e.g. She is the sort of person who stands out in a crowd.



她是那种在人群中很显眼的人。

- 参考译文: 然而对我而言, 在那群孩子中她是最突出的一个。

4. (Para. 2) I began to notice her at other times, basketball in hand, playing alone.

basketball in hand 是名词短语, 在句中作插入语, 表示伴随的状态, 起说明的作用。Playing 是现在分词作状语, 表示同时发生。

- 参考译文: 我从此后开始到注意她, 独自一人练篮球。

5. (Para. 2) She would practice dribbling and shooting over and over again, sometimes until dark.

- 参考译文: 她总是一次又一次练习运球与投篮, 有时直到天黑。

6. (Para. 3) One day I asked her why she practiced so much.

why 引导宾语从句, 作主句中的间接宾语。

- 参考译文: 有一天, 我问她为什么努力地练习。

7. (Para. 3) My Dad told me if the dream is big enough, the facts don't count.

*count (for) sth.*

to be important 重要

e.g. Every point in this game counts.

这场比赛每一分都很重要。

- 参考译文: 我爸爸告诉我, 心中有目标, 风雨不折腰。

8. (Para. 5) He told her that if she really wanted to play for a good college, if she really wanted a scholarship, that nothing could stop her except one thing — her own attitude. He told her again, “If the dream is big enough, the facts don't count”.

第一句是间接引语, 没有直接引用她父亲说的话, 而将她父亲的意思表达出来。第二句则直接引用她父亲的话, 因此加上引号。

- 参考译文: 他告诉她, 如果她真正想在好大学里打球, 如果她真正想获得奖学金, 那么, 除了她自己的态度外, 没有什么可以阻止她。他又说: “心中有目标, 风雨不折腰。”

9. (Para. 6) She was going to get the college education that she had dreamed of and worked toward for all those years.

be going to 是要作某事, 表示比较确定, 而不是主观意愿。注意与 would 和 should 的区别。在这里 be 动词使用过去时, 表示以过去时间为起点, 将要发生的事情。

- 参考译文: 她将接受大学教育, 这是她多年梦寐以求并为之奋斗的梦想。

## Exercises

1. Answer the following questions according to the text.

- 1) Who caught the attention of the author?
- 2) Why the author noticed her?
- 3) Why she practiced basketball?
- 4) Why she was sad?

- 5) What was the opinion of her father?  
6) Had she realized her dream?

**2. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.**

indeed	education	coach	shoot
junior	victory	determine	crowd

- 1) He \_\_\_\_\_ at the bird, but missed it.  
2) The captain led our team to \_\_\_\_\_.  
3) The football \_\_\_\_\_ was criticized by the local paper.  
4) A friend in need is a friend \_\_\_\_\_.  
5) The court \_\_\_\_\_ that the man was guilty.  
6) Many reforms must be made to the \_\_\_\_\_ system.  
7) He is studying at a \_\_\_\_\_ middle school.  
8) We had to push our way through the \_\_\_\_\_.

**3. Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.**

One day I asked her why she practiced so much. She looked directly in my eyes and immediately she said, “I want to go to college. The only way I can go is if I get a scholarship. I like basketball. I decided that if I were good enough, I would get a scholarship. I am going to play college basketball. I want to be the best. My Dad told me if the dream is big enough, the facts don’t count.” Then she smiled and ran towards the court.

---

---

---

---

---

**Part IV Extensive Reading (II)**

**Text C**

**Wedding Dreams during Economic Decline**

- 1 Nagging concerns about the global economic decline and rising unemployment are forcing many young Britons to think twice about marry this year, a think-tank said on Saturday.
- 2 Almost 80 percent of young British couples living together want to get married, the think tank Civitas said, but would think again their wedding plans due to increase of job losses as



companies cut costs and lay off workers.

3 “As the economic decline bites, it's going to be harder for partners to make that commitment - without financial stability and jobs they won't have the confidence to say ‘I do’,” Anastasia de Waal, director of family and education at Civitas, said.

4 The study, which surveyed 1,560 adults aged between 20 to 35, also found that for 50 percent of the people making a commitment was the most important reason to get married, and only two percent considered marriage for tax advantages.

5 “If my boyfriend asked me now, then I would still say ‘yes’, but I wouldn't waste my money for a high-profile wedding,” Jenny Brown, an employee works in London's central financial district.

6 But De Waal said the economic decline would have a serious impact on planning a life together.

7 “This is not about being able to afford a fancy wedding dress for 10,000 pounds or not.”

8 A British Social Attitudes survey in January found that young people showed a less traditional attitude towards marriage and would put their careers first.

9 About 40 percent of people aged between 18 to 34 said marriage was still the “best kind of relationship,” compared with 84 percent of people aged 65 and over, it said.

10 The release of the study met with the launch of Marriage Week UK on Saturday, using the words "Celebrating Commitment" and promoting the importance of marriage for family life and society.

(300 words)

## New Words

nagging	['nægɪŋ]	<i>adj.</i>	continually complaining or faultfinding 唠叨的, 烦人的
wedding	/'wedɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	the social event at which the ceremony of marriage is performed 婚礼
economic	/,i:kə'nɒmɪk/	<i>adj.</i>	of or relating to an economy, the system of production and management of material wealth 经济(上)的
decline	/di'klaɪn/	<i>n.</i>	a gradual decrease 衰落, 下降
		<i>v.</i>	grow worse 衰落, 下降
concern	/kən'sə:n/	<i>vt.</i>	be relevant to 涉及, 关系到
		<i>n.</i>	something that interests one because it is important or affects one 关系, 关心
global	/'gləʊbəl/	<i>adj.</i>	involving the entire earth 球形的, 全球的
rising	/'raɪzɪŋ/	<i>adj.</i>	advancing or becoming higher or greater in degree or value or status 上升的, 高涨
unemployment	/,ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt/	<i>n.</i>	the state of being unemployed or not having a job 失业



force	/fɔ:s/	vt.	to cause to do through pressure or necessity 强制, 强加
twice	/twais/	adv.	two times, to double the degree 两次, 两倍
marry	/'mæri/	vt.	take in marriage 娶, 嫁, 和……结婚
think-tank	/'θɪŋk,tæŋk/	n.	a company or person that does research for hire and issues reports on the implications 智囊团
Saturday	/'sætədi/	n.	星期六
couple	/'kʌpl/	n.	a pair of people who live together (一)对, (一)双, 夫妇
increase	/'ɪnkri:s/	v.	become bigger or greater in amount 增加, 增长
loss	/lɒs/	n.	something that is lost 损失, 遗失
company	/'kʌmpəni/	n.	an institution created to conduct business 公司; the state of being with someone 陪伴
bite	/bait/	v.	to grip, cut off, or tear with the teeth or jaws 咬, 咬伤
partner	/'pɑ:tnə/	n.	a person who is a member of a partnership 伙伴, 合伙人
commitment	/kə'mɪtmənt/	n.	an engagement by contract involving financial obligation 委托, 许诺, 承担
stability	/stə'biliti/	n.	the quality or attribute of being firm and steadfast 稳定
survey	/sə:'vei/	n.	a detailed critical inspection 调查, 测量
		v.	make a survey of; for statistical purposes 调查, 测量
adult	/'ædʌlt/	n.	fully developed person from maturity onward 成人
aged	/'eidʒɪd/	adj.	advanced in years 年老的
reason	/'ri:zn/	n.	an explanation of the cause of some phenomenon 理由, 原因
marriage	/'mæriɪdʒ/	n.	the state of being a married couple voluntarily joined for life 婚姻
tax	/tæks/	n.	charge against a citizen's person or property or activity for the support of government 税, 税款
waste	/weist/	v.	spend thoughtlessly; throw away 浪费
employee	/,emplɔ'i:/	n.	a worker who is hired to perform a job 职工, 雇员
central	/'sentrəl/	adj.	in or near a center or constituting a center 中心的, 中央的
district	/'distrikt/	n.	a region marked off for administrative or other purposes 区域
serious	/'siəriəs/	adj.	of great consequence 严肃的, 严重的
impact	/'ɪmpækt/	n.	a forceful consequence; a strong effect 冲击, 影响
afford	/ə'fɔ:d/	vt.	have the financial means to do something or buy something 给予, 供应得起
January	/'dʒænjuəri/	n.	一月
show	/ʃəʊ/	v.	make visible or noticeable 显示; give an exhibition of to an interested audience 展出
		n.	the act of publicly exhibiting or entertaining 展览, 炫耀



traditional	/trə'diʃənəl/	adj.	consisting of or derived from tradition 传统的
career	/kə'riə/	n.	the particular occupation for which one is trained 事业
relationship	/ri'leiʃənʃɪp/	n.	a state involving mutual dealings between people or parties or countries 关系, 关联
release	/ri'li:s/	n.	a process that liberates or discharges something 公开
meet	/mi:t/	vt.	get together socially or for a specific purpose 遇见, 会面
promote	/prə'məut/	vt.	contribute to the progress or growth of 促进, 提拔

## Phrases and Expressions

get married	结婚
due to	因为, 由于
lay off	解雇

## Proper Names

Briton	大不列颠人, 英国人
Civitas	西维他
Anastasia de Waal	阿纳斯塔西亚·德·瓦尔
Jenny Brown	詹妮·布朗

## Notes

1. (Para. 1) Nagging concerns about the global economic decline and rising unemployment are forcing many young Britons to think twice about marry this year...

此句主语有两个并列的动名词短语 Nagging concerns 和 rising unemployment 构成, 谓语由动词短语 force sb. to do sth. 组成。

- 参考译文: 对全球经济衰退的悲观与不断上升的失业率迫使许多英国年轻人重新考虑他们今年的结婚计划。

2. (Para. 2) Almost 80 percent of young British couples living together want to get married, the think tank Civitas said, but would think again their wedding plans due to increase of job losses as companies cut costs and lay off workers.

living 是现在分词, 做 couples 的定语, 表示他们的状态。在此, 现在分词作定语相当于一个定语从句, 其主语就是被修饰词。Who live together.

due to prep.

因为, 由于

e.g. His successes were largely due to luck.

她的成功主要靠运气。

- 参考译文: 接近 80%住在一起的英国年轻伴侣想结婚, 智囊团专家西维他说, 但是考虑到公司削减开支, 解雇职员而造成的失业率上升, 他们会重新考虑结婚的计划。

3. (Para. 4) The study, which surveyed 1,560 adults aged between 20 to 35, also found that for 50 percent of the people making a commitment was the most important reason to get married, and only two percent considered marriage for tax advantages.

此句主语为 the study, 后 which 引导一非限制性定语从句修饰主语。谓语是 found, found 后 that 引导一宾语从句。

- 参考译文: 这项研究共调查了年龄在 20~35 的 1560 位成年人, 研究发现 50% 的人选择结婚的理由是因为定了婚, 而只有 2% 人为了减税才结婚。

4. (Para. 5) “If my boyfriend asked me now, then I would still say ‘yes’, but I wouldn’t waste my money for a high-profile wedding,” Jenny Brown, an employee works in London’s central financial district.

- 参考译文: 如果男朋友现在问我, 我还是会说“行”, 但是我不会为高调的婚礼花钱。在伦敦中心金融区工作的职员詹妮·布朗说。

5. (Para. 6) But De Waal said the economic decline would have a serious impact on planning a life together.

*have an impact on sth./doing sth.*

the powerful effect that sth. has on sb./sth. 巨大影响; 强大作用

e.g. Her speech had a profound impact on everyone.

她的讲话对每个人都有深远的影响。

- 参考译文: 但是德·瓦尔说经济衰退对年轻人计划在一起生活有巨大影响。

6. (Para. 9) About 40 percent of people aged between 18 to 34 said marriage was still the “best kind of relationship,” compared with 84 percent of people aged 65 and over, it said.

- 参考译文: 该调查还说, 年龄在 18 至 34 岁之间的人中, 有大约 40% 的人说婚姻仍然是“最佳的关系”, 而 65 岁以上的人有 84% 持有这样的观点。

7. (Para. 10) The release of the study met with the launch of Marriage Week UK on Saturday, using the words “Celebrating Commitment” and promoting the importance of marriage for family life and society.

- 参考译文: 这项研究的发表正好与周六的“英国婚姻周”活动同时, 其口号是“纪念订婚”, 其活动主旨是促进人们认识到婚姻对家庭和社会的重要性。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 肯定与否定 Positive and Negative

在英语的日常对话中, 为了表示赞成或反对, 使用肯定或否定的回答。在使用肯定和否



定回答时, 往往根据具体语境, 有不同的回答, 代表不同程度的赞成与反对。以下例句的肯定与否定就展示了不同程度的赞成与反对。

### Key Sentences

- ◇ —May I go with you?  
—Why not? / No, you couldn't.
  
- ◇ —Could you do me a favour?  
—Absolutely.
  
- ◇ —Could you help me?  
—Absolutely impossible!
  
- ◇ —Would you mind if you can do something for me?  
—I'm sorry I'm afraid.
  
- ◇ —Would you give me a hand?  
—Sure! With pleasure.
  
- ◇ —May I ask you a favor?  
—No way!
  
- ◇ —What do you think about it?  
—Well, all right, I agree.

### Practice

Choose the answer that best completes each dialog.

- 1) —Hello, Tom. Would you give me a hand?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
—Thank you very much.
- A. What you have said is true.                      B. Sure! With pleasure.  
C. I'm sorry I'm afraid.                              D. Well, I have something to do.
- 2) —Where are you going?  
—I am going to the library.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
—Why not? Let's go.
- A. May I go with you?                                  B. May I ask you a favor?  
C. Well, I need to talk with Mary.                  D. May I ask Mary?
- 3) —Are you going to see Mr. Guan? May I go with you?





- \_\_\_\_\_. He only agreed to talk with me.
- A. Yes, you can. B. No, I agree.  
C. Why not. D. No, you couldn't.
- 4) —Mary talked her opinion about the topic. \_\_\_\_\_  
—Well, all right, I agree.
- A. What is her idea? B. Why she thinks in that way?  
C. What do you think about it? D. Why she doesn't like it?
- 5) —Harry, \_\_\_\_\_  
—Absolutely impossible! I have much work to do tonight.
- A. Could you help me tonight? B. Could you lend me some money?  
C. Could I go with you tomorrow? D. Could you buy some chicken for me now?

## Grammar

### 形容词与副词 Adjective and Adverb

#### 一、概述

形容词作定语，表语，修饰名词，跟在 be 动词之后。副词是用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词及全句话的词类，表示时间、地点、程度、方式等概念。

#### 二、比较级、最高级构成方式

- 一般在词尾直接加 er 或 est，例如，poor→poorer→poorest, long→longer→longest
- 以不发音的字母 e 结尾的单词在词尾直接加 r 或 st，例如，nice→nicer→nicest, fine→finer→finest
- 以辅音字母+y 结尾的词，把 y 变为 i，再加 er 或 est，例如，angry→angrier→angriest, heavy→heavier→heaviest
- 重读闭音节，末尾只有一个辅音字母，双写这个辅音字母，再加 er 或 est，例如，big→bigger→biggest, hot→hotter→hottest
- 部分双音节词和多音节词分别在原级前加 more 构成比较级和 most 构成最高级，例如，slowly→more slowly→most slowly; beautiful→more beautiful→most beautiful
- 不规则变化

原 级	比 较 级	最 高 级
good / well	better	best
bad / ill	worse	worst
many / much	more	most
little	less	least



续表

原 级	比 较 级	最 高 级
Late	later, latter	latest, last
far	farther, further	farthest, furthest
old	older, elder	oldest, eldest

### 三、形容词与副词的用法

#### 1. 原级的用法

- 1) 只能修饰原级的词, very, quite, so, too

例如, He is too tired to walk on.

他太累了以致不能再继续走了。

- 2) 原级常用的句型结构

- (1) “甲+be+ (倍数) +as+形容词原级+as+乙” 表示“甲和乙程度相同”或“甲是乙的几倍”。

例如, Michael is as old as Jane.

迈克尔和简年龄一样大。

Michael is twice as old as Jane.

迈克尔的年龄是简的两倍。

“甲+实意动词+ (倍数) +as+副词原级+as+乙” 表示“甲和乙程度相同”或“甲是乙的几倍”。

例如, John runs as fast as Mike.

约翰和迈克跑得一样快。

John runs twice as fast as Mike.

约翰跑得速度是迈克的两倍。

- (2) “甲+be+not+as/so+形容词原级+as+乙” 甲不如乙……

例如, This room is not as/so big as that one.

这个房间不如那个大。

“甲+助动词+not+动词原形+as/so+副词原级+as+乙” 甲不如乙……

例如, He doesn't walk as slowly as you.

他走路不像你那样慢。

#### 2. 比较级的用法

- 1) 可以修饰比较级的词, much, a lot, far, ……的多 a little, a bit, ……一点儿, even 甚至, still 仍然

例如, Lesson One is much easier than Lesson Two.

第一课比第二课容易得多。

Thomas looks even younger than before.

托马斯甚至比以前更年轻。

This train runs much faster than that one.

这辆火车比那辆跑地快。



She drives still more carefully than her husband.

她开车仍然比她丈夫还认真。

## 2) 比较级常用的句型结构

- (1) “甲+be+ (倍数)+形容词比较级+than+乙”表示“甲比乙……”或“甲比乙……几倍”。

例如, William is taller than Catharine.

威廉比凯瑟琳高。

This room is three times bigger than that one.

这个房间比那个大三倍。

“甲+实意动词+(倍数)+副词比较级+than+乙”表示“甲比乙……”或“甲比乙……几倍”。

例如, I got up earlier than my father this morning.

我今天早晨起床比我爸爸还早。

He runs three times faster than his brother.

他跑的速度比他弟弟快三倍。

- (2) “甲+be+形容词比较级+than+any other+单数名词(+介词短语)”表示“甲比同一范围的任何一个人/物都……”, 含义是“甲最……”。

例如, The Yangtze River is longer than any other river in China.

=The Yangtze River is longer than any of the other rivers in China.

长江比中国的任何一条其他的河都长。

=The Yangtze River is longer than the other rivers in China.

长江比中国的其他所有的河都长。

=The Yangtze River is the longest river in China.

长江是中国最长的河流。

注意: The Yangtze River is longer than any river in Japan.

长江比日本任何一条河都长。

“甲+实意动词+副词比较级+than+any other+单数名词(+介词短语)”表示“甲比同一范围的任何一个人/物都……”, 含义是“甲最……”。

例如, Harry gets to school earlier than any other student in his class.

= Harry gets to school earlier than any of the other students in his class.

哈里比他们班上任何一个其他的同学到校都早。

= Harry gets to school earlier than the other students in his class.

哈里比他们班上其他的同学到校都早。

= Harry gets to school earliest in his class.

哈里在他们班到校最早。

注意: Harry gets to school earlier than any student in Larry's class.

哈里比拉里班上任何一个学生到校都早。(哈里和拉里不是同一个班)

- (3) “甲+be+the+形容词比较级+of the two+……”表示“甲是两者中较……的”。

例如, Look at the two boys. My sister is the taller of the two.

看那两个男孩, 我妹妹是两个当中较高的那个。



(4) “比较级+and+比较级”表示“越来越……”。

例如, He is getting taller and taller.

他变得越来越高了。

The flowers are more and more beautiful.

花儿越来越漂亮。

He does his homework more and more carefully.

他做作业越来越认真了。

(5) “the+比较级, the+比较级”表示“越……, 越……”。

例如, The more careful you are, the fewer mistakes you'll make.

你越认真, 犯的错误越少。

(6) “特殊疑问词+be+形容词比较级, 甲 or 乙?”

例如, Which is bigger, the earth or the moon?

哪一个大, 地球还是月球?

“特殊疑问词+实意动词+副词比较级, 甲 or 乙?”

例如, Who draws better, Susan or Diana? 谁画得比较好, 苏珊还是黛安娜?

### 3. 最高级常用句型结构

1) “主语+be+the+形容词最高级+单数名词+in/of 短语”表示“……是……中最……的”。

例如, Tony is the tallest in his class./of all the students.

托尼是他们班上/所有学生当中最高的。

This apple is the biggest of the five.

这个苹果是五个当中最大的。

“主语+实意动词+(the)+副词最高级+单数名词+in/of 短语”表示“……是……中最……的”。

例如, I jump (the) farthest in my class.

我是我们班跳得最远的。

2) “主语+be+one of the+形容词最高级+复数名词+in/of 短语”表示“……是……中最……之一”。

例如, Beijing is one of the largest cities in China.

北京是中国最大城市之一。

3) “特殊疑问词+be+the+最高级+甲, 乙 or 丙?”用于三者以上的比较。

例如, Which country is the largest, China, Russia or Canada?

哪一个国家最大, 中国, 俄罗斯还是加拿大?

“特殊疑问词+be+the+副词最高级+甲, 乙, or 丙?”用于三者以上的比较。

例如, Which season do you like (the) best, spring, summer or autumn?

你最喜欢哪一个季节, 春天, 夏天还是秋天?

### Exercise

Choose the best answers for each of the following sentences.

1) What a \_\_\_\_\_ cough! You seem \_\_\_\_\_ ill.



- A. terrible, terribly                      B. Terribly, terrible  
C. terrible, terrible                      D. terribly, terribly
- 2) I feel even \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
A. bad                      B. well                      C. worse                      D. worst
- 3) —Have you \_\_\_\_\_ spoken to a foreigner?  
—No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already, never                      B. ever, never  
C. yet, already                      D. ever, ever
- 4) He is taller than \_\_\_\_\_ in his class.  
A. any boy                      B. any  
C. any other boy                      D. some other boys
- 5) The car is running \_\_\_\_\_. It seems to be flying.  
A. more and faster                      B. more and fast  
C. fast and fast                      D. faster and faster
- 6) English is as \_\_\_\_\_ as Chinese. You should learn it well.  
A. important                      B. more important  
C. the most important                      D. much more important
- 7) Music is not so useful as science. It's \_\_\_\_\_ useful than science.  
A. fewer                      B. less                      C. more                      D. a lot
- 8) We've never heard of \_\_\_\_\_ story before.  
A. such a strange                      B. such strange                      C. so a strange                      D. so strange
- 9) Pass my glasses to me, Jack. I can \_\_\_\_\_ read the words in the newspaper.  
A. hardly                      B. really                      C. clearly                      D. rather
- 10) Three years \_\_\_\_\_, he become a driver.  
A. late                      B. later                      C. lately                      D. more lately
- 11) He is \_\_\_\_\_ enough to carry the heavy box.  
A. stronger                      B. much stronger  
C. strong                      D. the strongest
- 12) I bought \_\_\_\_\_ exercise-books with \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
A. a few, a few                      B. a few, a little  
C. a little, a few                      D. a little, a little
- 13) The box is \_\_\_\_\_ heavy for the girl \_\_\_\_\_ carry.  
A. too, to                      B. to, too                      C. so, that                      D. no, to
- 14) —Do you think the fish tastes \_\_\_\_\_?  
—She cooked it \_\_\_\_\_, I think.  
A. good, good                      B. well, good                      C. well, well                      D. good, well
- 15) She played the piano \_\_\_\_\_ than we had thought.  
A. successful                      B. successfully  
C. more successful                      D. more successfully



## Writing Skills

### 倒装句型

#### Patterns of Inversion

倒装的原因有两点:一是由于一定语法结构的要求,如 *Were Jack not busy, he would help us.* 二是由于修辞上的要求,如 *So sudden was the flood that we could save nothing.* (本句强调“sudden”)

在写作中,如能从修辞角度恰当地使用倒装句型,可以使结构衔接紧密,语义表达连贯,重点得以突出。常见结构:

#### 1. 状语(副词)+谓语动词+主语

此句型中用于句首的副词有: *here, there, now, then, out, in, up, down, away, off* 等。另外, *there be* 句型也属于这类倒装句型。

- *There exist different opinions on the project.* 关于这个项目存在着不同的意见。
- *Then came the memory of that wonderful time at the seaside.* 后来,在那海边的快乐时刻进入了我的记忆中。
- *Out rushed the boys and the girls.* 男孩子们和女孩子们一起冲了出去。
- *Down came the bird when a rifle shot cracked out.* 一声枪响,那只鸟应声落了下来。

注意:如果主语是代词,其语序应当为:状语+主语+谓语动词。如:

- *Away they rushed.* 他们冲出去了。

#### 2. 状语(介词短语)+谓语动词+主语

此句型类似于句型1。介词短语多数表示时间或地点。此句型使状语信息得以强调。例如:

- *After the war came the problem of employment.* 战后出现了就业问题。
- *In the stillness of the evening could be heard the ringing of a distant bell.* 在静静的夜晚,能听到远方传来的钟声。
- *Under the tree were sitting a group of villagers.* 树下坐着一群村民。
- *Below the house ran a little stream.* 小溪水在房子下面潺潺流过。
- *Through the open window came the sounds of plane.* 飞机的嗡嗡声从敞着的窗户传进来。

#### 3. 表语(Such)+be+主语

*such* 在此句型中是代词,作表语。此句型是表语的倒装,以强调表语的内容。例如:

- *Such is his nature.* 他的本性就是如此。
- *Such were his words.* 他就是这么说的。
- *Such is the fact that some people achieve success very early in life, while others must work a long time before attaining their goals.* 事实就是这样:有些人一生中很早就获得成功,而另一些人则要工作很长时间才能实现自己的目标。
- *He had never showed jealousy, vanity, resentment, or personal ambition. Such was Einstein.*



他从来没有表现出嫉妒、虚荣、怨恨及个人野心。爱因斯坦就是这样的人。

#### 4. 分词 + be + 主语

将分词提至句首，是为了强调这个分词形式所表达的动作。例如：

- Standing beside the hall is the newly-built library. 这个新建的图书馆坐落在大厅旁。
- Marching at the head of the column was our teacher. 走在队伍前头的是我们的老师。
- Fallen, fallen is Babylon, that great city. 陷落了，那伟大的巴比伦城确实是陷落了。
- Enclosed are the copies of my diploma. (随信) 寄去我的学位证书复印件。

#### 5. Only + 状语…… + 部分倒装结构

此句型是强调句型。only 放在句首表示强调时，后常跟强调的副词、介词短语、状语从句等。例如：

- Only by this means is it possible to explain his failure to act decisively. 只有这样才可能解释他没有采取决定性行动的原因。
- Only then did I realize the importance of mathematics. 直到那时我才认识到数学的重要性。
- Only in Beijing can you buy the book. 只有在北京你才能买到那本书。
- Only after he has acquired considerable facility in speaking does he begin to leave to read and to write. 直到获得了一定的说话能力后，他才离家去学读书和写字。
- Only when you have got a good knowledge of grammar can you write correctly. 你只有掌握了语法知识才能正确地写文章。

注意：当 only 强调的是主语时，句子不倒装。如：

- Only the competent persons can do the job. 只有有能力的人才能做这项工作。

#### 6. 否定词或词组 + 部分倒装结构

此句型属于否定句。否定词或词组是那些表示否定意义的小品词、副词或包含有否定词的介词短语。常见的有：never, not, little, seldom, hardly, rarely, scarcely, nowhere, in vain, at no time, by no means, in no case, in no way, on no account, under no circumstances, not only... but also 等。请看下列例句：

- Never had he had any experience like that. 他从来没有经历过这样的事。
- In vain have they tried to persuade her to change her idea. 他们试图劝她改变主意，但没起作用。
- Not a single book had he read that month. 他那个 month 一本书也没卖。
- On no account must you accept any money if he offers you. 如果他给你钱，你切不可接受。
- Not only does he write the words to the songs, but he also composes the music. 他不但写歌词，而且还作曲。
- But little do you realize that by being too caught up with work, you gradually forget the reasons why you work: your family. 但你几乎未意识到，由于埋头工作，你已忽略了工作的原因——你的家庭。

#### 7. So...that-从句与 Such...that-从句的倒装

so... that 和 such...that 结构中的 so 或 such 引导的短语放在句首时，主句部分倒装。如果谓语动词为 be，主句全部倒装。汉语意思是“如此……以至于……”。请看下列例句：



- So excited was he that he could not go to sleep. 他激动得难以成眠。
- So loudly did he speak that everyone could hear him clearly. 他讲话声音很大，每个人都听得很清楚。
- So severe was the storm that the pilot couldn't fly through it. 暴风雨那么猛烈，以致飞行员没法飞过去。
- Such a great success is the software that it is quite popular at present. 这种软件获得如此成功，目前相当盛行。
- So strong and healthy is he that he is never found ill. 他如此强壮和健康，从未见过他生病。

## 8. Were, had, should ...+ 部分倒装结构

由 if 引导的非真实条件从句(其中包含有 were, had, should), 可以把 if 省略, 把上述动词放到主语前面去构成倒装。例如:

- Had they not help us (= If they had not helped us), our experiment would have failed. 如果没有他们的帮助，我们的实验是会失败的。
- were I rich (= If I were rich), I would give you some money. 如果我富有，我会给你一些钱。
- Weren't it for their assistance (= If it weren't for their assistance), we wouldn't be able to do so well. 若不是有他们帮助，我们不会干得这样好。
- Should he come (= If he should come), tell him to ring me up. 他要是来了，让他给我打个电话。
- Should Mary call (= If Mary should call), say that I'll be back in an hour. 如果玛丽来电话，就说我一个小时候回来。
- Had I left a little earlier (= If I had left a little earlier), I would have caught the train. 我要是早点动身，就赶上火车了。

## Exercise

Use the words and phrases to form sentences after the model.

**Model:** after, the earthquake, came, the shortage of water

After the earthquake came the shortage of water.

1) under, the bridge, were, standing, a group of students

---

2) through, the door, came in, a man, black shirt

---

3) such, is, the fact, all people, have, a happy life

---

4) only, in Chengdu, you, can, have, such, a leisure life

---

5) never, he, have, such, low score

---



# Test 1

## Part I Use of English

**Directions:** In this part there are 20 incomplete dialogs. For each dialog there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D .Choose the ONE answer that best completes the dialog.

1. —I'd like to invite you to our Christmas party.  
—I'd love to, \_\_\_\_\_  
A. but no. B. but I have something important to deal with.  
C. but thank you. D. I really appreciate your invitation.
2. —How do you fancy going out for a meal at the weekend?  
— \_\_\_\_\_  
A. It sounds great. B. Oh, I will consider the idea seriously.  
C. No. D. Yes.
3. —How about singing a song for us?  
— \_\_\_\_\_  
A. Who do you think you are?  
B. No, I don't want to.  
C. I really want to, but I have a sore throat.  
D. I'm sorry.
4. —Excuse me, Where's Shirley's office?  
— \_\_\_\_\_  
A. I don't know. B. You're welcome.  
C. You can't miss it. D. Turn right and you'll find it.
5. —I don't know how I can thank you enough!  
— \_\_\_\_\_  
A. You can thank god. B. Great  
C. Who's nothing to thank me for. D. I'm sorry.
6. —Hello, is Judy here?  
— \_\_\_\_\_  
A. She's not available now. B. She doesn't want to speak to you.



- C. Who's that? D. Tell me your name.
7. —It's getting late. I'm afraid I must go now.  
—Ok. \_\_\_\_\_  
A. Take it easy. B. Go slowly.  
C. Stay longer. D. See you.
8. —\_\_\_\_\_  
—Why not stay for another cup of tea?  
A. I'm pleased to meet you. B. See you some time later.  
C. I'd better leave now. D. I'm sorry I'm not free now.
9. —What's the date today?  
—\_\_\_\_\_  
A. It's Monday. B. It's four January.  
C. It's January forth. D. It's the four of January.
10. —What time is it now?  
—\_\_\_\_\_  
A. The clock says half past ten. B. It's one point five.  
C. It's ten minutes. D. It's my birthday.
11. —Good morning. Mr. Liu. It is nice to do business with you.  
—Good morning. Mr. Wu. It's my pleasure to have cooperation with you. \_\_\_\_\_  
—Thank you. And your company is very impressive.  
A. You have a very successful business.  
B. Your business is good.  
C. You have a small company.  
D. You have a smart company.
12. —Hello, John. \_\_\_\_\_  
—Thank you, Jack. The color of your coat is unusual. Where did you get it?  
A. You've got a personality. B. You are very smart.  
C. That's a bad shirt. D. That's a very nice jacket.
13. —Demi, I'd like you to meet Philip. He's the leader of our team.  
—\_\_\_\_\_  
A. It is so good. B. Oh, I'm happy.  
C. Nice to meet you. D. Good.
14. —Hello. Tom. Would you give me a hand?  
—\_\_\_\_\_  
—Thank you very much.  
A. What you have said is true. B. Sure! With pleasure.  
C. I'm sorry I'm afraid. D. Well, I have something to do.
15. —Mary talked her opinion about the topic. \_\_\_\_\_  
—Well, all right. I agree.



- A. What is her idea?  
C. What do you think about it?
16. —How was your trip to London. Jane?  
—  
A. Oh, wonderful indeed.  
C. The guide showed me the way.
17. —How about enjoying a film this afternoon?  
—  
A. It's true.  
C. I'm against it.
18. —If I were you, I would give her some gifts.  
—  
A. Sorry, she doesn't want.  
C. Maybe you are right.
19. —I'm really grateful to you!  
—  
A. Don't mention it.  
C. Very good.
- B. Why she thinks in that way?  
D. Why she doesn't like it?
- B. I went there alone.  
D. By plane and by bus.
- B. It's not the case.  
D. That's what I think.
- B. Ok, she wants to see us.  
D. I'll see you later.
- B. You deserve it.  
D. You should also help others.
20. —Hello, Sir? Would you please tell me how to get to this address?  
—  
A. Go two blocks and turn right. You can't miss it.  
B. Don't ask that.  
C. Don't interrupt me.  
D. No, you are driving too fast.

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** There are 4 passages in this part. Each passage is followed by 4 questions. For each question there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Please choose the best answer to each question.

### Passage One

A man and his wife had a small bar near a station. The bar often stayed open until after midnight, because people came to drink there while they were waiting for trains.

At two o'clock one morning, one man was still sitting at a table in the small bar. He was asleep. The barman's wife wanted to go to bed. She looked into the bar several times, and each time the man



was still there. Then at last she went to her husband and said to him, "You've waken that man six times now, George, but he isn't drinking anything. Why haven't you sent him away? It is very late."

"Oh, no, I don't want to send him away," answered her husband with a smile: "You see, whenever I wake him up, he asks for his bill, and when I bring it to him. He pays it. Then he goes to sleep again."

21. The bar often stayed open \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. until after 12 o'clock in the evening  
B. until early next morning  
C. all day and all night  
D. until 12 o'clock in the evening.
22. People who came to the bar were \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. mostly salesmen  
B. mostly passengers  
C. only conductors  
D. only visitors
23. The barman's wife didn't go to bed \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. until two o'clock in the morning  
B. because she wasn't sleepy at all  
C. because she was busy with her children  
D. because her husband hadn't finished working
24. The barman didn't want to send the man away because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the man was too tired to leave  
B. the man paid the bill every time he brought it to him  
C. he liked his job very much  
D. he was kind-hearted

### Passage Two

Normally a student must attend a certain number of courses in order to graduate, and each course which he attends gives him a credit which he may count towards a degree. In many American universities the total work for a degree consists of thirty-six courses each lasting for one semester. A typical course consists of three classes per week for fifteen weeks; while attending a university a student will probably attend four or five courses during each semester. Normally a student would expect to take four years attending two semesters each year. It is possible to spread the period of work for the degree over a longer period. It is also possible for a student to move between one university and another during his degree course, though this is not in fact done as a regular practice.

For every course that he follows a student is given a grade, which is records, and the record is available for the student to show to prospective employers. All this imposes a constant pressure and strain of work, but in spite of this some students still find time for great activity in student affairs. Elections to positions in student organizations arouse much enthusiasm. The effective work of maintaining discipline is usually performed by students who advise the academic authorities. Any student who is thought to have broken the rules, for example, by cheating has to appear before a

student court. With the enormous numbers of students, the operation of the system does involve a certain amount of activity. A student who has held one of these positions of authority is much respected and it will be of benefit to him later in his career.

25. Normally a student would at least attend \_\_\_\_\_ classes each week.  
A. 36                      B. 12                      C. 20                      D. 15
26. According to the first paragraph an American student is allowed \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to live in a different university  
B. to take a particular course in a different university  
C. to live at home and drive to classes  
D. to get two degrees from different universities
27. American university students are usually under pressure of work because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. their academic performance will affect their future careers  
B. they are heavily involved in student affairs  
C. they have to observe university discipline  
D. they want to run for positions of authority
28. Some students are enthusiastic for positions in student organizations probably because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they hate the constant pressure and strain of their study  
B. they will then be able to stay longer in the university  
C. such positions help them get better jobs  
D. such positions are usually well paid.

### Passage Three

All the housewives who went to the new supermarket had one great ambition: to be the lucky customer who did not have to pay for her shopping. For this was what the notice just inside the entrance promised. It said: "Remember, once a week, one of our customers gets free good. This May Be Your Lucky Day!"

For several weeks Mrs. Edwards hoped, like many of her friends, to be the lucky customer. Unlike her friends, she never gave up hoping. The cupboards in kitchen were full of things which she did not need. Her husband tried to advise her against buying things but failed. She dreamed of the day when the manager of the supermarket would approach her and say, "Madam, this is Your Lucky Day. Everything in your basket is free."

One Friday morning, after she had finished her shopping and had taken it to her car, she found that she had forgotten to buy any tea. She dashed back to the supermarket, got the tea and went towards the cash-desk. As she did so, she saw the manager of the supermarket approach her. "Madam," he said, holding out his hand, "I want to congratulate you! You are our lucky customer and everything you have in your basket is free!"

29. The housewives learnt about the offer of free goods \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. on TV                      B. from the manager



C. at the supermarket

D. from the newspaper

30. Which statement is TRUE?

A. Mrs. Edwards is always very lucky.

B. Mrs. Edwards had no friends.

C. Mrs. Edwards hoped to get free shopping.

D. Mrs. Edwards gets disappointed easily.

31. Mrs. Edwards' husband tried to \_\_\_\_\_.

A. make her unhappy

B. cheer her up

C. buy things with her

D. stop her buying things

32. Mrs. Edwards went back to the supermarket quickly because she had to \_\_\_\_\_.

A. buy another thing

B. talk to the manager

C. pay for her shopping

D. find her shopping

### Passage Four

Do you find getting up in the morning so difficult that it is painful? This might be called laziness, but Dr. Kleitman has a new explanation. He has proved that everyone has a daily energy cycle.

During the hours when you labour through your work you may say that you're "hot". That's true. The time of day when you feel most energetic is when your cycle of body temperature is at its peak. For some people the peak comes during the forenoon. For others it comes in the afternoon or evening. No one has discovered why this is so, but it leads to such familiar monologues (自言自语) as: "Get up, John! You'll be late for work again!" The possible explanation to the trouble is that John is at his temperature—and—energy peak in the evening. Much family quarrelling ends when husbands and wives realize what these energy cycles mean, and which cycle each member of the family has.

You can't change your energy cycle, but you can learn to make your life fit it better. Habit can help, Dr. Kleitman believes. Maybe you're sleepy in the evening but feel you must stay up late anyway. Counteract (对抗) your cycle to some extent by habitually staying up later than you want to. If your energy is low in the morning but you have an important job to do early in the day, rise before your usual hour. This won't change your cycle, but you'll get up steam (鼓起干劲) and work better at your low point.

Get off to a slow start which saves your energy. Get up with a leisurely yawn and stretch. Sit on the edge of the bed a minute before putting your feet on the floor. Avoid the trouble some search for clean clothes by laying them out the night before. When ever possible, do routine work in the afternoon and save tasks requiring more energy or concentration for your sharper hours.

33. Which of the following may lead to family quarrels according to the passage?

A. Unawareness of energy cycles.

B. Familiar monologues.

C. A change in a family member's energy cycle.

- D. Attempts to control the energy cycle of other family member.
34. If one wants to work more efficiently at his low point in the morning, he should \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. change his energy cycle  
B. overcome his laziness  
C. get up earlier than usual  
D. go to bed earlier
35. You are advised to rise with a yawn and stretch because it will \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. help to keep your energy for the day's work  
B. help you to control your temper early in the day  
C. enable you to concentrate on your routine work  
D. keep your energy cycle under control all day
36. Which of the following statements is NOT true?  
A. Getting off to work with a minimum effort helps save one's energy.  
B. Dr. Kleitman explains why people reach their peak at different hours of day.  
C. Habit helps a person adapt to his own energy cycle.  
D. Children have energy cycles, too.

## Part III Vocabulary and structure

**Directions:** In this section, there are 15 incomplete sentences. For each sentence there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one answer that best completes each sentences.

37. More \_\_\_\_\_, less speed.  
A. hurry                      B. rush                      C. quickness                      D. haste
38. Open the window, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do you                      B. don't you                      C. will you                      D. won't you
39. Water is \_\_\_\_\_ hydrogen and oxygen.  
A. made up                      B. made up of                      C. made by                      D. making by
40. Nowhere else in the world \_\_\_\_\_ more friendly people than in this small town.  
A. you might find                      B. you will find  
C. Can you find                      D. should you find
41. I \_\_\_\_\_ swim in summer when I was young.  
A. used to                      B. used                      C. was used to                      D. did used to
- 42 —Have you been paid for the painting?  
—Yes, I remember \_\_\_\_\_ \$60 for it.  
A. to pay                      B. to have paid                      C. paying                      D. being paid
43. I've worked here since I \_\_\_\_\_ Harvard Business School.  
A. leave                      B. left                      C. have left                      D. had left
44. Susan wants to know whether the measures have been agreed \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. to                      B. with                      C. on                      D. over
45. I'm sure he understands \_\_\_\_\_ you feel. He's very clever.  
A. when                      B. what                      C. whether                      D. how
46. —how did you find your visit to the museum?  
—I thoroughly enjoyed it. It was \_\_\_\_\_ than I expected.  
A. far more interesting                      B. even much interesting  
C. so more interesting                      D. a lot much interesting
47. We are all \_\_\_\_\_ at his \_\_\_\_\_ success.  
A. surprised; surprised                      B. surprising; surprised  
C. surprised; surprising                      D. surprised; surprise
48. Many of human problems associated with living in the ocean are \_\_\_\_\_ the problems of living in outer space.  
A. such that                      B. such as                      C. the same as                      D. just as
49. I don't believe him. He \_\_\_\_\_ be serious.  
A. needn't                      B. can't                      C. may not                      D. mustn't
50. I noticed his eyes \_\_\_\_\_, because they were very large.  
A. in particular                      B. with particular  
C. in special                      D. with special
51. —I slipped on the stairs. I think my arm is broken.  
—Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. don't hope                      B. hope not so  
C. do not hope                      D. hope not

## Part IV Cloze

**Directions: There are 10 blanks in the following passages. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the ONE answer that best completes the passage.**

Enough sleep is important to health. The amount of sleep 52) \_\_\_\_\_ depends on the age of the person and the conditions in which sleep takes place. The young may need more sleep than the old, but 53) \_\_\_\_\_ eight hours are enough for the health of grown-ups. Some can do with less than this amount but 54) \_\_\_\_\_ may need more. Every person knows his own need. It is then a matter of how to satisfy it. Sleep should be always enough to make one relaxed and ready for 55) \_\_\_\_\_ work.

Fresh air is 56) \_\_\_\_\_ to sound sleep. It is not without reason for some people to insist that it is practical to sleep in the open air 57) \_\_\_\_\_ a person can keep himself warm, out of door sleeping probably gives the body a most complete relaxation.



Ability to sleep is largely a habit. The conditions referred to only lead to sleep. Out—of—door 58) \_\_\_\_\_, a good habit of regular drinking and the avoidance of late eating and 59) \_\_\_\_\_ are all helpful to sound sleep. Such factors are largely within the control of any person. A bath at 60) \_\_\_\_\_, neither hot or cold but of body temperature, may be helpful to sleep. Sleeping pills should never be taken except when suggested by 61) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                    |              |                 |               |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 52. A. wished      | B. expected  | C. needed       | D. wanted     |
| 53. A. seldom      | B. sometimes | C. always       | D. generally  |
| 54. A. children    | B. women     | C. man          | D. few        |
| 55. A. hard        | B. his own   | C. a day's      | D. good       |
| 56. A. necessary   | B. able      | C. no good      | D. best       |
| 57. A. As          | B. where     | C. Unless       | D. when       |
| 58. A. walks       | B. exercises | C. trips        | D. housework  |
| 59. A. worry       | B. fear      | C. carelessness | D. hard work  |
| 60. A. any time    | B. bed time  | C. midnight     | D. lunch time |
| 61. A. the sleeper | B. a doctor  | C. a child      | D. parents    |

## Part V Translation from English into Chinese

62. It is raining outside; hence, I will wear my raincoat.  
 63. The work has to be finished somehow.  
 64. Don't worry, we will get to our hotel somehow.

## Part VI Writing

**Directions:** For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the given topic. You should write at least 80 words and base composition on the Chinese outline below.

### *Students Taking Part-time Job Good or Bad*

#### **Outline:**

- 一些人认为大学生在学习的同时应该兼职。
- 相反, 另一些人认为做兼职工作对学生有害。
- 我认为……

## Unit 6

# Culture

### Part I Pre-reading

Culture represents a set of shared attitudes, values, goals, and practices that characterizes an institution, organization or group and has many different meanings. It can show the unique characteristics of a nation or a country. Following the globalization, we are exposed to different cultures all over the world. Ralph Waldo Emerson said “Whilst all the world is in pursuit of power, culture corrects the theory of success.” What we can use that is to learn from other cultures and perfect our culture. It is a good way to improve our society.

#### Questions

- 1) Do you know any particular culture in your city?
- 2) How much do you know about the cultures in other countries?

### Part II Intensive Reading

#### Text A

## Why American Culture is Unique

1 American culture is unique because it is formed and developed under certain conditions, which are American. The major factors contributing to the making of this new nation and the forming of a new culture are the rough environment, many ethnic groups and religions,

which are quite different from other nations in the world. What is more, these elements are still influencing the American culture.

2 The early immigrants who were English Puritans settled down in northeast part of American. The environment there was very rough, but they believed the poor land could purify their mind. So they chose the place along the coast. From 1607 to 1892, borders were pushed further towards west. Men looked for a land of rich resources and a land of promise, opportunity and freedom. Actually they looked for a better life. So individualism, self-reliance, and equality of opportunity have perhaps been the values most closely associated with the heritage of American.

3 The population of the United States includes a large variety of ethnic groups coming from many races, nationalities, and religions. People refer to the United States as a “melting pot” and the dominant people are British. In history, people from different countries in the world rushed to American three times. They brought their own culture to American and later on different cultures were mixed together. Thus the unique American culture is formed, a common cultural life with commonly shared values.

4 The basic American belief in individual freedom and the right of individuals to practice their own religion is at the center of religious experience in the United States. The great variety of ethnic backgrounds has produced many religious groups; almost all of the religions of the world are now practiced in the United States. Christianity is the dominant religion in American. Any individuals are equal before God and they believe they can communicate directly with God, so they can share the same idea. Under the Protestant, many new ones are formed and different explanations produce different group of religion. Churches are independent. The institution permits the practice of religion and the political power is separate from religion. So there are more religions in American than in any other countries.

5 From all the facts above, we can see American culture is unique which was formed and developed by the main three factors, rough environment, ethnic variety and many religions, and still is affected and determined by them now.

(407 words)

## New Words

culture	/'kʌltʃə/	<i>n.</i>	all the knowledge and values shared by a society, the tastes in art and manners that are favored by a social group 文化, 文明
unique	/ju:'ni:k/	<i>adj.</i>	the single one of its kind 唯一的, 独特的
form	/fɔ:m/	<i>v.</i>	create, develop into a distinctive entity 形成, 构成
develop	/di'veləp/	<i>v.</i>	work out 发展



condition	/kən'diʃən/	n.	a mode of being or form of existence of a person or thing 条件, 环境
contribute	/kən'tribju:t/	v.	bestow a quality on 捐助, 贡献
nation	/neɪʃən/	n.	a politically organized body of people under a single government 国家, 民族
rough	/rʌf/	adj.	full of hardship or trials 恶劣的, 粗鲁的
environment	/ɪn'vaɪərənmənt/	n.	the totality of surrounding conditions 环境
ethnic	/eθnik/	adj.	denoting or deriving from or distinctive of the ways of living built up by a group of people 人种的, 种族的
religion	/rɪ'lɪdʒən/	n.	an institution to express belief in a divine power 宗教
element	/'elimənt/	n.	an abstract part of something 要素, 元素
influence	/'ɪnfluəns/	v.	have and exert influence or effect 影响
northeast	/'nɔ: θi:st/	n.	the compass point midway between north and east; at 45 degrees 东北
purify	/'pjʊərɪfai/	vt.	become clean or pure or free of guilt and sin 净化
border	/'bɔ:də/	n.	a line that indicates a boundary 边界, 国界
push	/puʃ/	v.	move with force 推, 推动
consist	/kən'sɪst/	vi.	be composed of 由……组成
resource	/'rɪsɔ:s/	n.	a source of aid or support that may be drawn upon when need 资源
promise	/'prɒmɪs/	v.	make a promise or commitment 允诺, 答应
freedom	/'fri:dəm/	n.	the condition of being free 自由
individualism	/ɪndɪ'vɪdʒʊəlɪzəm/	n.	a belief in the importance of the individual and the virtue of self-reliance and personal independence 个人主义
self-reliance	/'selfrɪ'laɪəns/	n.	personal independence 自力更生
equality	/i:'kwɒləti/	n.	a state of being essentially equal or equivalent 平等
associate	/ə'səʊʃieɪt/	v.	make a logical or causal connection 使联合, 使发生联系
heritage	/'herɪtɪdʒ/	n.	practices that are handed down from the past by tradition 遗产
variety	/və'reɪəti/	n.	a collection containing a variety of sorts of things 多样性, 种类
population	/ˌpɒpjʊ'leɪʃən/	n.	the people who inhabit a territory or state 人口
race	/reɪs/	n.	people who are believed to belong to the same genetic stock 种族; a contest of speed 赛跑
nationality	/ˌnæʃə'nælɪti/	n.	the status of belonging to a particular nation by birth or naturalization 国籍; people having common origins or traditions and often comprising a nation 民族
dominant	/'dɒmɪnənt/	adj.	exercising influence or control 占优势的, 支配的

mix	/miks/	v.	add as an additional element or part 混淆, 混合
common	/'kɒmən/	adj.	having no special distinction or quality 共同的, 普通的
individual	/,indi'vidjuəl/	n.	a human being 个人
		adj.	being or characteristic of a single thing or person 个人的
directly	/di'rektli/	adv.	without anyone or anything intervening 直接地
explanation	/,eksplə'neiʃən/	n.	a statement that makes something comprehensible by describing the relevant structure or operation or circumstances etc. 解释, 说明
institution	/,insti'tju:ʃən/	n.	an organization founded and united for a specific purpose 机构, 协会
permit	/pə'mit/	v.	consent to, give permission 许可, 允许
separate	/'sepəreit/	adj.	independent; not united or joint 分开 (的)

## Phrases and Expressions

later on	后来, 过些时候
melting pot	熔炉
be made from	由……制造

## Proper Names

Puritan	清教徒 (要求清除英国国教中天主教残余的改革派)
British	英国人
Protestant	新教徒 (泛称宗教改革各新教派)

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) American culture is unique because it is formed and developed under certain conditions, which are American.

此句包含两个从句, 第一个是以 because 引导的原因状语从句, 在这个原因状语从句中 which 引导了定语从句修饰限定名词 conditions。

#### under

affected by sth 由……造成; 受……影响

e.g. The wall collapsed under the strain.

墙壁因承受不了重压而坍塌了。

- 参考译文: 美国文化之所以独特是因为它在特定条件下形成与发展起来的, 而这些条件是有美国特性的。



2. (Para. 1) The major factors contributing to the making of this new nation and the forming of a new culture are the rough environment, many ethnic groups and religions, which are quite different from other nations in the world.

句中现在分词做定语，代替以 which 引导的限定性定语从句，被修饰词是限定性定语从句的动作施行者。课文中还有类似的例子：

The population of the United States includes a large variety of ethnic groups coming from many races, nationalities, and religions. (Para. 3)

美国人口中有许多种族，来自众多不同的民族、国家和宗教。

*contribute (sth.) to sth.*

to increase, improve or add to sth. 增加；增进；添加

e.g. Immigrants have contributed to American culture in many ways.

移民在许多方面都对美国文化有贡献。

- 参考译文：构成这个新的国家和形成新的文化的主要因素中包含了恶劣的环境、多元化的种族和宗教，这些因素都与世界上其他国家的情况有所不同。

3. (Para. 2) The early immigrants who were English Puritans settled down in northeast part of American.

who 引导限定性定语从句，修饰前面的 immigrants。

- 参考译文：早期的移民是清教徒，他们在美洲东北部定居下来。

4. (Para. 2) Men looked for a land of rich resources and a land of promise, opportunity and freedom.

*look for*

寻找，寻求，期待

e.g. He has come all the way from Washington to look for a job.

他从华盛顿远道而来寻找工作。

- 参考译文：人们寻找的是一块富饶的土地，充满了承诺、机遇和自由的土地。

5. (Para. 2) So individualism, self-reliance, and equality of opportunity have perhaps been the values most closely associated with the heritage of American.

*be associated with sth.*

If one thing is associated with another the two things are connected because they happen together or one thing causes the other 有关联的，相关的

e.g. He is closely associated with horror movies in the public.

在公众的心目中，他总是和恐怖电影密切联系在一起。

- 参考译文：因此，个人主义，自力更生，机会均等可能是与美国文化遗产最密切相关的价值观。

6. (Para. 3) People refer to the United States as a “melting pot” and the dominant people are British.

*refer to sb./sth. (as sth.)*

to mention or to speak about sb./sth. 提到；谈及；说起

e.g. She always referred to Ben as “that nice man”.



她总是称本为“那个大好人”。

- 参考译文：人们经常称美国是个“大熔炉”，其中大多数人来自大不列颠。

7. (Para. 3) In history, people from different countries in the world rushed to American three times.

*rush to*

匆忙去，冲向

e.g. The girl set her toy by and rushed to the father when she saw him.

女孩看见父亲，就把玩具放在一边向他跑去。

- 参考译文：历史上，来自不同国家的人们曾三次涌向美国。

8. (Para. 4) The basic American belief in individual freedom and the right of individuals to practice their own religion is at the center of religious experience in the United States.

- 参考译文：个人信仰宗教的自由与权利是美国人的根本思想，是美国宗教信仰的核心。

9. (Para. 4) The great variety of ethnic backgrounds has produced many religious groups; almost all of the religions of the world are now practiced in the United States.

- 参考译文：种族背景的巨大不同造就了许多宗教团体；几乎世界上所有的宗教现在在美国都有人信仰。

10. (Para. 4) Any individuals are equal before God and they believe they can communicate directly with God, so they can share the same idea.

- 参考译文：所有的人在上帝前一律平等，他们相信自己可以直接与上帝交流，所以他们有同样的信仰。

11. (Para. 4) The institution permits the practice of religion and the political power is separate from religion.

本句是并列句，由 and 连接。

- 参考译文：政府允许信仰宗教，政权与宗教分离。

## Text Comprehension

1. Decide whether the following statements are true or false according to the text.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) American culture is unique in the world.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2) There are four factors contributing to the making of American culture.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3) The early environment in the west American was not very bad.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4) The people of the United States included only British.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5) There are many religions in U. S.

2. Answer the following questions according to the text.

- 1) Why American culture is unique?
- 2) What are the major factors in the forming of American culture?
- 3) What associates closely with the heritage of American?
- 4) How many times did people rush to American in the history?



- 5) What is the major religion in U. S.?
- 6) Are there any factors continually influencing American?

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

rough	influence	culture	explanation	form
dominant	religion	common	freedom	mix

- 1) Peace was the \_\_\_\_\_ theme of the conference.
- 2) Studying English is a way to learn a different \_\_\_\_\_ of a country.
- 3) The officer was required to give a reasonable \_\_\_\_\_ to the accident.
- 4) Water and oil cannot be \_\_\_\_\_ together.
- 5) Some insects can live in the \_\_\_\_\_ environment, such as deserts.
- 6) Children are easily \_\_\_\_\_ by their peers.
- 7) He's not an officer, but a \_\_\_\_\_ soldier.
- 8) Christianity is one of the largest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.
- 9) He decided to \_\_\_\_\_ a club.
- 10) The Declaration of Independence shows the \_\_\_\_\_ of American people to carry out their own rights.

### 2. The suffixes -able, -al, -ical, -ary can be used to form adjectives. Study the following models and complete the following table with appropriate words.

Nouns	Adjectives	Nouns	Adjectives
	reasonable	second	
history		music	
practice			professional
	valuable	prime	
fashion			typical

### 3. Fill in each of the blanks with an appropriate preposition or adverb.

- 1) He chose not to go home until \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) We all agree with him \_\_\_\_\_ what he said.
- 3) I was too tired to walk any \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) He finished his study \_\_\_\_\_ much financial pressure.
- 5) Does he have any difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ understanding spoken English?
- 6) He's \_\_\_\_\_ six feet tall.
- 7) The child was tired \_\_\_\_\_ having the same food every day.
- 8) He struggled \_\_\_\_\_ the difficulties.



## Structure

### 1. Study the model and combine the following pairs of sentences.

**Model:** The major factors are the rough environment, many ethnic groups and religions.  
These factors contribute to the making of this new nation and the forming of a new culture.  
The major factors contributing to the making of this new nation and the forming of a new culture are the rough environment, many ethnic groups and religions.

- 1) The students win their good results for their diligence. These students come from Asian countries.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2) The boy gives me a deep impression. He is studying in the No. 1 Middle School.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) The girl is my classmate's older sister. The girl is standing beside the desk.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4) The workers play an important role in the movement. These workers work in the power plants.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) The old man is a professor in Peking University. He is talking with a boy.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 2. Study the models and translate the Chinese into English.

**Model:** Learning a foreign language is not easy.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ (发展良好的关系) will do benefit to both parties.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (许诺有美好的前途) is a good condition to every young man.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (躺在床上看书) is not good to eyesight.
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (教英语) is an easy job for her.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (照料这些孩子) is part of her life.

## Comprehensive Exercise

### 1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. choose the one that best fits into the passage.

Culture shock isn't a clinical term or medical condition. It's simply a common way to describe the confusing and nervous feelings a person may have after leaving a 1) \_\_\_\_\_ culture to live in a new and different culture. When you move to a new place, you're 2) \_\_\_\_\_ to face a lot of changes. That can be 3) \_\_\_\_\_ and stimulating, but it can also be overwhelming. You may feel 4) \_\_\_\_\_, anxious, frustrated, and want to go 5) \_\_\_\_\_.



It's natural to have difficulty 6) \_\_\_\_\_ a new culture. People from other cultures (whom you'll be hanging out with and going to school with) may have grown up with 7) \_\_\_\_\_ and beliefs that differ from yours. Because of these 8) \_\_\_\_\_, the things they talk about, the ways they express themselves, and the importance of various ideas may be very different from what you are 9) \_\_\_\_\_ to. But the good news is that culture shock is 10) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                    |              |                |                |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1) A. family       | B. female    | C. familiar    | D. festival    |
| 2) A. bound        | B. used      | C. gotten      | D. liked       |
| 3) A. excited      | B. exciting  | C. painful     | D. pleased     |
| 4) A. satisfied    | B. happy     | C. sad         | D. comfortable |
| 5) A. abroad       | B. to school | C. shopping    | D. home        |
| 6) A. adjusting to | B. adjust to | C. used to     | D. using to    |
| 7) A. worth        | B. faith     | C. values      | D. systems     |
| 8) A. differences  | B. conflicts | C. competition | D. corporation |
| 9) A. ordered      | B. used      | C. meant       | D. taught      |
| 10) A. everlasting | B. twinkling | C. eternal     | D. temporary   |

**2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in brackets.**

1) 他抓住了那唯一的机会。(unique)

\_\_\_\_\_

2) 如果你下星期一把书还给我, 我就把书借给你。(on condition that)

\_\_\_\_\_

3) 每个工人都向红十字会捐献了十元。(contribute, the Red Cross)

\_\_\_\_\_

4) 这个国家的人口是多少? (population)

\_\_\_\_\_

5) 这个词有三个不同的意思。(separate)

\_\_\_\_\_

**Part III Extensive Reading (I)**

**Text B**

**Cheese Culture Grows in Vermont**

- 1 The United States produces 25 percent of the world's cheese. A trade group, the Dairy Export Council, says producers made more than four million tons of cheese from cow's milk last year.
- 2 And the industry is growing. Cheese production has increased by more than ten percent

from 2001 through the start of this year.

3 The state of Wisconsin in the Midwest leads the country in cheese production. Wisconsin faces strong competition from California. But another notable cheese-making state is Vermont.

4 Vermont is already famous for maple syrup. But local experts say that per person, it has the largest number of cheese-makers of any state. Vermont is a small state in the Northeast, on the border with Canada.

5 Cheese-makers in Vermont make more than one hundred kinds of cheese with milk from cows, sheep, goats and water buffalo. Cheeses made in the traditional way use raw milk. The producers say the milk tastes better without going through the heating process of pasteurization.

6 Almost forty cheese-makers are along the Vermont Cheese Zone around the state. Many welcome visitors. The huge Cabot Creamery in Montpelier has a visitors center and offers guided tours.

7 In the fall, when many people come to Vermont to watch the leaves change color, Cabot may give as many as four hundred tours daily. Even in winter, about fifty to one hundred groups see Cabot's cheese in the making.

8 At the Three Owls Farm, visitors can pay to watch cheese being made from sheep's milk. They can even milk a sheep.

9 The University of Vermont offers classes in cheese-making through the Vermont Institute for Artisan Cheese. Teachers include visiting experts from other countries. Some recent classes were on English and Italian cheeses.

10 A man named Consider Bardwell built Vermont's first cheese factory in 1864. Today, the Consider Bardwell Farm still produces goat cheese.

11 The arrival of railroads long ago opened new markets to cheese from Vermont. Cheese traveled better than milk without the cold store that came later. Refrigerated train cars meant that Vermont farmers could sell their products widely.

(339 words)

## New Words

cheese	/tʃi:z/	<i>n.</i>	a solid food prepared from the pressed curd of milk 干酪
percent	/pə'sent/	<i>n.</i>	a proportion in relation to a whole (which is usually the amount per hundred)百分比
trade	/treid/	<i>n.</i>	the commercial exchange (buying and selling on domestic or international markets) of goods and services 贸易
notable	/'nəutəbl/	<i>adj.</i>	worthy of notice 显著的, 著名的



competition	/ˌkɒmpɪ'tɪʃən/	<i>n.</i>	a business relation in which two parties compete to gain customers 竞争, 竞赛
maple syrup	/'mepl'sɪrəp/	<i>n.</i>	made by concentrating sap from sugar maples 槭树汁(枫糖浆)
expert	/'ekspə:t/	<i>n.</i>	a person with special knowledge or ability who performs skillfully 专家, 行家
buffalo	/'bʌfələu/	<i>n.</i>	large shaggy-haired brown bison of North American plains 水牛, 野牛
raw	/rɔ:/	<i>adj.</i>	being unprocessed or manufactured using only simple or minimal processes 未加工的, 生的
taste	/teɪst/	<i>n.</i>	the sensation that results when taste buds in the tongue and throat convey information about the chemical composition of a soluble stimulus 味道, 品味
		<i>v.</i>	taste of something 品尝, 有……味道
heating	/'hi:tiŋ/	<i>n.</i>	the process of becoming warmer; a rising temperature 加热, 暖气装置
process	/'prə:səs/	<i>n.</i>	a particular course of action intended to achieve a result 过程, 步骤
pasteurization	/ˌpæstəraɪ'zeɪʃən/	<i>n.</i>	partial sterilization of foods at a temperature that destroys harmful microorganisms without major changes in the chemistry of the food 巴氏杀菌法
zone	/zəʊn/	<i>n.</i>	a locally circumscribed place characterized by some distinctive features 地域, 地带
welcome	/'welkəm/	<i>v.</i>	accept gladly 欢迎
recent	/'ri:snt/	<i>adj.</i>	of the immediate past or just previous to the present time 近来的
Italian	[i'tæljən]	<i>adj.</i>	意大利的, 意大利语的
arrival	/ə'raɪvəl/	<i>n.</i>	the act of arriving at a certain place 到来, 到达
travel	/'trævl/	<i>v.</i>	undertake a journey or trip 旅行
store	/stɔ:/	<i>n.</i>	a supply of something available for future use 贮藏, 贮备
refrigerated	/rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪtɪd/	<i>adj.</i>	made or kept cold by refrigeration 冷藏的
mean	/mi:n/	<i>v.</i>	destine or designate for a certain purpose 意思是, 意味
sell	/sel/	<i>v.</i>	exchange or deliver for money or its equivalent 出售, 卖

## Phrases and Expressions

more than go through as many as	超过, 多于, 不仅仅, 非常 经历, 检查 和……一样多
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

long ago	很久以前
visitors center	游客中心
guided tour	有导游的旅行

## Proper Names

Vermont	佛蒙特州（美国州名）
the Dairy Export Council	奶制品销售协会
Wisconsin	威斯康辛（美国州名）
California	加利福尼亚（美国州名）
Midwest	（美国的）中西部=Middle West
Canada	加拿大
Cabot Creamery	卡伯特奶油干酪厂
Montpelier	蒙彼利埃（美国佛蒙特州首府）
Consider Bardwell	康西德·巴德韦尔

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 2) Cheese production has increased by more than ten percent from 2001 through the start of this year.

more than 形容词是比较级，表示“比……更……”。

e.g. There are more boys than girls in our class.

我们班男生比女生多。

课文中还有类似的例子：

Cheese-makers in Vermont make more than one hundred kinds of cheese with milk from cows, sheep, goats and water buffalo. (Para. 5)

佛蒙特的干酪生产商用牛奶，羊奶，山羊奶及水牛奶生产了 100 多种干酪。

- 参考译文：自从 2001 年至今年年初，干酪的产量一直以超过 10% 的速度增长。

### 2. (Para. 3) Wisconsin faces strong competition from California.

*face* v.

面对，面向，朝

e.g. He must face up to the fact that he is no longer young.

他应该勇于正视自己不再年轻这一事实。

- 参考译文：威斯康辛州面临来自加利福尼亚州的有力竞争。

### 3. (Para. 4) Vermont is already famous for maple syrup.

*be famous for sth.*

be known about by sth. 因……而出名

e.g. China is famous for its long history.



中国因历史悠久而闻名。

试比较 be famous as

e.g. China is famous as a long history country.

中国作为一个历史悠久的国家而闻名。

- 参考译文：佛蒙特州很早就以枫糖浆而闻名。

**4. (Para. 4) Vermont is a small state in the Northeast, on the border with Canada.**

on the border with Canada 是作状语，对佛蒙特州的具体位置做进一步说明，也可以看作介词短语做插入语，起解释说明的作用。

- 参考译文：佛蒙特州是东北部的一个小州，紧邻加拿大。

**5. (Para. 5) The producers say the milk tastes better without going through the heating process of pasteurization.**

本句 say 后面紧跟一个宾语从句，省略了 that。

go through

经历，检查

e.g. The child is going through a difficult phase.

那孩子正经历困难的阶段。

- 参考译文：生产商说，没有经过巴氏杀菌法加热的牛奶口感更好。

**6. (Para. 7) In the fall, when many people come to Vermont to watch the leaves change color, Cabot may give as many as four hundred tours daily.**

- 参考译文：秋天，当许多人来佛蒙特州看树叶变黄，卡伯特每天可以接待多达四百名的游客。

**7. (Para. 10) A man named Consider Bardwell built Vermont's first cheese factory in 1864.**

named 是过去分词作定语，等于一个省略的定语从句，who was named Consider Bardwell。使用过去分词表示被动与发生在过去。

- 参考译文：1864 年，一个名叫康西德·巴德韦尔的人建立了佛蒙特的第一个干酪厂。

**8. (Para. 11) Cheese traveled better than milk without the cold store that came later.**

- 参考译文：在有冷藏技术前，干酪比牛奶更方便运输。

## Exercises

**1. Answer the following questions according to the text.**

- 1) How much cheese does U.S. produce each year?
- 2) Who is in competition with Wisconsin?
- 3) For what Vermont is already famous?
- 4) How many kinds of cheese are made in Vermont?
- 5) What can the visitors do in Vermont?
- 6) What kinds of classes are offered in the University of Vermont?

**2. Fill in each blank with a suitable preposition.**

- 1) Are you sure \_\_\_\_\_ the result?
- 2) He is very active \_\_\_\_\_ politics.
- 3) The footprint filled his heart \_\_\_\_\_ fear.
- 4) The teacher was \_\_\_\_\_ in the room when I arrived.
- 5) The father knelt \_\_\_\_\_ one knee and cried bitterly for the dead boy.
- 6) Of all books, the Bible seems to be read most \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7) It seems that she doesn't walk in her usual way. Something is wrong \_\_\_\_\_ her right leg.
- 8) The river flows \_\_\_\_\_ the city from east to west.

**3. Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.**

Vermont is already famous for maple syrup. But local experts say that per person, it has the largest number of cheese-makers of any state. Vermont is a small state in the Northeast, on the border with Canada.

Cheese-makers in Vermont make more than one hundred kinds of cheese with milk from cows, sheep, goats and water buffalo. Cheeses made in the traditional way use raw milk. The producers say the milk tastes better without going through the heating process of pasteurization.

---

---

---

---

---

**Part IV Extensive Reading (II)****Text C****When You Think of American Culture**

1 When you think of American culture, what first comes to your mind? McDonald's? Coca Cola? Levi's? Disneyland? Michael Jordan? Julia Roberts? Many people imagine American culture is a collection of popular symbols like these. Actually, these symbols are only one small part of American culture—— “pop culture.”

2 What is pop culture? Well, pop is short for popular. The origins of pop culture can often be found in popular movies, television shows, music stars and sports figures. Pop culture is also promoted by business and advertising. The most common examples of American pop culture appear among high school and college students. Trends set by famous personalities quickly become part of young people's styles of life.



3 American pop culture has spread around the world. One major reason for its popularity is that English is a universal language. English is the language of international business and transportation. Since language and culture go together, learning English means becoming aware of English-speaking cultures. Also, America is a world leader in movies, music and magazines. The kind of American culture communicated in those media is pop culture. Finally, pop culture is easy to package and to export. For that reason, it is easy to "sell" to the world.

(201 words)

## New Words

imagine	/i'mædʒin/	vt.	form a mental image of something that is not present or that is not the case 想象, 设想
collection	/kə'lekʃən/	n.	several things grouped together or considered as a whole 收藏, 搜集品
popular	/'pɒpjulə/	adj.	regarded with great favor, approval, or affection, especially by the general public 流行的, 受欢迎的
symbol	/'simbəl/	n.	an arbitrary sign (written or printed) that has acquired a conventional significance 符号, 象征
advertising	/'ædvə'taiziŋ/	adj.	of advertisement 广告的
trend	/trend/	n.	a general direction in which something tends to move 潮流
spread	/spred/	v.	distribute over a surface in a layer 伸展; cause to become widely known 传播
style	/stail/	n.	a particular kind (as to appearance) 风格, 类型
popularity	/,pɒpjulə'riti/	n.	the quality of being widely admired or accepted or sought after 流行
universal	/,ju:ni'və:səl/	adj.	applicable to or common to all members of a group or set 全世界的, 通用的
transportation	/,træns'pɔ:tei ən/	n.	the act of moving something from one location to another 交通
media	/'mi:diə/	n.	the main ways that large numbers of people receive information and entertainment, that is television, radio and the newspapers 媒体
package	/'pækidʒ/	v.	put into a box 打包
export	/'eks'pɔ:t/	v.	sell or transfer abroad 出口 (物)

## Phrases and Expressions

become aware of

开始觉察到, 发现



## Proper Names

McDonald's	麦当劳, 大型的连锁快餐集团
Coca Cola	可口可乐, 由美国可口可乐公司出品的一种含有咖啡因的碳酸饮料
Levi's	李维斯, 全球著名的私人服饰公司
Disneyland	迪斯尼乐园
Michael Jordan	迈克尔·乔丹, (美国篮球运动员)
Julia Roberts	朱莉亚·罗伯茨, (美国电影演员)

## Notes

1. (Para. 1) Many people imagine American culture is a collection of popular symbols like these.

句中 imagine 后跟宾语从句, 省略了先行词 that。宾语从句在句中做宾语成分, 作为动词的直接宾语。

- 参考译文: 许多人认为美国文化就是类似流行符号的汇总。

2. (Para. 2) The origins of pop culture can often be found in popular movies, television shows, music stars and sports figures.

- 参考译文: 流行文化常常能在流行电影、电视节目、歌星和体育明星那里找到源头。

3. (Para. 2) The most common examples of American pop culture appear among high school and college students.

- 参考译文: 美国流行文化最普遍的例子显现在大学和中学学生身上。

4. (Para. 2) Trends set by famous personalities quickly become part of young people's styles of life.

句中 set 是过去分词做定语, 修饰限定主语 trends。

- 参考译文: 名人个性引领的潮流很快成为年轻人生活方式的一部分。

5. (Para. 3) One major reason for its popularity is that English is a universal language.

- 参考译文: 英语流行的主要原因是它是一门世界通用语言。

6. (Para. 3) Since language and culture go together, learning English means becoming aware of English-speaking cultures.

since 是连词, 意思是因为……

learning 是动名词, 是动词的一种形式, 有自己的宾语, 在句中充当主语的成分。

- 参考译文: 因为语言和文化是共存的, 学习英语意味着对英语文化有所意识。

7. (Para. 3) The kind of American culture communicated in those media is pop culture.

- 参考译文: 在这些媒体中传播的美国文化就是流行文化。



## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 祝贺与赞美

#### Congratulations and Compliments

对别人的言谈、举止、衣着等进行评价,经常使用祝贺与赞美。在不同的场合使用不同短语和句子能够正确表达祝贺与赞美,起到增进友谊的作用。

#### Key Sentences

- ◇ —It certainly is unique. I don't think I've seen anything like it before.  
—I know. That's why I bought it.
- ◇ —Congratulations on your new job in Beijing! I'm delighted to hear about it.  
—Thank you very much.
- ◇ —You're very professional.  
—Thank you. You did a good job too.
- ◇ —That's a very nice jacket.  
—Thank you. And the color of your coat is unusual.
- ◇ —The meat was very good, and the fish was delicious.  
—They are my wife's favorite.
- ◇ —You have a good sense of humor.  
—Thank you. You're so smart.
- ◇ —You have a very successful business.  
—Thank you. Your company is very impressive.

**Practice**

Choose the answer that best completes each dialog.

- 1) —Hello, Mr. Black.  
—Hello, Mr. Li. Congratulations on your new job in Chengdu! \_\_\_\_\_.  
—Thank you very much.  
—Well, but we hate to see you leave, Mr. Li. You've done excellent work.  
—That's very nice of you to say so; Mr. Black. It's been a pleasure working with you.  
A. You have succeeded. B. I'm delighted to hear about it  
C. I'm sorry to hear about it. D. I'm hopeful to hear about it.
- 2) —You haven't said a word about my new suit, Marie. Don't you like it?  
—I'm sorry I didn't say anything about it sooner. \_\_\_\_\_. I don't think I've seen anything like it before.  
—I know. That's why I bought it. I hate wearing the same styles everybody else is wearing.  
A. You look nice in that color. B. You have a good taste.  
C. It certainly is unique. D. I admire your work.
- 3) —Good morning, Mr. Liu. It is nice to do business with you.  
—Good morning, Mr. Wu. It's my pleasure to have cooperation with you. \_\_\_\_\_.  
—Thank you. And your company is very impressive.  
A. You have a very successful business. B. Your business is good.  
C. You have a small company. D. You have a smart company.
- 4) —Hello, John. \_\_\_\_\_.  
—Thank you, Jack. The color of your coat is unusual. Where did you get it?  
A. You've got a personality. B. You are very smart.  
C. That's is a bad shirt. D. That's a very nice jacket.
- 5) —En, Mr. Zhu. The meat was very good, and the fish was delicious.  
—Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_. I always cook them for her.  
A. They are my wife's favorite. B. My wife doesn't like them.  
C. They are done in one hour. C. You have a good taste.

**Grammar**

数词  
Numbers

一、基数词的表示法

1. 在英语中表示数目的词成为基数词。以下是最基本的基数词，所有其他数词都可以由这些词构成：



- 1) one (1), two (2), three (3), four (4), five (5), six (6), seven (7), eight (8), nine (9), ten (10)。
- 2) eleven (11), twelve (12), thirteen (13), fourteen (14), fifteen (15), sixteen (16), seventeen (17), eighteen (18), nineteen (19)。
- 3) twenty (20), thirty (30), forty (40), fifty (50), sixty (60), seventy (70), eighty (80), ninety (90)。
- 4) a hundred (100), a thousand (1000), a million (1000000), a billion (十亿)。
2. 21~99 的表示法。先说“几十”，再说“几”，中间加连字号：twenty-one (21), thirty-six (36), forty-five (45), ninety-nine (99) 等。
3. 101~999 的表示法。先说“几百”，后接 and，再加末尾两位数（或末位数）：one hundred and one (101), five hundred and thirty (530), seventy hundred and eighty-nine (789)
4. 1000 以上的基数词的表示法。先从右至左数，每三位数加一个逗号(即以此把数字分为若干段)。第一个逗号前的数为 thousand (千)，第二个逗号前的数 million (百万)，第三个逗号前的数为 billion (十亿)，第四个逗号前的数为 trillion (万亿)，然后一段一段地数：  
9, 883 nine thousand, eight hundred and eighty-three  
65, 359 sixty-five thousand, three hundred and fifty-nine  
265, 468 two hundred and sixty-five thousand, four hundred and sixty-eight  
60, 263, 150 sixty million, two hundred and sixty-three thousand, one hundred and fifty

【说明】1) 英语没有“万”这个单位，要表示“万”须借用 thousand，如“一万”用“十千”表示 (ten thousand)，“十万”用“百千”表示 (one hundred thousand)。

2) hundred, thousand, million, billion 等词在读数时不带复数词尾-s (即用单数形式)。

3) hundred 后通常加上连词 and，不过此 and 在美国英语中可以省略。若读数中没有 hundred，则在 thousand 后加 and。

4) 一个数的最高位若为“一”，这个“一”可用 a 或 one 表示，但在数字中间的“一”，则只能用 one，不能用 a：

1600 a [one] thousand and six hundred

6100 six thousand and one hundred (其中的 one 不可改为 a)

5) 在非正式场合，人们也常以 hundred 为单位来读数，对于 1100 至 1900 之间的整数尤其如此 (参见年代的读法)：

It cost fifteen hundred pounds. 这东西花了 1500 英镑。

## 二、序数词的表示法

1. 表示顺序的数词称为序数词。许多序数词是由相应的基数词后加 th 构成的，如 four / fourth, six / sixth, ten / tenth, sixteen / sixteenth, 但是 nine 变为序数词是 ninth, 而不是 nineth. twentieth, thirtieth, fortieth 等表示整十的序数词，由相应的基数词将词尾 y 改为 ie，再加 th 构成。  
1) first (第 1), second (第 2), third (第 3), fourth (第 4), fifth (第 5), sixth (第 6), seventh (第 7), eighth (第 8), ninth (第 9), tenth (第 10)。  
2) eleventh (第 11), twelfth (第 12), thirteenth (第 13), fourteenth (第 14), fifteenth (第 15), sixteenth (第 16), seventeenth (第 17), eighteenth (第 18), nineteenth (第 19)。



- 3) twentieth (第 20), thirtieth (第 30), fortieth (第 40), fiftieth (第 50), sixtieth (第 60), seventieth (第 70), eightieth (第 80), ninetieth (第 90)。
- 4) first, second, third 通常可缩写为 1st, 2nd, 3rd。凡是以 th 结尾的序数词可缩写为“基数词+th”: 4th, 5th, 9th, 11th, 60th, 128th 等。
2. 非整十的多位数, 将个位数变成序数词即可: twenty-first (第 21), thirty-sixth (第 36), ninety-ninth (第 99), three hundred and sixty-fifth (第 365) 等。
3. hundred, thousand, million 等的序数词形式为 hundredth, thousandth, millionth 等:  
five hundredth (500th) 第 500                      ten thousandth (10, 000th) 第 10000  
注意: 序数词前用数字“一”时, 这个“一”只用 one, 不用 a:  
one hundredth 第 100 (不说 a hundredth)

### 三、数词的主要用法

#### 1. 表示日期

1949 年 1949 读作 nineteen forty-nine

6 月 23 日 June 23rd 读作 June (the) twenty-third 或 the twenty-third of June

2006 年 10 月 October 2006 读作 October, two thousand and six

1600 年 5 月 2 日 May 2nd, 2005 读作 the second of May, sixteen hundred

#### 2. 表示钟点

半小时用 half, 一刻钟用 a quarter, 半小时以内用 past, 超过半小时用 to。

08: 00 eight o'clock 或 eight

09: 15 nine fifteen 或 a quarter past/after nine

02: 30 two thirty 或 half past/after two

05: 45 five forty-five 或 a quarter to six

14: 15 fourteen fifteen=2.15 p. m.

23: 05 twenty-three oh five

24: 00 twenty-four hundred hours=midnight

#### 3. 表示编号

1) 单纯的编号, 可在基数词前加 number, 简写为 No.。如 No.2 第二。

2) 序号与事物名词连用时分三种情况:

(A) 小序号可用“the+序数词+名词”或“名词+基数词”。如第一次课可以说 the First Lesson 或 Lesson One。

(B) 大序号通常只用“名词+数词”。如 808 号房间 Room 808; 168 路公共汽车 Bus No.168; 南京路 1490 号 1490 Nanjing Road; 电话号码 83545601 (用基数词逐个念, 0 念字母 O)。

(C) 用“a/the+number+基数词+名词”。如 a No.3 bus 一辆三路公共汽车, the No.3 bus 那辆三路公共汽车。

### 四、既可用序数词也可用基数词的场所

1. 日期的表示法通常用序数词, 也可用基数词, 如“5 月 5 日”在书面语中通常写成 5 May (英) 或 May 5<sup>th</sup> (美), 而在口语中则通常说成 the fifth of May, May the fifth (英), May



fifth (美) 等。

2. 在类似编号的场合, 序数词应放在被修饰词语之前, 若用基数词则置于其后:

the First Lesson / lesson one 第一课

the tenth chapter / chapter ten 第 10 章

the sixth line / line 6 第 6 行

the third part / part three 第三部分

但是, 在许多情况下, 用基数词比用序数词更合适、更方便:

Book One 第一册

Room 805 805 房

page 110 第 110 页

Bus Number Ten 第 10 路公共汽车

## 五、序数词前使用冠词应注意的两点

1. 序数词前通常用定冠词

It's the third time I've been here.

这是我第三次来这儿。

The second is better than the first.

第二个比第一个好。

【说明】1) 表示考试或比赛等的名次时, 通常省略定冠词:

She was (the) third in the exam.

她考试得了第三名。

- 2) 序数词用作副词时也通常不用冠词:

He came first.

他先来。

I'll have to finish my homework first.

我得先把作业做完。

- 3) 有些习语中的序数词前没有冠词:

at first 开始      at first sight 乍看起来      first of all 首先

- 4) 但若序数词前用了物主代词或名词所有格, 则不能再定冠词:

his second wife 他的第二个妻子

Tom's third book 汤姆的第三本书

2. 序数词前有时可用不定冠词, 表示在原有基础上的次第增加:

A second student stood up.

又一个(第二个)学生站了起来。

I want to read the book a third time.

这本书我想读第三次。

序数词前用定冠词和不定冠词的区别在于, 定冠词表特指, 不定冠词表泛指, 有类似 another 的意思, 但比 another 的意思更明确:

I like the third girl.

我喜欢第三个女孩。(至少有三个女孩供选择, 特指)

I saw a third girl.

我又看见了第三个女孩。(暗示原来已看见两个, 这已是第三个)

**Exercise**

- 1) This is \_\_\_\_\_ lesson, so I don't know all your names.  
A. our first                      B. our the first                      C. the our first                      D. the first our
- 2) —How many students are there in your school?  
—There are over \_\_\_\_\_ students in our school.  
A. two thousands                      B. two thousands of  
C. two thousand                      D. two thousand of
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ is the most difficult of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Lesson Eight... Book Three                      B. The lesson eight...the book three  
C. The eighth lesson...the three...book                      D. The...eight lesson...the third book
- 4) —May I help you, Madam?  
—I'd like to have \_\_\_\_\_ those eggs.  
A. two dozen of                      B. two dozens                      C. two dozens of                      D. two dozen
- 5) The village is far away from here indeed. It's \_\_\_\_\_ walk.  
A. a four hour                      B. a four hour's                      C. a four-hours                      D. a four hours'
- 6) Here we are. This is a \_\_\_\_\_ apartment building, which is about \_\_\_\_\_ high.  
A. six-storey; 38 metre                      B. six-storeys; 38-metre  
C. six-storeyed; 38 metres                      D. six-storey; 38-metres
- 7) Our teacher told us to write a \_\_\_\_\_ composition.  
A. three-thousand-word                      B. three-thousand-words  
C. three thousands words                      D. three-thousands-word
- 8) —Can I go home now?  
—I'm afraid you have to stay here for at least \_\_\_\_\_ 24 hours. The city is still unsafe now.  
A. more                      B. another                      C. other                      D. the other
- 9) \_\_\_\_\_ people in the world are sending information by E-mail every day.  
A. Several million                      B. Many millions  
C. Several millions                      D. Many million of
- 10) \_\_\_\_\_ trees were planted on the mountain last year.  
A. Thousands of                      B. Thousand of  
C. Five Thousand of                      D. Five Thousands
- 11) There are \_\_\_\_\_ children in the room. The \_\_\_\_\_ one from the left is my brother.  
A. fourth; four                      B. four; fourth                      C. four; four                      D. fourth; fourth
- 12) September is \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year.  
A. nine                      B. ninth                      C. the ninth                      D. the ninth
- 13) You can find him in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Room 321                      B. 321 Room                      C. the Room 321                      D. the 321 Room
- 14) We are going to learn \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
A. Lesson Tenth                      B. Lesson Ten



C. Tenth Lesson

D. The Lesson Ten

15) Wu Ming works hardest in the company, he is always \_\_\_\_\_ to come and \_\_\_\_\_ to leave.

A. last; first

B. the last; the first

C. first; last

D. the first; the last

## Writing Skills

### 英语句型精选 III (比喻与平行结构)

#### 一、比喻句型

比喻句型的功能是用 B (喻体) 的特点来说明 A (本体), 使被说明的 A 形象具体, 清楚了。

A 和 B 一般不同类, 同类则失去比喻意义。常见结构:

#### 1. A...like/as B

此句型中的谓语一般是 be, 但亦可用其他动词。例如:

- Governing a nation is like cooking a fish.  
治大国如烹小鲜。
- My heart is like a singing bird.  
我的心像一只欢唱的鸟。
- He behaved as a child (does).  
他的举止像孩子。
- The childhood shows the man, as morning shows the day.  
一个人的童年, 就好比一天的早晨。
- You establish your property right by paying for it, just as you pay for clothes and furniture.  
你花钱买财产的拥有权, 比如你花钱买衣服和家具一样。

#### 2. A + be (do) + as...as B

此句型中两个 as 中间用形容词或副词的原级形式。请看下面的例句:

- He is as brave as a lion.  
他勇猛如狮。
- He ran as quickly as a rabbit.  
他跑得像兔子一样快。
- The muscles of his brawny arms are as strong as iron bands.  
他强壮的手臂上的肌肉像铁条一样。

#### 3. A...to B + as/what + C...to D

as 和 what 用作连词, 汉译为“恰似”, “好比”; to 为介词 (还可用 in, among 等替换), 汉译为“对于, 之于”。A 和 B 代表本体, C 和 D 代表喻体。该句型的谓语多用 be, 也可以用





stand, do 等。例如:

- Reading is to our mind what (= as) food is to our body.  
读书对于我们的头脑好比食物对于我们的身体。
- Faith is among men what (= as) gravity is among planets and suns.  
人群中的信仰犹如星球及太阳间的吸引力。
- What (As) Newton was to mechanics, and Darwin to biology, Freud was to psychology. 弗洛伊德对心理学的贡献, 犹如牛顿对机械学的贡献, 达尔文对生物学的贡献。
- Parks are to the city just as (= what) lungs are to the body.  
公园对于都市恰如肺对于人的身体一样。

#### 4. (Just) As + B, so...A 与 What..., that...

该句型是句型 3 的变式。特点: 喻体在前, 本体在后。

- Just as fire tries gold, so does adversity try virtue.  
正如火试金一样, 逆境试验人的品德。
- As food is to man, so manure is to crops.  
肥料对于庄稼正如粮食对于人那样重要。
- What blood vessel is to a man's body, that railway is to transportation.  
铁路对于运输, 好比血管对于人的身体一样。
- What the tiger is in the forest, that the fish is in the water.  
林中之虎犹如水中之鱼。

#### 5. A + as if/as though...B

as if 较之 as though 普通一些。它们既可引导从句, 也可引导一个短语或动词不定式。在所引导的从句中, 谓语动词多用虚拟语气, 有时也用陈述语气。

- He behaved as if (as though) nothing had happened.  
他装出若无其事的样子。
- It sounds as if (as though) the situation will get worse.  
听起来好像情况会恶化。
- He stood as if rooted to the ground.  
他像钉在地上似地站着。
- He glanced about as if (he was) in search of something.  
他扫视四周, 似乎在寻找什么东西。
- The study of the placebo opens up new knowledge about the way the human body can heal itself. It is as if there were a doctor in each of us.  
安慰剂的研究揭示了一个有关人体自愈方式的新知识领域。人体能自愈, 就好像我们每个人体内都有个医生一样。

## 二、平行结构

长句子如果在语法结构上平行就会显得比较清晰和易于理解。在一个句子或一组句子中, 具有相同的语法结构并起相同语法作用的部分称作平行结构。平行结构可使句子得到扩展, 并使表达更为完整和清楚。这种句子结构可使读者感到句子丰富的语意, 贯通的语气, 顿挫



的音律及其强调的作用。

先分析下列句子:

例1 It is important for engineers to think logically, to analyse carefully, and to make decisions realistically.

这个句子具有两个平行结构,使句子结构清晰明了。一个是不定式, to think, to analyze, to make; 另一个是在不定式之后都使用副词修饰, logically, carefully, realistically。请与下面句子比较:

例2 We are looking for engineers with realistic decision-making capabilities, who can think logically, and who have the ability to analyze situations carefully.

这个句子会因其结构混乱而不易让人理解。

### 错误的平行结构

Popular exercises for men and women include aerobic dancing, weight lifters, and jogging.

### 修改后的平行结构

Popular exercises for men and women include aerobic dancing, weight lifting, and jogging.

从以上例句可以看出,并列结构中的成分必须结构相同:名词与名词相连,动词与动词相连,从句与从句相连,动词相连时也必须以相同的形式连接。而且,在平行句中常常使用成对的关联词(correlatives),例如, both...and, either...or, not only...but also, neither...nor, not...but 等。

请比较下面几种形式:

- Viruses carry either DNA or RNA, never both.
- Either we go full speed ahead or we stop right here.
- Clearly, neither serological tests nor virus isolation studies alone would have been adequate.
- Let us now look at parallelism not simply as a potential problem in structure, but also as an asset in effective writing style.
- Some products appeal to more customers not by advertisements but by good qualities.
- Both cable television and videocassette recorders continue to threaten the dominance of the major television networks.

表达平行意义的语法结构有许多种,可以使用词、短语或从句等来表达。

## 1) 词或短语

- James is a man of creativity and consideration.
- If you want to earn a satisfactory grade in the training program, you must be punctual, courteous, and conscientious.
- English academic writing has good content, clear organization, and effective language.

## 2) 介词或介词短语

- In matters of principle, stand like a rock; in matters of taste, swim with the current. (Thomas Jefferson)
- Managers direct people at work, at home, and at play.
- Studies serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability. Their chief use for delight, is in privateness and retiring; for ornament, is in discourse; and for ability, is in the judgment, and disposition of business. (Francis Bacon)



### 3) 不定式或不定式短语

- To walk in the rain and to swim in the lake are two of my greatest pleasures.
- They decided to begin again: to begin hoping, to begin trying to change, to begin working toward a goal.
- One ought, every day at least, to hear a little song, read a good poem, see a fine picture, and if it were possible, to speak a few reasonable words. (Goethe)

### 4) 动名词或动名词短语

- Writing is a skill like driving, typing, or cooking.
- I spent the day cleaning the house, reading poetry, and putting my life in order.
- Hiking and playing golf are my favorite hobbies.

### 5) 从句

- We are looking for engineers who can think logically, who can analyze carefully, and who can make decisions realistically.
- The advantages of a table are that it can present numerical data more concisely than text can and that it can provide more detail than a graph can.
- Although the car was highly rated and although the car was guaranteed, the engineer found many faults.
- He was promoted because he was industrious, because he was punctual, and because he was willing to put in extra effort.

### 6) 句子

- History became popular, and historians became alarmed.
- Should scientists go into research, or should they teach, or should they work in industry?

## Exercise

Use the words and phrases given below, and form sentences according to the model.

**Model A:** lake, as...as, flat, glass

The lake is as flat as glass.

**Model B:** he, studied, English, French, Germany, in, the university

He studied English, French, and Germany in the university.

1) George, old, as...as, Mike

2) Tom, have, books, many, as...as, Sophie

3) playground, you, run, walk, play, basketball, football, volleyball

4) park, people, make fun, such as, dancing, singing.

5) weekend, some people, watch TV, listen to the radio, play cards.

# Travel

## Part I Pre-reading

Nowadays, travel is quite popular among people all over the world. For example, Americans, who are always described as people on the move, love various trips or journeys to mountains, lakes, islands or other scenic spots. In fact, people all over the world enjoy traveling because it offers a break from the busy or boring activities of everyday life. People can not only enjoy themselves in places with unique and beautiful scenery, make acquaintance with different types of people there, but also develop some good qualities or characters in their travel. Like climbing the mountain you can learn how to insist on your aim from climbing. Wherever you travel, whatever you meet, all the tips or journeys can become a deep memory in your mind.

### Questions

- 1) Are you fond of traveling? Why or why not?
- 2) Can you describe one interesting or memorable trip you had in the past?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### Travel among Americans

1 It's summer time, and the living is easy. For many Americans, this is the season to travel. Why? Because school is out. Because the weather is great. And most of all, because we all deserve a break. When Americans take a break, they often head for their favorite vacation spot.

2 Throughout their history, Americans have been people on the move. The early immigrants had to travel to get to the New World. Once they arrived, they settled along the East Coast. But they weren't content to stay there. They journeyed to the unknown western territories. Later, settlers moved west to develop these new areas. As a result, Americans eventually occupied the whole land—from the Atlantic to the Pacific. Even today, Americans seem unable to stay put. Research says that the average American moves every five years.

3 Besides their habit of changing addresses, Americans are used to traveling. Some people make long-distance commutes to work daily. Their jobs may even require them to take frequent business trips. Most companies provide an annual vacation for their employees, and people often use that time to travel. Some people just visit friends or relatives in distant states. Others go on low-budget weekend trips and stay in economy motels. Those with more expensive tastes choose luxurious resorts and hotels. Camping out in the great outdoors appeals to types who like the risk. Some travel in recreational vehicles (RVs) to camp out in comfort, while others “rough it” by sleeping in tents.

4 Most Americans prefer to travel within their nation's borders. Why? For one thing, it's cheaper than traveling abroad, and there's no language problem. But besides that, the vast American territory offers many tourist attractions. Nature lovers can enjoy beaches, mountains, lakes and a wealth of natural wonders. Major cities offer visitors a lot of urban delights. The convenience of modern freeways, railways and planes makes travel in America as easy as pie.

5 Many American vacations are as unique as the people who take them. Families often plan their trips with the kids in mind. More and more “family friendly” vacation resorts offer special programs for children. History fans seek out famous historical sites and museums. Others prefer “green vacations”. These trips allow them to observe plants and animals up-close without disturbing the sensitive balance of nature. Some people find sea trips relaxing and refreshing. Others hit the water to go fishing, skiing or white-water rafting.

6 Americans aren't the only people in the world who travel. International business, mass communication and airplanes have created a world of travelers. People all over the world enjoy going abroad to travel. And no matter where they live, people enjoy visiting scenic spots in their own country. But being on the go makes Americans what they are: people on the move. In America, almost everybody is a tourist sometime.

(468 words)

## New Words

summer	/ˈsʌmə/	<i>n.</i>	the warmest season of the year 夏天, 夏季
season	/ˈsi:zn/	<i>n.</i>	a period of the year marked by special events or activities in some field 季节, 赛季, 旺季, 时期



weather	/'weðə/	<i>n.</i>	the atmospheric conditions that comprise temperature, wind and clouds, and so on 天气, 气象
deserve	/di'zə:v/	<i>vt.</i>	be worthy or deserving 应受, 值得
head	/hed/	<i>v.</i>	to go or travel towards 前进, 朝向
spot	/spɒt/	<i>n.</i>	a point located with respect to surface features of some region 地点, 场所
throughout	/θru:'aut/	<i>adv.</i> <i>prep.</i>	from first to last 自始至终, 到处 遍及, 贯穿
content	/'kɒntent /	<i>adj.</i>	satisfied or showing satisfaction with things as they are 满足的, 满意的
journey	/'dʒə:ni /	<i>n.</i> <i>v.</i>	the act of traveling from one place to another 旅程, 旅行 travel upon or across 旅行
unknown	/'ʌn'nəun/	<i>adj.</i>	not known 未知的, 不出名的
western	/'westən/	<i>adj.</i>	lying toward or situated in the west 西方的, 西部的
territory	/'teritəri/	<i>n.</i>	a region marked off for administrative or other purposes 领土, 领域
eventually	/i'ventʃuəli/	<i>adv.</i>	after an unspecified period of time or an especially long delay 最后, 终于
occupy	/'ɒkjupai/	<i>vt.</i>	keep busy with; consume all of one's attention or time 占用, 占领, 使忙碌, 专心
average	/'ævərɪdʒ/	<i>adj.</i>	lacking special distinction, rank, or status; commonly encountered 平均的, 一般的, 通常的
address	/ə'dres/	<i>n.</i>	the place where a person or organization can be found or communicated with 住址, 地址
long-distance	/'lɒŋ'dɪstəns/	<i>adj.</i>	covering a long distance 长途的
commute	/kə'mju:t/	<i>v.</i>	travel back and forth regularly, as between one's place of work and home 通勤
daily	/'deili/	<i>adj.</i>	of or belonging to or occurring every day 每日的, 日常的
require	/ri'kwaɪə/	<i>v.</i>	request and expect 要求, 需要, 命令
frequent	/'fri:kwənt/	<i>adj.</i>	coming at short intervals or habitually 频繁的, 经常的
business	/'biznis/	<i>n.</i>	commercial or industrial enterprise and the people who constitute it 商业, 事务, 生意
trip	/trip/	<i>n.</i>	a journey for some purpose (usu. including the return) 旅行
annual	/'ænjuəl/	<i>adj.</i>	occurring or payable every year 每年的, 年度的
budget	/'bʌdʒɪt /	<i>n.</i>	a sum of money allocated for a particular purpose 预算
economy	/i'kɒnəmi/	<i>n.</i>	the system of production and distribution and consumption; the efficient use of resources 经济, 节约



motel	/məu'tel/	<i>n.</i>	汽车旅馆
luxurious	/lʌg'ʒu:riəs/	<i>adj.</i>	rich and superior in quality 奢侈的, 豪华的
resort	/ri'zɔ:t/	<i>n.</i>	a frequently visited place (度假) 胜地
appeal	/ə'pi:l/	<i>v.</i>	request earnestly (something from somebody); ask for aid or protection; be attractive to 呼吁; 有吸引力
recreational	/ˌrekri'eɪʃənəl/	<i>adj.</i>	engaged in as a pastime 娱乐的, 消遣的
abroad	/ə'brɔ:d/	<i>adv.</i>	to or in a foreign country 到国外, 广为流传
tourist	/tuərist/	<i>n.</i>	someone who travels for pleasure 旅游者
attraction	/ə'træktʃən/	<i>n.</i>	the quality of arousing interest; being attractive or some thing that attracts 吸引, 吸引力, 有吸引力的人或事物
beach	/bi:tʃ/	<i>n.</i>	an area of sand sloping down to the water of a sea or lake 海滩, 海滨, 沙滩
urban	/ə:bən/	<i>adj.</i>	relating to or concerned with a city 城市的, 都市的
delight	/di'lait/	<i>n.</i>	a feeling of extreme pleasure or satisfaction 高兴, 快乐
convenience	/kən'vi:njəns/	<i>n.</i>	the state of being suitable or opportune 便利, 舒适, 适宜
modern	/mɒdən/	<i>adj.</i>	belonging to the modern era; since the Middle Ages 现代的, 时髦的
freeway	/friwei/	<i>n.</i>	a broad highway designed for high-speed traffic 高速公路
railway	/reilwei/	<i>n.</i>	a line of track providing a runway for wheels 铁路
unique	/ju:'ni:k/	<i>adj.</i>	highly unusual or rare but not the single instance 独特的, 独一无二的
friendly	/frendli/	<i>adj.</i>	characteristic of or befitting a friend 友好的, 友善的
program	/prəʊgræm/	<i>n.</i>	a series of steps to be carried out or goals to be accomplished 节目, 计划, 程序
seek	/si:k/	<i>v.</i>	try to get or reach 寻求, 追求, 试图
historical	/his'tɔ:rikəl/	<i>adj.</i>	of or relating to the study of history 与历史有关的
site	/sait/	<i>n.</i>	the piece of land on which something is located (or is to be located) 地点, 位置, 现场
museum	/mju:'ziəm/	<i>n.</i>	博物馆, 展览馆
disturb	/dis'tɔ:b/	<i>v.</i>	destroy the peace or tranquility of 扰乱, 妨碍, 使……不安, 打破……的平静
sensitive	/sensitiv/	<i>adj.</i>	being susceptible to the attitudes, feelings, or circumstances of others 灵敏的, 敏感的, 善解人意的
balance	/bæləns/	<i>n.</i>	a state of equilibrium 平衡, 天平, 平静
mass	/mæs/	<i>n.</i>	a large number or amount or extent 大量, 众多
scenic	/si:nik/	<i>adj.</i>	having beautiful natural scenery 风景好的



## Phrases & Expressions

take a break	休息一会儿
head for	朝……方向去
be content to	愿意
as a result	结果，因此
be used to	习惯于（后接动名词或现在分词）
provide…for…	供给，为……作准备
camp out	到野外露营
in comfort	舒适地
as easy as pie	极容易的（事情）
seek out	找出，挑出
scenic spot	名胜，风景区

## Proper Names

the East Coast	（美国）东海岸
Atlantic	大西洋（的）
Pacific	太平洋（的）

## Notes

1. **(Para. 1) When Americans take a break, they often head for their favorite vacation spot.**

*take a break*

have a holiday 休息，休假

e.g. He has been working so hard in recent weeks, and he may take a break.

他最近几周一直努力工作，应该休假了。

- 参考译文：美国人休假时会去他们最喜欢的度假地点。

2. **(Para. 2) Throughout their history, Americans have been people on the move. The early immigrants had to travel to get to the New World. Once they arrived, they settled along the East Coast. But they weren't content to stay there. They journeyed to the unknown western territories.**

*on the move*

迁移中的，运动着的

e.g. In the past, people were always on the move to get enough food.

过去，人们总是为了得到足够的食物而四处迁移。

“Once they arrived, they settled along the East Coast.” 句子中，once 表示 “一旦”，引导





的是条件状语从句。

e.g. Once you become a college student, you must learn how to take care of yourself well.

一旦成为大学生，你就必须要学会如何照顾好自己。

- 参考译文：纵观整个历史，美国人一直是一个迁移的民族。早期的移民者必须长途跋涉才能到达新大陆。他们一到达就沿着东海岸定居，但是却并不满足于常居于此。

**3. (Para. 2) Even today, Americans seem unable to stay put. Research says that the average American moves every five years.**

**seem**

好像，似乎

e.g. You don't seem to be quite yourself today.

你今天好像不大对头。

● 扩展

seem 也常常与引导代词连用，如 It seems / seemed …，表示“看来好像、似乎”。

e.g. It seems as if there will be a rain.

看上去似乎要下雨。

- 参考译文：即使到今天，美国人似乎仍然无法在一地久居。根据研究，美国人平均每五年就要搬一次家。

**4. (Para. 3) Besides their habit of changing addresses, Americans are used to traveling. Some people make long-distance commutes to work daily. Their jobs may even require them to take frequent business trips.**

besides 作介词，表示“除……之外还……”，也可以作副词，表示“而且、再说、此外”。

e.g. Besides English course, you should also learn other courses, such as chemistry, mathematics and history.

除了英语课程之外，你还应该学习其他课程，如化学、数学和历史。

**be used to**

过去习惯于，后面多使用动名词形式。

e.g. He is used to visiting friends and relatives during the spring festival.

他过去往往在春节期间拜访朋友和亲戚。

- 参考译文：除了搬家的习惯以外，美国人也很习惯旅行。有些人每天上下班得多做长距离的通勤，甚至经常需要因公旅行。

**5. (Para.4) Nature lovers can enjoy beaches, mountains, lakes and a wealth of natural wonders. Major cities offer visitors a lot of urban delights. The convenience of modern freeways, railways and planes makes travel in America as easy as pie.**

**as easy as pie**

轻而易举的（事情）

e.g. Finishing the job is as easy as pie for the young man.

对于这个年轻人来说，完成这项工作是件轻而易举的事情。

- 参考译文：爱好大自然的人可以到海滩、山上、湖泊和很多大自然奇景地区游览。大城市也提供给游客们很多都市形态的娱乐。现代高速公路、铁路和飞机使得在美国旅



游相当容易。

6. (Para.5) Many American vacations are as unique as the people who take them. Families often plan their trips with the kids in mind. More and more “family friendly” vacation resorts offer special programs for children.

句中“the people who take them”是由 who 引导的定语从句,“as unique as ...”意思是“同……一样独特”,表示类比。

e.g. The cave is as black as coal at night and nobody has courage to go there.

夜晚山洞漆黑一片, 没人有胆量进去。

- 参考译文: 很多美国假期非常特别, 和参与此种假期的人一样特别。全家出游时通常会孩子考虑在内, 有愈来愈多适合全家出游的度假地点为孩子提供特别的活动。

7. (Para. 6) And no matter where they live, people enjoy visiting scenic spots in their own country. But being on the go makes Americans what they are: people on the move. In America, almost everybody is a tourist sometime.

句中“no matter where they live”表示“无论他们居住在哪里”, no matter 常常与特殊疑问词, 如 when、where、how 等连用, 表示“无论什么时候, 无论在哪里, 无论怎样”等含义。

e.g. No matter when he arrived at the station, he couldn't catch the train.

无论他什么时候到达车站, 也赶不上那班火车了。

句中“*But being on the go makes Americans what they are: people on the move.*”使用动名词“being on the go”作主语

- 参考译文: 不管住在哪里, 人们都喜欢去造访自己国家内风景优美的地区。不过好动的本性使美国人变成今天的模样: 成为爱迁移的人。在美国, 几乎每个人都有旅游的经验。

## Text Comprehension

### 1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words according to the text.

For many Americans, summer is the 1) \_\_\_\_\_ to travel because they want to take a 2) \_\_\_\_\_ and enjoy traveling. In fact, throughout the history, Americans have been people on the 3) \_\_\_\_\_. The early immigrants traveled from the East Coast to the unknown western 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Even today, Americans are used to changing 5) \_\_\_\_\_ and traveling. People with different 6) \_\_\_\_\_ like to spend their weekends and vacations traveling in different places. Families often plan their 7) \_\_\_\_\_ with the kids in mind. For most Americans, they prefer to travel within their nation's 8) \_\_\_\_\_, because it's cheaper than traveling abroad. Besides, the American territory offers them many tourist 9) \_\_\_\_\_. The 10) \_\_\_\_\_ of modern freeways, railways and planes make travel in America as easy as pie.

### 2. Answer the following questions according to the text.

1) What do Americans usually do when they take a break?

- 2) Why did the early immigrants move to the unknown western territories in America?
- 3) When can employees in American companies go to travel?
- 4) How can nature lovers in America spend their vacations?
- 5) How can American families spend their vacations with the kids?

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words or expressions given below. Change the form where necessary.

deserve	head for	settle	content
occupy	appeal to	economy	frequent
urban	disturb		

- 1) Don't \_\_\_\_\_ me. I'm preparing for tomorrow's examination.
- 2) Without your efforts, we can't finish this project. So you \_\_\_\_\_ this prize.
- 3) After a break, they continued \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the mountain.
- 4) For many young people, they desire to have colorful \_\_\_\_\_ lives.
- 5) His visits became less \_\_\_\_\_ as time passed.
- 6) The idea of camping has never \_\_\_\_\_ Helen.
- 7) This area was \_\_\_\_\_ by immigrants over a century ago.
- 8) The families have \_\_\_\_\_ the farm for many years.
- 9) We're having a (n) \_\_\_\_\_ drive at school, so we should avoid waste of resources.
- 10) David is \_\_\_\_\_ to stay in his present job.

### 2. The prefixes un-, in-, im-, il- and ir- can be used before adjectives, adverbs and nouns to mean negative. Study the following models and complete the following table with appropriate words.

**Models:** able —unable  
polite —impolite  
regular —irregular

dependent —independent  
logical —illogical

lock		necessary	
religious		direct	
efficient		responsible	
legal		probable	
perfect		certain	

### 3. Fill in each of the blanks with an appropriate preposition or adverb.

- 1) You work so hard recently. You need a break \_\_\_\_\_ the busy job.
- 2) This hotel can provide rooms and food \_\_\_\_\_ more than 200 people.



- 3) Being \_\_\_\_\_ the trip, you can use the camera to record all the beautiful or interesting scenery.
- 4) Mr. Smith always kept the hotel's address and telephone numbers \_\_\_\_\_ mind when he traveled in other cities.
- 5) How can you get \_\_\_\_\_ New York in such a short time?

## Structure

### 1. Study the model and rewrite the following sentences.

**Model:** Like the people who take them, many American vacations are unique.  
Many American vacations are as unique as the people who take them.

- 1) Like his father, Tom is tall.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Like Mary, Lisa can play the piano well.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Like the blue one, the red dress is expensive.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4) Like a rabbit, he ran quickly.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Like other artists, this famous painter is special in his style.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 2. Study the model and complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English using “no matter where / who / when / what / how” .

**Model:** No matter where they live, people enjoy visiting scenic spots in their own countries.

- 1) I keep contact with her, \_\_\_\_\_ (不管她到哪里).
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (不管你怎么努力), you can't catch up with him.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (无论你什么时候去那里), you'll enjoy the beautiful views and have a good time.
- 4) You must observe the law, \_\_\_\_\_ (无论你是谁).
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (无论他做了什么), he is still your best friend.

## Comprehensive Exercises

### 1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.

There are several ways you can find out about the countries and places you wish to visit. You can talk to friends who 1) \_\_\_\_\_ to the places, or you can go and see a colour film about them,



2)\_\_\_\_\_ you can read travel books.

It would seem that there are three kinds of travel books. The first are those that give a personal, 3) \_\_\_\_\_ account of travel which the author has actually made himself. If they are informative and have a good index, 4)\_\_\_\_\_ they can be useful to you when you are planning your travel. The second kind are those books 5)\_\_\_\_\_ purpose is to give a purely objective description of things to be done and seen. If a 6)\_\_\_\_\_, cultured person has written such a book, then it is even more useful. It can be classified as a selective guide book. The third kind are those books which are called a “guide” 7)\_\_\_\_\_ some place or other. If they are good, they will, in addition to their factual information, be given an 8)\_\_\_\_\_ or an interpretation. Like the first kind, they can be inspiring and entertaining, but their primary function is to 9)\_\_\_\_\_ the reader who wishes to plan in the most practical way.

Whatever kind of travel book you choose, you must make sure that it does not describe everything as marvelous, fabulous or magical. You 10)\_\_\_\_\_ also note its date of publication, because travel is a very practical affair and many things change quickly in the 20th century. Finally you should make sure that the contents are well-presented and easy to find.

- |                 |                     |                |                    |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1) A. travel    | B. have travelled   | C. will travel | D. were travelling |
| 2) A. and       | B. or               | C. but         | D. so              |
| 3) A. abstract  | B. academic         | C. objective   | D. subjective      |
| 4) A. yet       | B. then             | C. likewise    | D. otherwise       |
| 5) A. that      | B. what             | C. which       | D. whose           |
| 6) A. well-read | B. well-intentioned | C. well-chosen | D. well-spoken     |
| 7) A. at        | B. in               | C. by          | D. to              |
| 8) A. outline   | B. account          | C. analysis    | D. understanding   |
| 9) A. resist    | B. insist           | C. assist      | D. persist         |
| 10) A. may      | B. can              | C. will        | D. must            |

**2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the words or phrases given in the brackets.**

1) 她并不满足于在一家小公司工作。(be content to)

2) 三个星期之后, 我就适应了那里的环境。(be used to)

3) 我更愿意步行上班, 而不愿意骑自行车。(prefer...to...)

4) 她的幽默感吸引住了那位年轻的男士。(appeal to)

5) 布莱克最近一直在努力工作, 这份奖励是他应得的。(deserve, reward)



## Part III Extensive Reading (I)

## Text B

### Scenery on the Top of the Mountain

1 “You can always see a beautiful sky at the top of the mountain, but you can't see it before you reach the top.”

2 Whenever the sun dropped and the blue sky came up, my father and I used to climb the mountain near my house. Walking together, my father and I used to have a lot of conversations through which I learned lessons from his experiences. He always stressed to me, “You should have objectives and capacity like the mountain.”

3 This has largely influenced my life. Without the mountain-climbing that we both enjoyed, we couldn't have had enough time to spend together because my father was very busy. I believe climbing mountains is really beneficial. It gave me time to talk with my father and to be in deep thought as well as develop my patience. I loved climbing mountains, to get away from the noise and pollution of the city, and breathe the fresh air.

4 One time we climbed a very high mountain. It was full of challenge for me because I was only ten years old. During the first few hours of climbing, I enjoyed the fresh air, the birds' singing, and the beautiful dances of butterflies; but as time passed, I got a pain in both of my legs. At that moment, I wanted to quit climbing. Actually, I hated it at that moment, but my father said to me, “Spring is a season when everything comes to life again. The mountain and fields where we are standing are embroidered with flowers and trees. You can always see a beautiful sky at the top of the mountain, but you can't see it before you reach the top. You can always enjoy the scenes of many waterfalls and countless peaks and valleys at the top of the mountain, but you can't when you are at half of the way. Only there at the top, can you enjoy all of those things, just like in life”.

5 At that time, I was too young to understand his thoughts, but after that, I got new hope and confidence. Finally, I found myself standing at the top of the mountain. And there, I could see the whole of the sky, which was as clear as crystal.

(371words)

### New Words

scenery	/ˈsi:nəri/	<i>n.</i>	the appearance of a place 风景, 背景, 布景
whenever	/wen'evə/	<i>adv.</i>	无论何时
		<i>conj.</i>	每当, 无论何时, 随时



drop	/drɒp/	v.	to fall vertically 落下, 下降
together	/tə'geðə/	adv.	in each other's company 共同, 一起
conversation	/ˌkɒnvə'seɪʃən/	n.	the use of speech for informal exchange of views or ideas or information etc 谈话, 会话
through	/θruː/	prep.	穿过, 凭借, 经过
lesson	/'lesn/	adv.	from beginning to end 完全, 穿越
experience	/ɪks'piəriəns/	n.	a unit of instruction 教训, 课
stress	/stres/	n.	the accumulation of knowledge or skill that results from direct participation in events or activities 经历, 经验
objective	/əb'dʒektɪv/	n.	(psychology) a state of mental or emotional strain or suspense 压力
capacity	/kə'pæsɪti/	vt.	to stress, single out as important 强调
largely	/'lɑːdʒli/	n.	the goal intended to be attained (and which is believed to be attainable) 目标, 目的
influence	/'ɪnfluəns/	n.	capability to perform or produce 容量, 容积, 能力
beneficial	/ˌbenɪ'fɪʃəl/	adv.	in large part; mainly or chiefly 大部分, 主要地
patience	/'peɪʃəns/	n.	a power to affect persons or events especially power based on prestige etc 影响力, 权势, 势力, 影响
noise	/nɔɪz/	adj.	promoting or enhancing well-being 有利的, 有益的
pollution	/pə'luːʃən/	n.	good-natured tolerance of delay or incompetence 耐心, 忍耐, 毅力
breathe	/briːð/	n.	sound of any kind (especially unintelligible or dissonant sound) 噪声, 喧闹声, 响声
challenge	/'tʃælɪndʒ/	n.	the state of being polluted 污染, 污染物
butterfly	/'bʌtəflaɪ/	vi.	draw air into, and expel out of, the lungs 呼吸
embroider	/ɪm'brɔɪdə/	n.	a demanding or stimulating situation 挑战
scene	/siːn/	n.	蝴蝶, 蝶状物
waterfall	/'wɔːtəfɔːl/	v.	decorate with needlework; add details to 刺绣, 镶边, 装饰
countless	/'kaʊntlɪs/	n.	the visual percept of a region 情景, 场, 景
peak	/piːk/	n.	a steep descent of the water of a river 瀑布
valley	/'væli/	adj.	too numerous to be counted 无数的, 多得数不清的
crystal	/'kristl/	n.	the top or extreme point of something (usually a mountain or hill) 山顶, 顶峰
		n.	a long depression in the surface of the land that usually contains a river 山谷, 溪谷
		n.	水晶, 结晶体



## Phrases & Expressions

on the top of	在……之上
come up	上升, 靠近, 提升
learn from	向……学习
as well as	既……又, 和……一样
in deep thought	沉思中
come to life	苏醒过来, 振作起来, 活跃起来
too ... to...	太……而不能……

## Notes

1. (*Para. 2*) Whenever the sun dropped and the blue sky came up, my father and I used to climb the mountain near my house. Walking together, my father and I used to have a lot of conversations through which I learned lessons from his experiences.

句中 whenever 引导时间状语从句, 表示“每当……时候”, “walking together”是动名词作伴随状态, 表示与主句的动作同时进行。

- 参考译文: 每当夕阳西下, 天空呈现出一片蔚蓝时, 我和父亲都会去爬离家不远的那座山。爬山时, 我们总会有许许多多的话题; 而且交谈中, 我也从父亲的经历中学到了很多东西。

2. (*Para. 3*) Without the mountain-climbing that we both enjoyed, we couldn't have had enough time to spend together because my father was very busy.

“Without the mountain-climbing that we both enjoyed”是介宾词组作状语, 其中包括 that 引导的定语从句, “we couldn't have had enough time to spend together”是虚拟语气。

e.g. Without his help, we couldn't have reached the top of the mountain.

要不是他的帮助, 我们就到达不了山顶了。

- 参考译文: 父亲很忙, 如果不是因为我们都喜欢攀登, 我们就不可能有那么多的时间在一起。

3. (*Para. 4*) During the first few hours of climbing, I enjoyed the fresh air, the birds' singing, and the beautiful dances of butterflies, but as time passed, I got a pain in both of my legs. At that moment, I wanted to quit climbing.

句中 “as time passed” 表示时间慢慢过去, as 表示时间, “当……时候”; “at that moment” 表示时间, “在那一刻”。

- 参考译文: 在攀登的最初几个小时中, 我还可以享受空气的清新, 聆听小鸟的歌唱, 欣赏蝴蝶的美丽舞姿; 但随着时间慢慢过去, 我的双腿开始酸疼。那一刻, 我想要放弃。

4. (*Para. 4*) Only there at the top, can you enjoy all of those things, just like in life.

句中 only 置于居首, 之后的主句使用倒装句表示强调。

e.g. Only after graduation, can you find a good job with stable income.

只有毕业之后, 你才能找到一份有稳定收入的好工作。

- 参考译文: 只有在巅峰, 你才能欣赏这所有的一切, 在生活中也是这样。



## Exercises

### 1. Answer the following questions according to the text.

- 1) When did my father and I use to climb the mountain near my house?
- 2) What did we usually do while walking together?
- 3) Why did I think climbing the mountain is beneficial?
- 4) What happened to me when I climbed with my father at the age of ten?
- 5) What has influenced my life from the experience of climbing?

### 2. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

used to	objective	beneficial	come to life
capacity	influence	learn from	pollution

- 1) As a college student, you should keep \_\_\_\_\_ in mind.
- 2) When he was a child, he \_\_\_\_\_ go with his parents to visit other relatives.
- 3) Regular exercises can be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) The local government makes efforts to solve the \_\_\_\_\_ of water.
- 5) At school, teacher's words can \_\_\_\_\_ students a lot.
- 6) Richard has \_\_\_\_\_ a lot \_\_\_\_\_ his experiences as a shop assistant.
- 7) She has a great \_\_\_\_\_ for hard work.
- 8) After a pleasant vacation, she \_\_\_\_\_ and was willing to accept difficult jobs.

### 3. Translate the following passage into Chinese

I believe climbing mountains is really beneficial. It gave me time to talk with my father and to be in deep thought as well as develop my patience. I loved climbing mountains, to get away from the noise and pollution of the city, and breathe the fresh air.

---

---

---

## Part IV Extensive Reading (II)

### Text C

### A Visit to a Village

1 I was on my way to the Taiyetos Mountains. The sun was setting when my car broke down near a remote and poor village. Complaining about my bad luck, I was wondering



where I was going to spend the night when I realized that the villagers who had gathered around me were arguing as to who should have the honor of receiving me as a guest in their house. Finally, I accepted the offer of an old woman who lived alone in a little house at the edge of the village. While she was getting me settled into a tiny but clean and freshly white-washed room, the mayor of the village was hitching up his mule to my car to pull it to a small town some 20 kilometers away where there was a garage.

2 I had noticed three hens running free in the old woman's yard and that night one of them ended up in a plate on my table. Other villagers brought me cheese, honey, and, of course, some drink. I ate with a big appetite and, despite my ignorance of the language, we drank together and made joy till far into the night. The following day the garage man brought back my car which he had patched up.

3 When the time came for me to say goodbye to my friends in the village, I wanted to reward the old woman for the trouble to which I had put her and for the hen she had killed for me. She refused the money I offered. The more I insisted, the more annoyed she appeared.

(263 words)

## New words

village	/'vɪlɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i>	a community of people smaller than a town 村庄
remote	/ri'məʊt/	<i>adj.</i>	located far away spatially 遥远的, 偏僻的
realize	/'ri:əlaɪz/	<i>vt.</i>	be fully aware or cognizant of 实现, 了解, 意识到
gather	/'gæðə/	<i>v.</i>	assemble or get together 聚集, 集合
argue	/'ɑ:gju/	<i>v.</i>	have an argument about something 争论, 辩论
mayor	/'meə/	<i>n.</i>	the head of a city government, town and village 市长, 镇长, 村长
hitch	/hɪtʃ/	<i>vt.</i>	to hook or entangle 拴住, 连住, 急拉, 拉紧
mule	/mju:l/	<i>n.</i>	骡子
town	/taʊn/	<i>n.</i>	an urban area with a fixed boundary that is smaller than a city 城市, 城镇
kilometer	/'kɪlə'mi:tə/	<i>n.</i>	a metric unit of length equal to 1000 meters (or 0.621371 miles) = kilometre 公里, 千米 (略作 km)
garage	/'gærɑ: ʒ/	<i>n.</i>	a repair shop where cars and trucks are serviced and repaired 汽车修理厂, 车库
yard	/jɑ:d/	<i>n.</i>	the enclosed land around a house or other building 院子, 庭院
honey	/'hʌni/	<i>n.</i>	a sweet yellow liquid produced by bees 蜂蜜
appetite	/'æpɪtaɪt/	<i>n.</i>	a feeling of craving something 食欲, 嗜好
despite	/di'spaɪt/	<i>prep.</i>	尽管, 不管

ignorance	/ˈɪgnərəns/	<i>n.</i>	the lack of knowledge or education 无知, 愚昧
patch	/pætʃ/	<i>vt.</i>	mend by putting a patch on 修补, 补缀
reward	/riˈwɔːd/	<i>n.</i>	payment made in return for a service rendered 报答, 赏金, 报酬
		<i>v.</i>	repay, pay back 奖赏, 给……报酬
annoy	/əˈnɔɪ/	<i>v.</i>	cause annoyance in; disturb, especially by minor irritations 使恼怒, 使烦恼

Phrases & Expressions

be on the way to	在去……的途中
hitch up	准备开钻, 把牲畜套在车上
end up	结束, 告终
patch up	修补, 平息, 拼凑

Proper Names

Taiyetos Mountains	泰耶托斯山脉
--------------------	--------

Notes

1. (*Para. 1*) **Complaining about my bad luck, I was wondering where I was going to spend the night when I realized that the villagers who had gathered around me were arguing as to who should have the honor of receiving me as a guest in their house.**
- 句中“Cursing my misfortunate”是动名词作状语, 表示伴随进行的动作; “where I was going to spend the night”是宾语从句, 是 wonder 的宾语, “when I realized that the villagers who had gathered around me were arguing as to who should have the honor of receiving me as a guest in their house” 首先是 when 引导的时间状语从句, 其中还包括 that 引导的宾语从句, “who had gathered around me ”是定语从句, 修饰前面的 villagers, “as to who should have the honor of receiving me as a guest in their house” 中 who 引导的是一个宾语从句, 是 as to 的宾语。
- **参考译文:** 我一边埋怨自己的不幸, 一边思考着究竟将去哪里度过一个夜晚, 这时我发现身边已经围过来了不少村民, 他们正在争论谁将会有这份荣幸在家里款待我。
2. (*Para. 1*) **While she was getting me settled into a tiny but clean and freshly white-washed room, the mayor of the village was hitching up his mule to my car to pull it to a small town some 20 kilometers away where there was a garage.**
- while 连接词, 这里表示时间, “正当……时候”, while 也可以表示转折让步, 意思是“然而, 虽然, 尽管”。



e.g. While he is only 10 years old, he plays chess much better than many adults.

尽管他只有 10 岁, 下国际象棋却胜过许多成年人。

- 参考译文: 当她将我安置在一间整洁干净小房间的时候, 村长把我的车子套在骡子上拖到了距离村庄 20 公里的一个小镇上, 那里有一家汽车修理厂。

**3. (Para. 2) I ate with a hearty appetite and, despite my ignorance of the language, we drank together and made joy till far into the night.**

**despite**

尽管, 不管, 任凭

e.g. Despite our mistake, we can still make efforts to reach the goal.

尽管我们会犯错误, 但是我们仍然会努力实现目标。

- 参考译文: 我的胃口相当好, 尽管语言交流不畅通, 但是我们一起喝酒, 一直愉快地玩到深夜。

**4. (Para. 3) When the time came for me to say goodbye to my friends in the village, I wanted to reward the old woman for the trouble to which I had put her and for the hen she had killed for me. She refused the money I offered. The more I insisted, the more annoyed she appeared.**

句中 “to which I had put her” 是定语从句。

“the more... the more...” 表示 “越来越……”

e.g. The more patient you are, the more achievement you will get.

你越有耐心, 就会获得更多的成绩。

- 参考译文: 到了我跟村里的朋友们道别的时候, 我想要报答那位老妇人, 因为我给她添了不少麻烦, 还害她为我牺牲了那只母鸡。她拒绝了我的钱。我越坚持给她, 她就越显得不高兴。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 问路

#### Asking the direction

- ◇ —Excuse me. I'm trying to find a bus station.  
—Well. Go straight ahead and take the first turning on the right.
- ◇ —Excuse me, sir/madam. Where is the National Theatre?  
—Go down this street. Turn left at the crossroads / the traffic lights. It's just opposite the bank.



- ◇ —Excuse me. Could you / Can you tell me how to get to the Sports Center?  
—It's on the left-hand side of the street.
- ◇ —Hello, sir/madam. Would you please tell me the way to this address?  
—Just over there at the second corner.
- ◇ —Excuse me. Is this right for the airport?  
—Sure. It's two blocks away from here, along that street. You can't miss it.
- ◇ —Excuse me. How far is this address from here, please?  
—Sorry, I'm new around here, too.

### Practice

**Choose the answer that best completes each dialog.**

- 1) —Excuse me, where's Mr. Smith's office?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. I don't know.

B. You're welcome.

C. You can't miss it.

D. Turn right and you'll find it .

- 2) —Excuse me, but can you tell me the way to the department store?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Please don't miss so.

B. Pardon? I have no idea.

C. Sure. Go straight ahead and take the second turning on your left.

D. You can't ask me.

- 3) — \_\_\_\_\_

— It's two blocks away from here, along that road.

A. Hello. Tell me where the cinema is .

B. Good morning. The cinema, please.

C. Pardon? Can I get to the cinema?

D. Excuse me, could you tell me where the cinema is, please?

- 4) —Hello, sir? Would you please tell me how to get to this address?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Go two blocks and turn right. You can't miss it.

B. Don't ask that.

C. Don't interrupt me.

D. No, you're driving too fast.

- 5) —Excuse me, but where is the nearest hospital?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Sorry, I can't tell you.

B. Sorry, I'm new around here, too.

C. I've got two tickets for the concert.

D. It's around 1 o'clock.

动词时态

Verbal Tenses

在英语中，不同时间发生的动作或存在的状态，要用不同形式的动词来表示，这就是动词时态。英语动词的时态共有十六种。常见时态的用法如下：

一、一般现在时（The Simple Present Tense）

1. 构成

一般现在时通常以动词原形表示。主语为第三人称单数时，一般在动词原形后加-s 或-es。第三人称单数一般现在时的变化规则如下表：

情 况	变化规则	例 词
一般情况	加-s	works, comes, plays, learns
结尾为 ss, x, sh, ch, 或 o	加-es	passes, fixes, washes, teaches, goes
结尾为辅音字母加-y	变 y 为 i 加-es	cry — cries, fly — flies, study — studies
特殊变化		have — has

2. 用法

- 表示现在或经常发生的动作状态，常常跟 every, often, usually, always, sometimes, once a week, on Sundays, seldom, never 等时间状语连用。例如：  
It **is** very hot today. 今天很热。  
I usually **get up** at six every morning. 她每天早上 6 点起床。
- 表示客观事实或普遍真理。例如：  
The sun **rises** in the east. 太阳从东方升起。  
Water **boils** at 100℃. 水在 100 度时沸腾。
- 在时间状语和条件状语从句中用一般现在时表示将来。例如：  
I'll let you know as soon as I **hear** from him. 我一收到他的信就告诉你。  
I'll go if it **is** fine tomorrow. 如果明天天气好，我就去。

二、一般过去时（The Simple Past Tense）

1. 构成

一般过去时通常由动词的过去式表示。不规则动词的过去式有其特殊形式。

2. 用法

表示过去某一时刻或某一段时间内发生的动作或状态，通常与表示过去的时间状语连用。例如：



The train **arrived** ten minutes ago. 火车十分钟前就到了。

What time **did** you **get up** yesterday morning? 昨天早晨你几点起床的?

### 三、现在进行时(The Present Progressive Tense)

1. 构成: am/is/are + V-ing

2. 用法

1) 表示现在(说话时)正在进行的动作或持续的状态。例如:

He **is studying** Chinese in Beijing. 他目前正在北京学习汉语。

It **is raining** now. 现在正在下雨。

2) 表示按计划安排近期内即将发生的动作。常见的是 come, go, leave, start, arrive 等动词与表示将来时间的状语连用。例如:

I **am going** to Beijing tomorrow. 我打算明天去北京。

He **is coming** here next week. 他下星期要到这里来。

3) 表示刚过去的动作。例如:

You **don't** believe it? I **'m telling** the truth. 你不相信吗? 我刚才说的都是实话。

### 四、过去进行时(The Past Progressive Tense)

1. 构成: was/were + 现在分词(V-ing)

2. 用法

1) 表示在过去某一时刻正在进行的动作。例如:

I **was watching** TV at eight o'clock last night. 昨晚八点我正在看电视。

2) 在过去某一动作发生时另一个动作正在进行。例如:

The teacher **was giving** us a lesson when Tom walked into the classroom. 汤姆走进教室时, 老师正在给我们上课。

### 五、一般将来时(The simple future)

一般将来时表示将来发生的动作或状况。主要有以下几种表现形式:

1. shall/will + 动词原形

I 和 we 用 shall (或 will); you, he, she, they, it 用 will。表示单纯的将来, 不涉及主语的主观意愿。例如:

I **shall (will) be** 20 years old next year. 我明年 20 岁了。

The train **will arrive** soon. 火车快要到了。

2. be going to + 动词原形

表示说话人打算在最近或将来做某事, 也可以表示根据已有的迹象认为可能即将发生某事。例如:

My brother **is going to learn** English next year. 我哥哥准备明年学英语。

Look at these black clouds—it **is going to** rain. 看这些乌云——要下雨了。

3. be to + 动词原形

表示职责、义务、意图、约定、可能性等。例如:



You **are to be** back by 10 o'clock. 你必须在 10 点钟之前回来。

We **are to meet** at the school gate. 我们约定在校门口见面。

#### 4. be about to + 动词原形

表示即将做某事。例如:

We are about to leave. 我们快要走了。

The autumn harvest is about to start. 快要秋收了。

### 六、过去将来时 (The Future In The Past)

表示过去将要发生的动作或状况, 一般由助动词 **should/would** + 动词原形构成。

I thought he would not attend that evening party. 我认为他不会参加那个晚会。

When we were children, we would go swimming every summer. 我们小的时候, 每年夏天都去游泳。

### 七、现在完成时 (The Present Perfect)

#### 1. 构成: have/has + 动词过去分词

#### 2. 用法

##### 1) 表示动作到现在为止已经完成。例如:

He **has** just **come back**. 他刚回来。

I **have opened** the window. 我已经把窗户打开了。

##### 2) 现在完成时也可以表示一个动作或状态开始于过去, 但持续到现在, 也许还会继续下去。

例如:

I **have lived** here for ten years. 我在这里已经 10 年了。

She **has been** ill since Monday. 她从星期一来就在生病。

##### 3) 表示过去反复发生的动作。例如:

I have gone to the post office twice today. 我今天都去过邮局两次了。

### 八、过去完成时 (The Past Perfect)

#### 1. 构成: had + 动词过去分词

#### 2. 用法

##### 1) 表示过去某一时刻或过去某一动作之前完成的动作或状态。例如:

By the end of last year we **had built** many new houses. 到去年年底, 我们已建了很多新房。

##### 2) 在强调过去某一动作发生在另一动作之前时, 往往用过去完成时态。例如:

The train **had gone** before we reached the station. 我们还没到车站, 火车就已经开走了。

## Exercise

Choose the best answer for each of the following sentences.

1) By the time he was 12, Edison \_\_\_\_\_ to make a living by himself.

A. would begin

B. has begun

C. had begun

D. was begun





- 2) Don't get off the bus until it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. has stopped      B. stopped      C. will stop      D. shall stop
- 3) Helen \_\_\_\_\_ her keys in the offices so she had to wait until her husband \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. had left; would come      B. left; had come  
C. had left; came      D. has left; comes
- 4) "Would you like to play chess with me?" "Sorry, I have to finish my homework before my mother \_\_\_\_\_ back."  
A. comes      B. will come      C. shall come      D. has come
- 5) He will have learned English for eight years by the time he \_\_\_\_\_ from the university next year.  
A. will graduate      B. will have graduated  
C. graduates      D. is to graduate
- 6) Look at the clouds — \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it'll be snowed      B. it is to snow  
C. it is going to snow      D. it's snow
- 7) I \_\_\_\_\_ to see my friend in hospital the other day.  
A. had gone      B. went      C. will go      D. am
- 8) "Alice, why didn't you come yesterday?" "I \_\_\_\_\_, but I had an unexpected visitor."  
A. had      B. would      C. was going to      D. did
- 9) The chairman's speech \_\_\_\_\_ the radio when I turned it on.  
A. was broadcast on      B. was being broadcast on  
C. was broadcasting in      D. broadcast over
- 10) "How is the team playing?" "They're playing well, but one of them \_\_\_\_\_ hurt."  
A. got      B. gets      C. are      D. were
- 11) This is John's photo. We miss him a lot. He \_\_\_\_\_ when trying to save a child in an earthquake.  
A. killed      B. is killed      C. was killed      D. was killing
- 12) There \_\_\_\_\_ little change in the patient's condition since he was taken to the hospital.  
A. is      B. has been      C. have been      D. was
- 13) I haven't seen her \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. during three weeks      B. since three weeks  
C. three weeks ago      D. for three weeks
- 14) Mrs. Jones \_\_\_\_\_ about her hard housework.  
A. has been always complaining      B. is always complaining  
C. always complain      D. has always complain
- 15) "When is the lecture supposed to start?" "It \_\_\_\_\_ now."  
A. has about to start      B. is about starting  
C. is about to start      D. is about start



## Writing Skills

### 段落的展开方式(一)

段落的展开就是主题句与扩展句的写作与布局。一般来说,一个特定段落如何展开是由该段在文章中的作用决定的。由于写作目的和内容不同,段落的展开方式也有不同。常见的段落展开方法如下。

#### 1. 举例法(Exemplification)

举例法用具体的事例来表达段落的主题,是一种常见的段落展开方法。作者往往在主题句中开门见山,然后列举出具体的事例(可以用相关的几个例子,也可以是一个主要的例子)来进行说明。所列举的事例一般是能使读者感受到的具体事情,或者是读者较为熟悉的日常事件或现象,并有助于说明主题句中的中心思想。结尾部分往往还要重新陈述主题句的观点。

Many American vacations are as unique as the people who take them. Families often plan their trips with the kids in mind. More and more “family friendly” vacation resorts offer special programs for children. History fans seek out famous historical sites and museums. Others prefer “green vacations”. These trips allow them to observe plants and animals up-close without disturbing the sensitive balance of nature. Some people find sea trips relaxing and refreshing. Others hit the water to go fishing, skiing or white-water rafting.

#### 2. 描述法(Description)

段落也可以按照时间顺序、空间顺序进行描述和展开,通过描述法作者能清楚而连贯地交代事物的本末,使读者可以清晰、完整地理解段落的主旨。

##### 1) 时间顺序

主要是以事情发生的时间顺序或先后次序来描述人物或事件的发展过程。这种过程可以是“顺序”,也可以是“倒叙”,还可以是“插叙”,而且通常用过去时。例如:

*After the shower, Sandy brushed her hair, put on her old, green T-shirt and some jeans and wrapped her sweater around her shoulders. Then she put on her makeup grabbed her books and went to kitchen.*

在上面段落中,对 Sandy 的一系列动作按照发生的先后次序进行描述。在描述这些动作时,使用了表示时间关系的过渡性连接词 *after, then* 和 *and*,体现了各个动作之间的顺序关系。

在按照时间顺序展开的段落中,使用一些表示时间关系的过渡性连接词,如 *after, afterward, after that, before, then, and then, finally, later(on), next, soon, as soon as, the next day, tomorrow, yesterday, a year ago, as, during, immediately, meanwhile, when, while* 等,可以使段落产生清楚的层次,形成一个整体。

##### 2) 空间顺序

以空间顺序展开的段落主要用于描述一个场所或空间,以及描述人或物在空间中的位置及其相互关系。描述的事物都按照其地点及相互空间关系加以排列,先选择一个方位,然后



以此为出发点依次叙述或描写，可参照以下五种方向进行：①从上到下或从下到上；②从左到右或从右到左；③由远及近或由近及远；④由里到外或由外到里；⑤按顺时针或逆时针方向。无论选取哪种方向，都必须按照该方法叙述下去，不能改变，以免造成叙述上的混乱，让读者迷惑不解。例如：

The place that I love the most is in the small country where I was born and spent my childhood. It was a small village *in the middle of* a rather large area surrounded with green bamboo hedges. *In front of* the village was my house with a yard where wet clothes were dried and which was also storage for the rice crop in harvest-time. *Not far from* there was a beautiful garden full of pretty flowers and fruit trees. It was my favorite place. In the afternoon, I used to run merrily along its flower-bordered walks, chasing gorgeous butterflies or catching shining beetles. In doing so, I sometimes trod on a flowering plant, and I was scolded by my mother for being so careless. *At the corner of* the garden, there was a small arbor with a seat where I spent much time reading some fairytales or doing my homework. Every morning, I also watched the farmers go by with their horses on their way to the fields. Now and then, their merry laughter broke the momentary silence of the countryside. From some cottages *nearby*, a slender thread of smoke curled upward, announcing the first activities of the hamlet. Certainly, my home was only a humble village, but I still love it very much. It was the place where I had the happiest memories of my life.

这段文字描写了作者的家乡，通过使用 *in the middle of*, *in front of*, *not far from*, *at the corner*, *nearby* 等连接词，将记忆中的故乡，由远及近、由粗及细慢慢地描绘出来，最后得出结论——故乡是自己一生中最快乐的地方。

在按照空间顺序进行描写的时候，常常用到一些表示空间关系的过渡性词语。如 *above*, *below*, *nearby*, *beyond*, *close by*, *inside*, *outside*, *next to*, *under* 等。

### Exercise

Write at least 80 words about the following topic by using examples and description.

Topic: Good Eating habits

# Sports

## Part I Pre-reading

When sports are mentioned, a lot of other words, such as exercises, athletes, competition, sports meeting, will come into our minds. For average people, sports are exercises that keep them healthier and stronger, activities that help them cooperate with others, and ties that connect their friendship. For most athletes, the true meaning of sports doesn't lie on medals and victories, but on the strength and courage they obtain and display. Since ancient time, sports have developed very rapidly. Now Olympic Games become a great festival for all the people in the world, not just for athletes from different countries. Besides, many young people are crazy about these risky activities called "extreme sports" or "X-sports" because they really enjoy the excitement from these new sports.

### Questions

- 1) What's your favorite sport? Are you good at it?
- 2) What's the biggest harvest you get from regular exercises?
- 3) Have you ever tried any extreme sports?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### Tracking Down My Dream

1 It was the district track meet—the one we had been training for all season. My foot still hadn't cured from an earlier injury. As a matter of fact, I had debated whether or not I should



attend the meet. But there I was, preparing for the 3,200-meter run.

2 “Ready ... set ...” The gun popped and we were off. The other girls ran ahead of me. I realized I was limping and felt humiliated as I fell farther and farther behind.

3 The first-place runner was two laps ahead of me when she crossed the finish line. “Wow!” shouted the crowd. It was the loudest cheer I had ever heard at a meet.

4 “Maybe I should quit,” I thought as I limped on. “Those people don’t want to wait for me to finish this race.” Somehow, though, I decided to keep going. During the last two laps, I ran in pain and decided not to compete in track next year. It wouldn’t be worth it, even if my foot did cure. I could never beat the girl who had lapped me twice.

5 When I finished, I heard a cheer—— just as enthusiastic as the one I’d heard when the first girl passed the finish line. “What was that all about?” I asked myself. I turned around and, sure enough, the boys were preparing for their race. “That must be it; they’re cheering for the boys.”

6 I went straight to the bathroom where a girl bumped into me. “Wow, you’ve got courage!” she told me.

7 I thought, “Courage? She must be mistaking me for some one else. I just lost a race!”

8 “I would never have been able to finish those two miles if I were you. I would have quit on the first lap. What happened to your foot? We were cheering for you. Did you hear us?”

9 I couldn’t believe it. A complete stranger had been cheering for me——not because she wanted me to win, but because she wanted me to keep going and not give up. Suddenly I gained hope again. I decided to stick with track next year. One girl saved my dream.

10 That day I learned two things:

11 First, a little kindness and confidence in people can make a great difference to them.

12 And, second, strength and courage aren’t always measured in medals and victories. They are measured in the struggles we overcome. The strongest people are not always the people who win, but the people who don’t give up when they lose.

13 I dream only that one day —— perhaps as a senior —— I will be able to win a race with a cheer as big as the one I got when I lost that race as a freshman.

(451words)

## New Words

track	/træk/	<i>v.</i>	go after with the intent to catch 追踪, 跟踪
		<i>n.</i>	a line or route along which something travels or moves 轨道, 跑道, 踪迹, 小路
district	/'distrikt/	<i>n.</i>	a region marked off for administrative or other purposes 地区, 行政区
training	/'treiniŋ/	<i>n.</i>	activity leading to skilled behavior 训练, 培养



cure	/kjuə/	v.	provide a cure for, make healthy again 治愈, 治疗, 纠正
		n.	a medicine or therapy that cures disease or relieve pain 治疗, 治愈, 疗法, 对策
injury	/'indʒəri/	n.	any physical damage to the body caused by violence or accident or fracture etc. 伤害, 损害
debate	/di'beit/	n.	a discussion in which reasons are advanced for and against some proposition or proposal 辩论, 讨论
whether	/'weðə/	conj.	是否, 不管, 无论
attend	/ə'tend/	v.	be present at (meetings, church services, university), etc 出席, 参加
pop	/pɒp/	n.	a sharp explosive sound as from a gunshot or drawing a cork 爆裂声
		v.	make a sharp explosive noise 发出(砰砰声)
limp	/limp/	vi.	walk impeded by some physical limitation or injury 跛行, 蹒跚
		n.	the uneven manner of walking that results from an injured leg 跛行
humiliate	/hju:'milieit/	vt.	cause to feel shame; hurt the pride of 使……蒙羞, 使丢脸
lap	/ləp/	n.	movement once around a course 重叠部分, (跑道的) 一圈
cheer	/tʃiə/	v.	give encouragement to; show approval or good wishes by shouting 鼓舞, 加油, 快活起来
		n.	a cry or shout of approval 欢呼, 激励
quit	/kwit/	v.	put an end to a state or an activity 停止, 离开, 退出
somehow	/'sʌmhau/	adv.	in some unspecified way or manner; or by some unspecified means 以某种方式, 不知怎么地
though	/ðəu/	adv.	however 然而, 可是, 不过
pain	/pein/	n.	a symptom of some physical hurt or disorder 痛苦, 疼痛, 辛苦
		v.	cause bodily suffering to and make sick or indisposed 使……痛苦, 痛苦
worth	/wə: θ/	n.	an indefinite quantity of something having a specified value 价值, 财富
		adj.	worthy of being treated in a particular way (often used ironically) 值得的, 值钱的
enthusiastic	/in, θju:zi'æstik/	adj.	having or showing great excitement and interest 热心的, 热情的, 热烈的
straight	/streit/	adj.	successive (without a break) 直的, 坦率的, 正直的
		adv.	in a forthright manner; candidly or frankly 直接, 坦率地

bathroom	/'bæθrʊm/	<i>n.</i>	a room (as in a residence) containing a bathtub or shower and usually a washbasin and toilet 浴室, <美>洗手间
bump	/bʌmp/	<i>v.</i>	knock against with force or violence 碰撞
courage	/'kʌrɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i>	a quality of spirit that enables you to face danger or pain without showing fear 勇气, 胆量
suddenly	/'sʌdnli/	<i>adv.</i>	happening unexpectedly 突然地
stick	/stɪk/	<i>vt.</i>	put, fix, force, or implant 刺入, 插于, 竖起
		<i>vi.</i>	be or become fixed 钉住, 坚持, 粘贴
kindness	/'kaɪndnis/	<i>n.</i>	the quality of being warmhearted and considerate and humane and sympathetic 仁慈, 好意, 友好的行为
difference	/'dɪfərəns/	<i>n.</i>	the quality of being unlike or dissimilar 差异, 不同, 分歧
strength	/'streŋθ/	<i>n.</i>	the property of being physically or mentally strong 力气, 强度, 力量
measure	/'meʒə/	<i>n.</i>	any maneuver made as part of progress toward a goal 措施, 量度, 尺寸
		<i>v.</i>	determine the measurements of something or somebody, take measurements of 测量, 比较
medal	/'medl/	<i>n.</i>	an award for winning a championship or commemorating some other event 奖章, 勋章, 纪念章
struggle	/'strʌgl/	<i>v.</i>	make a strenuous or labored effort; to exert strenuous effort against opposition; carry on a fight 努力, 奋斗, 斗争, 挣扎
		<i>n.</i>	fight; great effort 斗争, 竞争, 奋斗
overcome	/,əʊvə'kʌm/	<i>vt.</i>	win a victory over; get on top of; deal with successfully 战胜, 克服

## Phrases & Expressions

track down	跟踪, 追捕, 追查
as a matter of fact	事实上
prepare for	为……做准备
ahead of	在……前面, 先于
fall behind	落后
in pain	疼痛, 在苦恼中
be worth it	(…)是值得的
even if	即使, 虽然



turn around	转身(转变, 逆转)
sure enough	确实, 毫无疑问
mistake... for ...	错认, 误认为
give up	放弃, 抛弃, 戒除
stick with	坚持做
make a difference to	对……产生影响

## Notes

1. (Para. 1) It was the district track meet – the one we had been training for all season. As a matter of fact, I had debated whether or not I should attend the meet. But there I was, preparing for the 3,200-meter run.

句中“the one we had been training for all season”是过去完成进行时, 表示动作或状态从过去到“现在一直持续着”, 而“the one we”是定语从句, 修饰“the district track meet”。

**whether or not** 表示“是否(应该)”

e.g. They don't know whether or not they can go out for a walk.

他们不知道是否可以外出散步。

“But there I was”是“I was there”的倒装句, 意思是“但我还是去了”。

- 参考译文: 这是一次地区田径运动会为此这个季节我们一直训练着。事实上, 我一直在考虑是否应该参加这次运动会。但我还是去了, 准备好参加 3,200 米长跑。

2. (Para. 2) I realized I was limping and felt humiliated as I fell farther and farther behind.

“I realized”之后是宾语从句, 表示“认识到、体会到”, “as I fell farther and farther behind”是由 as 引导的原因状语从句, 其中“farther and farther”是“far”的比较级, 表示越来越远。

e.g. He couldn't go to the camp as it was a bad day with a lot of rain.

由于天气糟糕, 一直在下雨, 所以他无法去露营。

as 也可以表示“while / when”, 引导时间状语从句。

e.g. As I grew up, I knew how to behave politely and friendly in front of others.

当我长大之后, 我知道了如何在别人面前举止礼貌友善。

- 参考译文: 我发现自己开始一瘸一拐, 并因为越来越落后于其他选手而感到羞愧。

3. (Para. 4) It wouldn't be worth it, even if my foot did cure.

be worth it 表示“值得的、值得花费(精力、时间、金钱等)”, did 起强调作用。

**even if**

used to emphasize that sth. will still be true if another thing happens 表示“即使、纵然(针对将要发生的事情)”

e.g. Even if he runs to the theatre immediately now, he will still miss the film that begins at 7 o'clock tonight.

纵然他现在立刻跑去剧院, 也错过了今晚 7 点钟开始的那部电影。





- 扩展

**even though**

used to emphasize that sth. is true although sth. else had happened or is true 即使、纵然（引导让步状语从句，针对已发生的事情）

e.g. He can still remember, even though it happened a long time ago.

即使这件事发生在很久以前，他仍然记得。

- 参考译文：即使我的脚真的好了，这也是不值得的。

**4. (Para. 5) What was that all about?**

- 参考译文：这究竟是怎么回事？

**5. (Para. 8) I would never have been able to finish those two miles if I were you. I would have quit on the first lap.**

- 参考译文：如果我是你的话，我绝对不可能跑完那两英里。

句中使用虚拟语气表示与事实相反或不符的假设，从句“if I were you”用过去时，表示事实与现在相反，主句“I would never have been able to finish those two miles”用过去完成时，表示事实与过去相反。

**6. (Para. 11) First, a little kindness and confidence in people can make a great difference to them.**

*make a great difference to*

对…产生很大影响

e.g. Her decision can make a great difference to her son's future.

她的决定会对自己儿子的未来产生很大的影响。

- 参考译文：第一，对别人表示一点好意和信任可以对他们产生很大的影响。

**7. (Para. 13) I dream only that one day — perhaps as a senior — I will be able to win a race with a cheer as big as the one I got when I lost that race as a freshman.**

句中 that 引导一个宾语从句，其中还包括一个 “the one I got” 的定语从句和由 when 引导的时间状语从句。

*as big as*

同……一样大（热烈）的

e.g. The little boy wanted to have a cake as big as his brother's.

这个小男孩想要一个蛋糕，跟他哥哥的一样大。

- 参考译文：我只是梦想将来某一天也许在大四时我能赢得比赛，得到与我在大一输掉比赛时同样热烈的欢呼。

## Text Comprehension

**1. Answer the following questions according to the text.**

- 1) How long did the writer train for the track meet?
- 2) How was the writer running?



- 3) Why did she feel humiliated?
- 4) What happened when the writer finished?
- 5) What did the writer and the girl talk about?
- 6) What did the writer learn that day?

**2. Decide whether the following statements are true or false according to the text.**

- 1) We had been training for the national track meet during the whole season.
- 2) The first-place runner was two laps ahead of me.
- 3) When the first-place runner crossed the finish line, I decided to quit.
- 4) When I finished, I heard a cheer that was for the boys.
- 5) In the bathroom, the girl's words helped me to decide to stick with track next year.
- 6) That day I learned strength and courage are measured in medals and victories.

## Vocabulary

**1. Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the forms where necessary.**

injury	attend	debate	quit	realize
worth	courage	measure	race	overcome

- 1) The soldier showed great \_\_\_\_\_ in the battle.
- 2) He has decided to \_\_\_\_\_ his highly-paid job in an American company.
- 3) With the help of Rory, he finally managed to \_\_\_\_\_ the fear of public speaking.
- 4) My sister and I \_\_\_\_\_ the wedding ceremony last week.
- 5) In the accident, the little girl received serious \_\_\_\_\_ to her legs.
- 6) He has \_\_\_\_\_ whether or not he should accept that position.
- 7) Education shouldn't be \_\_\_\_\_ completely by examination results.
- 8) When she was young, she always took part in the \_\_\_\_\_ at school sports meetings every year.
- 9) He suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ that he'd seen that woman before.
- 10) The tickets for concert cost me a lot of money, but it's \_\_\_\_\_ it.

**2. The prefix dis - can be used with verbs or adjectives to mean negative. Study the following models and complete the table with appropriate words.**

**Models:** like — dislike

able — disable

appear		remember	
believe		respect	
affect		grace	
agree		approve	



### 3. Fill in each of the blanks with a suitable preposition or adverb.

- 1) Take these pills if you are \_\_\_\_\_ pain.
- 2) Laws vary \_\_\_\_\_ country \_\_\_\_\_ country.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ a freshman, I should adapt to the surroundings quickly.
- 4) After five miles, Lucy was tired and started to fall \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Did you hear what happened \_\_\_\_\_ David last night?
- 6) I often mistake her \_\_\_\_\_ her sister \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.

## Structure

### 1. Study the model and complete the sentences by translating Chinese into English.

**Model:** It wouldn't be worth it, even if my foot did heal.

- 1) He treated me well \_\_\_\_\_ (即使我只是一个陌生人).
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (即使我会失败十次), I wouldn't lose courage.
- 3) He will marry that woman, \_\_\_\_\_ (即使她来自一个贫困的家庭).
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (即使你是一名优秀的大学生). you may have problems finding a good job.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (即使他们使用同样的教科书), their teaching methods vary from each other.

### 2. Study the model and complete the following sentences by using the subjunctive mood.

**Model:** I would never have been able to finish those two miles if I were you.

- 1) If I were you, \_\_\_\_\_ (I, accept, that job, at once).
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (I, have, the time), I would certainly go.
- 3) If I started much earlier, \_\_\_\_\_ (I, catch, the train).
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (You, watch, the movie), you would also be attracted by the actor.
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (You, stay here, for more time), that would have been much better.

## Comprehensive Exercises

### 1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.

Football is, I suppose, the most popular game in England: one has only to go to one of the important matches to see 1)\_\_\_\_. Rich and poor, young and old, one can see them all there, shouting and cheering for one side or 2)\_\_\_\_\_.

One of the most 3)\_\_\_\_\_ things about football in England to a stranger is the 4)\_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of game which even the smallest boy 5)\_\_\_\_\_ to have. He can tell you the names



of the players in 6)\_\_\_\_\_ of the important teams, he has photographs of them and knows the 7)\_\_\_\_\_ of large numbers of matches. He will tell you, with a great air of 8)\_\_\_\_\_, who he expects will win such and such a match, and his opinion is 9)\_\_\_\_\_ as valuable as 10)\_\_\_\_\_ of men three or four times his age.

- |                  |                 |               |                |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1) A. this       | B. these        | C. them       | D. those       |
| 2) A. another    | B. other        | C. the other  | D. others      |
| 3) A. surprising | B. surprised    | C. terrifying | D. terrified   |
| 4) A. major      | B. extreme      | C. giant      | D. great       |
| 5) A. is         | B. seem         | C. ought      | D. has         |
| 6) A. few        | B. most         | C. every      | D. each        |
| 7) A. effects    | B. consequences | C. decisions  | D. results     |
| 8) A. power      | B. right        | C. authority  | D. authorities |
| 9) A. usually    | B. rarely       | C. seldom     | D. never       |
| 10) A. these     | B. one          | C. this       | D. that        |

## 2. Translation the following sentences into English, using the words and phrases given in the brackets.

1) 事实上, 她曾考虑过是否该出国。(debate, whether or not)

---

2) 运动对于你的健康有重要的作用。(make a difference to)

---

3) 汤姆在图书馆花费了 1 个小时, 最终找到了他需要的那本书。(track down)

---

4) 我一瘸一拐地走向教室, 在那儿碰到了杰克。(limp)

---

5) 他迅速地转过身看看是否有人跟着他。(turn around)

---

## Part III Extensive Reading (I)

## Text B

### X-Sports

1 Rick Stevenson, 16 years old, spends every minute he can on the mountain. He and his friends go snow-boarding every weekend. "It's incredible," he says. "The winds are so strong, the boards go 50 miles an hour." His friend Laura Fields agrees. "No one goes skiing anymore," she says. "That's for the old folks."

2 Rick and Laura are part of a new trend in sports. It has its own language, words such as “juice” and “energy”. It has its own clothing, such as skin-tight bicycle suits in rainbow colors or loose tops and pants. And it’s not for the old or the easily frightened. Its philosophy is to get as close to the edge as possible. And more and more young athletes are taking part in these risky activities called “extreme sports”, or “X-sports”.

3 In the past, young athletes would play hockey or baseball. Today, they want risk and excitement—the closer to the edge the better. They snowboard over cliffs and mountain-bike down steep mountains. They wind-surf near hurricanes, go white-water rafting through rapids, and bungy-jump from towers. Extreme sports started as an alternative to more expensive sports.

4 A city kid who didn’t have the money to buy expensive sports equipment could get a skateboard and have fun. But now it has become a whole new area of sports, with specialized equipment and high levels of skill.

5 There’s even a special Olympics for extreme sports, called the Winter X-Games, which includes snow mountain biking and ice climbing. An Extreme Games competition is held each summer in Rhode Island. It features sports such as sky surfing, where people jump from airplanes with surfboards attached to their feet.

6 What makes extreme sports so popular?

7 “People love the excitement,” says Murray Nussbaum, who sells sports equipment. “City people want to be outdoors on the weekend and do something challenging. The new equipment is so much better that people can take more risks without getting hurt”. An athlete adds, “Sure there’s a risk, but that’s part of the appeal. Once you go mountain biking or snowboarding, it’s impossible to go back to bike riding or skiing. It’s just too boring.”

8 Extreme sports are certainly not for everyone. Most people still prefer to play baseball or basketball or watch sports on TV. But extreme sports are definitely gaining in popularity. “These sports are fresh and exciting. It’s the wave of the future. The potential is huge”, says Nussbaum.

(404 words)

## New Words

mountain	/ˈmaʊntɪn/	<i>n.</i>	a land mass that projects well above its surroundings; higher than a hill 山, 山脉, 高山
board	/bɔ:d/	<i>n.</i>	a flat piece of material designed for a special purpose 木板, 布告板
incredible	/ɪnˈkredəbl/	<i>adj.</i>	beyond belief or understanding 难以置信的
skiing	/ˈski:ɪŋ/	<i>n.</i>	a sport in which participants must travel on skis 滑雪, 滑雪术



anymore	/ˈenɪmɔː/	adv.	at the present or from now on; usually used with a negative (通常用于疑问句或否定句中) 不再
folk	/fəuk/	n.	people in general (often used in the plural) 人们
trend	/trend/	n.	a general tendency to change (as of opinion) 趋势, 倾向
juice	/dʒuːs/	n.	the liquid part that can be extracted from plant or animal tissue by squeezing or cooking; energetic vitality 果汁, 肉汁, 精力
energy	/ˈenədʒi/	n.	a healthy capacity for vigorous activity 精力, 活力
tight	/taɪt/	adj.	closely constrained or constricted or constricting 紧的, 紧身的
rainbow	/ˈreɪnbəʊ/	n.	an arc of colored light in the sky caused by refraction of the sun's rays by rain 彩虹
		adj.	colorful 五彩缤纷的
loose	/luːs/	adj.	not fitting closely; hanging loosely 宽松的
pant	/pænt/	n.	(usually in the plural) a garment extending from the waist to the knee or ankle, covering each leg separately 裤子
frighten	/ˈfraɪtən/	vt.	cause fear in 使惊吓, 害怕
philosophy	/fɪˈlɒsəfi/	n.	哲学, 信条
edge	/edʒ/	n.	the boundary of a surface 边缘
athlete	/ˈæθli:t/	n.	a person trained to compete in sports 运动员
activity	/ækˈtɪvɪti/	n.	any specific behavior 活动, 活跃
hockey	/ˈhɒki/	n.	曲棍球
baseball	/ˈbeɪsˌbɔːl/	n.	棒球
cliff	/klɪf/	n.	a steep high face of rock 悬崖, 峭壁
steep	/sti:p/	adj.	having a sharp inclination 险峻的, 陡峭的
surf	/sə:f/	vi.	ride the waves of the sea with a surfboard 冲浪
hurricane	/ˈhʌrɪkən/	n.	a severe tropical cyclone usually with heavy rains and winds moving a 73-136 knots (12 on the Beaufort scale) 飓风, 暴风
raft	/rɑ:ft/	n.	a flat float (usually made of logs or planks) that can be used for transport or as a platform for swimmers 筏, 木排
bungy-jump		n.	蹦极
equipment	/iˈkwɪpmənt/	n.	an instrumentality needed for an undertaking or to perform a service 设备, 装备, 器材
specialize	/ˈspeʃəlaɪz/	v.	become more focus on an area of activity or field of study 专攻

attach	/ə'tætʃ/	v.	be in contact with 附上, 系上
outdoor	/'autdɔ/	adj.	located, suited for, or taking place in the open air 户外的, 野外的, 露天的
appeal	/ə'pi:l/	v.	be attractive to 呼吁, 有吸引力
definite	/'definit/	adj.	known for certain 明确的, 一定的, 有把握的
potential	/pə'tenʃəl/	adj.	existing in possibility 潜在的, 可能的

## Phrases & Expressions

X-sports	极限运动
be part of	属于
take part in	参加
on the weekend	周末
get hurt	受伤
prefer to	更喜欢…

## Proper Names

Rick Stevenson	瑞克·史蒂文森
Laura Fields	罗拉
Rhode Island	罗得岛
Murray Nussbaum	玛瑞·纳什波

## Notes

1. (*Para. 1*) Rick Stevenson, 16 years old, spends every minute he can on the mountain.

*spend ... on*

花费(时间、金钱、精力等)在……上

e.g. The athletes spend the whole season on the training for Olympic Games in 2012.

为参加 2012 年的奥林匹克运动会, 运动员们把整个季节都花费在了训练上。

- 参考译文: 16 岁的瑞克·斯蒂文森把他的分分秒秒都花费在了登山上。

2. (*Para. 2*) It has its own clothing, such as skin-tight bicycle suits in rainbow colors or baggy tops and pants. And it's not for the old or the easily frightened. Its philosophy is to get as close to the edge as possible.

*such as*

表示列举、举例, 相当于 “for example, such like”

e.g. Mary has a variety of hobbies, such as listening to pop music.



玛丽有各种各样的爱好, 比如说听流行音乐。

*as close ... as possible*

尽可能地靠近……

- **参考译文:** 它拥有自己的服装, 比如五彩缤纷的紧身骑车装或宽松的上装与短裤。它不适宜于年长者或容易害怕的人。它所推崇的信条是尽可能地接近极限。

**3. (Para. 4) A city kid who didn't have the money to buy expensive sports equipment could get a skateboard and have fun. But now it has become a whole new area of sports, with specialized equipment and high levels of skill.**

句中 “a city boy who didn't have the money to buy expensive sports equipment ” 是由 who 引导的定语从句, “with specialized equipment and high levels of skill” 是 with 引导的介宾词组作后置补充说明。

- **参考译文:** 对于没有钱购置昂贵运动器械的城市儿童, 也可以买个滑板, 同样乐趣无穷。但是现在极限运动已成为了运动的一个全新领域, 拥有专业化的设备和高水准的技巧。

**4. (Para. 6) The new equipment is so much better that people can take more risks without getting hurt.**

*so ... that ...*

表示 “如此…… (以至于)”, so 往往修饰后面的形容词或副词的程度

e.g. The cookies are so delicious that all those children go back to the room quickly.  
点心太可口了, 于是所有孩子们都很快回到了房间。

- **参考译文:** 这些新设备相当不错, 可以让人们尝试更多的冒险而免于受伤。

**5. (Para. 7) But extreme sports are definitely gaining in popularity.**

*gain in popularity*

赢得了人们的欢迎; 逐渐变得流行

e.g. Power walk are accepted by many people, especially the older. It is gaining in popularity.  
快步走得到了许多人的接受, 尤其是年长者。它逐渐变得流行起来了。

- **参考译文:** 但是极速运动的确逐渐变得流行起来了。

## Exercises

**1. Answer the following questions according to the text.**

- 1) What do Rick Stevenson and his friends do every weekend?
- 2) What is the philosophy of “extreme sports” ?
- 3) What can X-sports include?
- 4) What is the Winter X-Games?
- 5) What are necessary for X-sports, a new trend in sports?
- 6) Why are extreme sports gaining in popularity?



**2. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.**

incredible	frighten	alternative	take part in
equipment	specialize	risk	challenging

- 1) Even if she is a new member in the company, she is willing to accept \_\_\_\_ jobs.
- 2) As a famous actor, he earns a (n) \_\_\_\_ amount of money every year.
- 3) Have you decided which team you will \_\_\_\_?
- 4) The factory imported some new \_\_\_\_ last month.
- 5) In fact, he \_\_\_\_ in computer, so he can help you to repair it.
- 6) All of them were \_\_\_\_ by the news of earthquake.
- 7) Caught in fact, he had no \_\_\_\_ but to confess(供认).
- 8) Because of poor management, the whole future of the company is at \_\_\_\_.

**3. Translate the following passage into Chinese.**

Extreme sports are certainly not for everyone. Most people still prefer to play baseball or basketball or watch sports on TV. But extreme sports are definitely gaining in popularity. “These sports are fresh and exciting. It’s the wave of the future...”

---

---

---

---

**Part IV Extensive Reading (II)****Text C****Olympic Games**

1 In ancient Greece athletic festivals were very important and had strong religious associations. The Olympian athletic festival held every four years in honor of Zeus, king of the Olympian Gods, eventually lost its local character, became first a national event and then, after the rules against foreign competitors had been abolished, international. No one knows exactly how far back the Olympic Games go, but some official records date from 776B.C.

2 The games took place in August on the plain by Mount Olympus. Many thousands of spectators gathered from all parts of Greece, but no married woman was admitted even as a spectator. Slaves, women and dishonored persons were not allowed to compete. The exact sequence of events is uncertain, but events included boy’s gymnastics, boxing, wrestling,



horse racing and field events, though there were fewer sports involved than in the modern Olympic Games. On the last day of the Games, all the winners were honored by having a ring of holy olive leaves placed on their heads. So great was the honor that the winner of the foot race gave his name to the year of his victory. Although Olympic winners received no prize money, they were, in fact, richly rewarded by their state authorities. How their results compared with modern standards, we unfortunately have no means of telling.

3 After an uninterrupted history of almost 1,200 years, the Games were suspended by the Romans in 394 A.D. They continued for such a long time because people believed in the philosophy behind the Olympics: the idea that a healthy body produced a healthy mind, and that the spirit of competition in sports and games was preferable to the competition that caused wars. It was over 1,500 years before another such international athletic gathering took place in Athens in 1896. Nowadays, the Games are held in different countries in turn. The host country provides vast facilities, including a stadium, swimming pools and living accommodation, but competing countries pay their own athletes' expenses.

(330 words)

## New Words

ancient	/ˈeɪnfənt/	adj.	very old 古老的, 古代的
athletic	/æθˈletɪk/	adj.	relating to or befitting athletics or athletes; active 运动的, 活跃的, 健壮的
association	/ə.səʊsiˈeɪʃən/	n.	a formal organization of people or groups of people 协会, 社团, 联合, 结合
honor	/ˈɒnə/	n.	a tangible symbol signifying approval or distinction 荣誉, 荣幸
local	/ˈləʊkəl/	adj.	relating to or applicable to or concerned with the administration of a city or town or district rather than a larger area 地方性的, 当地的, 局部的
character	/ˈkærɪktə/	n.	a characteristic property that defines the apparent individual nature of something 个性, 品质
national	/ˈnæʃənəl/	adj.	of or relating to or belonging to a nation or country 民族的, 国家的, 全国性的
event	/ɪˈvent/	n.	something that happens at a given place and time 大事, 事件
against	/əˈgeɪnst/	prep.	反对, 违背
foreign	/ˈfɔːrɪn/	adj.	of concern to or concerning the affairs of other nations (other than your own) 外来的, 外国的
competitor	/kəmˈpetɪtə/	n.	the contestant you hope to defeat 竞争者, 对手

abolish	/ə'bɒlɪʃ/	vt.	do away with 废除, 革除, 消灭
exactly	/ɪg'zæktli/	adv.	indicating exactness or preciseness 精确地, 确切地, 完全地, 正是
official	/ə'fɪʃəl/	adj.	having official authority or sanction 正式的, 官方的
record	/ˈrekɔ:d/	vt.	make a record of; set down in permanent form 记录, 显示
		n.	anything (such as a document or a photograph) providing permanent evidence of or information about past events 记录, 记载
spectator	/spek'teɪtə/	n.	a close observer; someone who looks at something (such as an exhibition of some kind) 观众, 旁观者
admit	/əd'mɪt/	vt.	declare to be true or admit the existence or reality or truth of; allow to enter 承认, 允许进入
slave	/sleɪv/	n.	a person who is owned by someone 奴隶
dishonored	/dɪs'ɒnəd/	adj.	suffering shame 声名狼藉的
sequence	/ˈsi:kwəns/	n.	a following of one thing after another in time 顺序, 连续, 次序
gymnastics	/dʒɪm'næstɪks/	n.	体操
wrestling	/ˈreslɪŋ/	n.	摔跤
olive	/ˈɒlɪv/	n.	橄榄, 橄榄树
prize	/praɪz/	n.	something given for victory or superiority in a contest or competition or for winning a lottery 奖品, 奖金, 奖赏
authority	/ə'θɔ:riɪ/	n.	the power or right to give orders or make decisions 权力, 权威
standard	/ˈstændəd/	n.	a basis for comparison; a reference point against which other things can be evaluated 标准, 规格, 水准
interrupt	/ˌɪntə'rʌpt/	v.	make a break in 打断, 打扰, 中断, 阻碍
suspend	/səs'pend/	v.	hang freely; cause to be held in suspension in a fluid 暂停, 悬浮, 中止
healthy	/ˈhelθi/	adj.	having or indicating good health in body or mind 健康的
spirit	/ˈspɪrɪt/	n.	the vital principle or animating force within living things 精神, 心灵
preferable	/ˈprefərəbl/	adj.	more desirable than another 更好的, 更合意的
vast	/vɑ:st/	adj.	unusually great in size or amount or degree 巨大的, 广阔的



facility	/fə'siliti/	<i>n.</i>	a service that an organization or a piece of equipment offers you 设备, 设施
stadium	/'steidiəm/	<i>n.</i>	a large structure for open-air sports or entertainments 体育场, 运动场
accommodation	/ə,kəmə'deiʃn /	<i>n.</i>	the act of providing something (lodging or seat or food) to meet a need 膳宿, 住处

## Phrases & Expressions

in honor of	为纪念, 为向……表示敬意, 为……庆祝
date from	回溯到, 开始于
take place	发生
compare with	与……相比
be preferable to	比……更好

## Proper Names

Olympic Games	奥林匹克运动会
Greece	希腊
Zeus	宙斯 (希腊神话中的众神之主)
Olympian Gods	奥林匹克众神
B. C.	公元前
Mount Olympus	奥林匹斯山
A. D.	公元

## Notes

1. (*Para. 1*) The Olympian athletic festival held every four years in honor of Zeus, king of the Olympian Gods, eventually lost its local character, became first a national event and then, after the rules against foreign competitors had been abolished, international.

- 参考译文: 奥林匹克运动盛会四年举办一次以纪念奥林匹克众神之王宙斯, 但最终失去了原本的意义, 成为一个国家的盛会, 然后在废除了禁止国外选手参加的规定之后成为国际体育盛会。

2. (*Para. 2*) So great was the honor that the winner of the foot race gave his name to the year of his victory.

句中 “so great was the honor” 是倒装句, 表示强调说明, “give his name to” 表示用某人的名字命名。

*e.g.* So beautiful is the scenery in the mountain that all the tourists take photos happily.



山上风景如此漂亮，所有游客都愉快地拍照。

- 参考译文：这份荣誉很高，竞走胜出者会以自己的名字来命名胜利的年份。

3. (Para. 2) How their results compared with modern standards, we unfortunately have no means of telling.

- 参考译文：当时他们的比赛结果跟现代标准相比究竟怎么样，很遗憾我们现在并没有途径去深入了解。

4. (Para. 3) the idea that a healthy body produced a healthy mind, and that the spirit of competition in sports and games was preferable to the competition that caused wars.

句中“a healthy body produced a healthy mind”和“the spirit of competition in sports and games was preferable to the competition that caused wars”均是由 that 引导的定语从句

*be preferable to*

(……与……相比)是更可取的、更好的

e.g. After he retired, he believes that the life in the countryside is preferable to the life in city.

自从退休之后，他认为乡村生活比城市生活更好。

- 参考译文：该理念即健康的体魄能够塑造出健康的头脑，运动中的竞争精神比那些引发战争的竞争是更为可取的。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 建议与请求 Suggestion and request

- ◇ —Would you like to go with me to the party?  
—Sure, it's a good idea.
- ◇ —What do you think if we go to the concert this Friday?  
—I'd like to, but I must prepare for my exam next Monday.
- ◇ —How about some cookies?  
—Thanks. They look delicious.
- ◇ —Why don't we go to the new restaurant?  
—OK. Let's go.
- ◇ —Shall we watch TV for a while?  
—Well, only half an hour.
- ◇ —If I were you, I would say sorry to her.  
—Maybe you are right.



- ◇ —It might be a good idea for us to camp out this vacation.  
—Great! And we should invite more friends with us.

## Practice

Choose the answer that best completes each dialog.

- 1) —Would you like to go swimming with US?

—

- |                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| A. You're all right.           | B. Ok, I'll be ready.      |
| C. Sure, may I know your name? | D. It's not good to do it. |

- 2) —Why don't we have a birthday party this weekend?

—

- |                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| A. Well, it's a good idea. | B. What happened? |
| C. Don't worry.            | D. Ok, Let's go.  |

- 3) —If I were you, I would give her some gifts.

—

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. Sorry, she doesn't want. | B. Ok, she wants to see US. |
| C. Maybe you're right.      | D. I'll see you later.      |

- 4) —What do you think if we go to the mew restaurant this Friday?

—

- |                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A. Sorry, I don't want to see you. | B. Well, It's only half an hour. |
| C. Thanks. I'm full.               | D. Ok, I'd like to.              |

- 5) —How about enjoying a film this afternoon?

—

- |                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| A. It's true.      | B. It's not the case.   |
| C. I'm against it. | D. That's what I think. |

## Grammar

### 代词

代词是代替名词的词类。大多数代词具有名词和形容词的功能。英语中的代词可以分为九类：人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、相互代词、指示代词、疑问代词、关系代词、连接代词和不定代词。

#### 一、人称代词

1. 人称代词是表示“我”、“你”、“他”、“她”、“它”、“我们”、“你们”、“他们”的词。人称代词有人称、数和格的变化，见下表：

数	单数		复数	
格	主格	宾格	主格	宾格
第一人称	I	me	we	us
第二人称	you	you	you	you
第三人称	he	him	they	them
	she	her	they	them
	it	it	they	them

2. 人称代词的用法

(1) 代词作主语时用主格，作宾语时用宾格：

He has great concern for them. 他很关心他们。

(2) 人称代词作表语时，用宾格时较多，特别是在口语中，例如：

Who is knocking at the door? — It's me. 谁在敲门？—是我。

但在下面这种结构中却常用主格：

It was he who did it.

在表示比较的非正式的文体中，常用宾格代替主格：

He is more intelligent than her.

3. 在使用人称代词时还应注意以下几点：

(1) we, you 两词有时可用来泛指一般人：

We (you) have to be cautious under such circumstances. 在这样的情况下大家应特别小心。

We (You) should keep calm even when we (you) are in danger. 即使在危急时刻也要保持冷静。

They 也可用来泛指某一些人：

They don't allow us to smoke here. 这儿不让抽烟。（They 代表谁不清楚）

(2) she 可以用来代表国家、船只、大地、月亮等：

I think England will do what she promised to do. 我想英国会履行她的诺言。

二、物主代词

1. 物主代词是表示所有关系的代词，也可叫做代词所有格。根据其句法作用，物主代词可以分为形容词性和名词性两种，见下表：

人 称	单 数		复 数	
	形容词性	名词性	形容词性	名词性
第一人称	my	mine	our	ours
第二人称	your	yours	your	yours
第三人称	his, her, its	his, hers, its	their	theirs

2. 物主代词用法：

(1) 形容词性物主代词一般位于名词前，用作定语，限定该名词的意义。例如：



Excuse me, is this your car? 对不起, 这是您的车吗?

(2) 名词性物主代词作主语:

May I use your pen? Yours works better. 我可以用一用你的钢笔吗? 你的比我的好用。

(3) 名词性物主代词作宾语:

I love my motherland as much as you love yours. 我爱我的祖国就像你爱你的祖国一样深。

(4) 名词性物主代词作表语:

This umbrella is yours and that one is hers. 这把伞是你的, 那把是她的。

(5) 名词性物主代词与 of 连用:

He is a close friend of ours. 他是我们的一位亲密朋友。

### 三、反身代词

1. 见下表

数	单数			复数		
人称	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
人称代词	I	you	he/she/it	we	you	they
反身代词	myself	yourself	himself/herself/itself	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

另外, one 的反身代词为 oneself

2. 反身代词的用法

(1) 作宾语:

He can buy himself a lot of nice things. 他可以给自己买好多好东西。

We enjoyed ourselves very much last night. 我们昨晚玩得很开心。

(2) 作表语:

I'm not quite myself today. 我今天情绪不好。

He doesn't seem himself this morning. 今天上午他似乎不舒服。

(3) 作主语或宾语的同位语(作主语同位语时, 放在主语后或句末):

I went to the cinema myself. 我独自去了电影院。

(4) 可以用作主语(代替人称代词):

Both my sister and myself asked to go and work there. 我妹妹和我都要求到那里工作。

(5) 反身代词还可以与某些介词连用, 组成固定搭配:

① by oneself: 自己, 一个人干

They made the machine all by themselves. 这机器完全是他们自己制造的。

② for oneself: 替自己, 为自己

She made no complaint for herself. 她没有替自己抱怨。

③ in oneself: 本身

This is not a bad idea in itself. 这主意本身并不错。

④ between ourselves: 私下说的话

Between ourselves, he is a selfish man. 咱们私下说, 他这个人很自私。





⑤ among themselves: ……之间

They had a heated discussion among themselves. 他们之间进行了热烈的讨论。

⑥ to oneself: 供自己用

I want a little time to myself. 我想有一点自己支配的时间。

#### 四、相互代词

1. 相互代词只有 **each other** 和 **one another** 两个词组，由于表示相互关系，称为相互代词。

2. 相互代词的用法：

(1) 作动词宾语

People should love **one another**. 人们应当彼此相爱。

一般认为，相互关系存在于两个人或物之间用 **each other**，存在于两个以上人和物之间用 **one another**。现代英语中，两组词交替使用的实例也很多。例如：

He put all the books beside **each other/one another**. 他把所有书并列摆放起来。

(2) 相互代词可以加's，表示所有关系，如：

We should point out **each other's** shortcomings. 我们应当指出彼此的缺点。

#### 五、指示代词

表示“这个”，“那个”，“这些”，“那些”等意思的代词叫做指示代词。指示代词分单数 (**this / that**) 和复数 (**these / those**) 两种形式

1. 指示代词用法：

(1) 作主语：

**This** is what I want to emphasize. 这就是我想强调的。

**Whose pens** are those? 那些是谁的钢笔。

(2) 作宾语：

We should always keep **this** in mind. 我们应当经常记住这一点。

I like **these** but she likes **those**. 我喜欢这些，而她喜欢那些。

(3) 作表语：

Her plan is **this**. 她的计划是这样的。

His worries are **those**. 他的烦恼就是那些。

(4) 作定语：

You can't swim at **this** time of the year. 你不能在这个时候游泳。

I don't like **that** man. 我不喜欢那个人。

2. 指示代词的用法区别

(1) **this** 和 **these** 一般指在空间和时间上较近的事物，**that** 和 **those** 一般指在空间和时间上较远的事物。

**This** is a map of China and **that** is a map of the world.

这是一张中国地图，那是一张世界地图。

(2) **this** 和 **these** 常指后面将要讲到的事物，有启下的作用，**that** 和 **those** 常指前面已经讲到过的事物，起承上的作用。



I shall say this to you: he is an honest man.

我将对你说这一点: 他是一个诚实的人。

He felt ill. That is why he didn't come. 他病了, 那就是他没来的原因。

- (3) that 和 those 有时可用来代替前面提到过的东西, 以避免重复这个名词:

These machines are better than those we turned out last year. 这些机器比我们去年生产的好。

- (4) 在电话中, this 表示打电话者, that 表示接电话的对方。

A: Hello! This is Bob (speaking). 喂, 我是鲍勃。

B: Who's that please? 请问是哪位? (美语用 Who's it? 或 Who's this?)

3. such 也是一个指示代词, 在句子中可用作:

- (1) 定语:

We have had such a busy day. 我们今天忙得真够呛。

- (2) 主语:

Such was my immediate impression. 这就是我当时印象。

- (3) 表语:

His illness was not such as to cause anxiety. 他的病还不至于使人焦虑不安。

4. same 也可以看作指示代词, 在句中能作定语、主语、表语或宾语:

She said the same thing all over again. 她把同样的话又说了一遍。

## 六、疑问代词

1. 疑问代词在句中起名词词组的作用, 用来构成疑问句。疑问代词有下列几个:

指人: who, whom, whose

指物: what

既可指人又可指物: which

2. 疑问代词在句中应位于谓语动词之前, 没有性和数的变化, 除 who 之外也没有格的变化。

what, which, whose 还可作限定词。试比较:

疑问代词: Whose are these books on the desk? 桌上的书是谁的?

限定词: Whose books are these on the desk? 桌上的书是谁的?

3. 无论是做疑问代词还是限定词, which 和 what 所指的范围不同。what 所指的范围是无限的, 而 which 则指在一定的范围内, 例如:

Which girls do you like best? 你喜欢哪几个姑娘?

What girls do you like best? 你喜欢什么样的姑娘?

4. who 通常作主语和表语, whom 作宾语, 例如:

Who is to take the chair? 谁做主席?

Who(m) did you meet on the street? 你在街上遇到了谁? (作动词宾语)

5. Whose, what, which 这三个疑问代词可以用作:

- (1) 主语:

What happened next? 后来怎么样了?

- (2) 表语:



They are so alike that you can't tell which is which. 他们是那样相像，你都分不出谁是谁了。

(3) 宾语:

Whose are you going to borrow? 你预备借谁的?

(4) 定语:

Which train will you take? 你搭哪一班火车?

What time shall we meet again? 我们什么时候再碰头?

6. 疑问代词还可引导名词性从句，例如:

Can you tell me whose the blue shirt on the bed is?

你能告诉我床上的蓝衬衣是谁的吗?

Much of what you say I agree with, but I cannot go all the way with you.

你说的我大部分同意，但并不完全赞同。

## 七、关系代词

关系代词有 who, whom, whose, that, which, as 等，可用作引导从句的关联词。它们在定语从句中可作主语、表语、宾语、定语等；另一方面它们又代表主句中为定语从句所修饰的那个名词或代词（通称为先行词）。

如: He is the man whom you have been looking for. 他就是你要找的那个人。

## 八、连接代词

连接代词主要有 who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whomever, whosever, whatever, which ever 等。

连接代词一般指疑问，但 what, whatever 除了指疑问之外，也可指陈述。

I don't know whom you should depend on? 我不知道你该依靠谁。

## 九、不定代词

不是指明代替任何特定名词的代词叫做不定代词。常见的不定代词有 all, both, each, every 等，以及含有 some-, any-, no- 等的合成代词，如 anybody, something, no one。这些不定代词大都可以代替名词和形容词，在句中作主语、宾语、表语和定语，但 none 和由 some, any, no 等构成的复合不定代词只能作主语、宾语或表语；every 和 no 只能作定语。如:

—Do you have a car? —你有一辆小汽车吗?

—Yes, I have one. —是的，我有一辆。

## Exercise

Choose the best answer for each of the following sentences.

1) She heard a terrible noise, \_\_\_\_\_ brought her heart into her mouth.

A. it                      B. which                      C. this                      D. that

2) The teacher gave the books to all the students except \_\_\_\_\_ who had already taken them.

A. ones                      B. some                      C. the ones                      D. the others



- 3) Our manager allowed \_\_\_\_\_ to take a holiday next week.  
A. you and I                      B. yourself and me                      C. I and you                      D. you and me
- 4) Although he 's wealthy, he spends \_\_\_\_ on clothes.  
A. little                      B. few                      C. a little                      D. a few
- 5) They were all tired, but \_\_\_\_\_ of them would stop to take a rest.  
A. any                      B. some                      C. none                      D. neither
- 6) I don't know whether small oranges are sweeter than big \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. those                      B. ones                      C. one                      D. that
- 7) When they met, they stopped and said hello to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. each other                      B. each another                      C. the other each                      D. each one
- 8) After everyone took \_\_\_\_\_ place, the meeting began.  
A. his                      B. their                      C. there                      D. the
- 9) —Why don't we take a little break?  
—Didn't we just have \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. it                      B. that                      C. one                      D. this
- 10) If you want to change for a double room you'll have to pay \_\_\_\_ \$15.  
A. another                      B. other                      C. more                      D. each
- 11) We should always keep \_\_\_\_\_ well-informed of the changing information.  
A. us                      B. ours                      C. ourselves                      D. we
- 12) Give the message to \_\_\_\_\_ is at the table.  
A. whomever                      B. whosever                      C. whatever                      D. whoever
- 13) I found \_\_\_\_\_ impossible for \_\_\_\_\_ to work out the maths problem.  
A. it; him                      B. it; he                      C. that; him                      D. that; he
- 14) Few pleasures can equal \_\_\_\_\_ of a cool drink on a hot day.  
A. some                      B. any                      C. that                      D. those
- 15) I hate \_\_\_\_\_ when people talk with their mouths full.  
A. it                      B. that                      C. these                      D. them
- 16) Mary learned Chinese for about two years, \_\_\_\_\_ is, from 1993 to 1995.  
A. this                      B. that                      C. it                      D. he
- 17) She is doing her homework. I'll do \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. such                      B. so                      C. the same                      D. the same as
- 18) In some restaurants, food and service are worse than \_\_\_\_\_ used to be.  
A. they                      B. it                      C. them                      D. that
- 19) Everyone who comes to the party is given a wooden apple with \_\_\_\_\_ own names cut in it as a souvenir (纪念品).  
A. his                      B. her                      C. their                      D. our
- 20) Children can usually dress \_\_\_\_\_ by the age of five.  
A. him                      B. them                      C. himself                      D. themselves



## Writing Skills

### 段落的展开方式（二）

#### 1. 因果法 (Causes and Effects)

因果法是通过分析事物发展的原因及其结果，说明段落的主题。无论是引出结果还是说明原因，都必须符合逻辑、遵循常理，才具有说服力。写作的主要特点包括：①区分必要、充分辅助原因；②考虑直接和间接原因；③选择采用恰当的因果分析方式；④避免牵强附会和循环推理。因果法通常有以下两种模式：

##### 1) 原因在前，结果在后

My experience with a foreign language began in junior middle school, when I took my first English class. I had a kind and patient teacher who often praised all of the students. Because of this positive method, I eagerly answered all the questions I could, never worrying much about making mistakes. I was at the top of my class for two years.

该段落的第一句是主题句。在扩展句中，原因是作者有一个和蔼耐心的老师，结果是作者积极学习，成绩名列前茅。该段是按照“原因—结果”的模式来发展的。

##### 2) 结果在前，原因在后

Eliot, 64, suffered a heart attack at age 44. He attributes some of the cause to stress. For years he was a “hot reactor”. On the exterior, he was cool, calm and collected, but on the interior, stress was killing him. He’s now doing very well.

该段落的主题句首先说明了 Eliot 有心脏病这样一个结果，然后再分析造成心脏病的原因。因此该段落是按照“结果—原因”的模式发展起来的。

在段落的写作中，可以给出原因引出结果；也可以先陈述结果，再说明原因，这得视具体情况而定。

#### 2. 比较和对比法 (Comparisons and Contracts)

比较和对比法是一种主要说明相同点和不同点的段落展开方式。比较的主要指出两个以上不同事物的共同或相似之处。对比的主要目的则是指出不同的人物、事物和地等在某些方面的不同之处。因此，寻求事物的相似或相同点时使用比较；寻求事物之间的不同或相异之处时使用对比。

On campus living arrangements are quite different from off-campus ones. In a dorm, the supervision is usually greater, it is more an extension of the watchfulness of parents, with other people noticing your comings and goings, establishing fixed eating times, sometimes restricting guests. Living on campus also means sharing with many other students not only a room but also meals, showers, telephones, and soap. Privacy and dorm living are mutually exclusive, but loneliness is unlikely. Off campus housing, on the other hand, allows much more personal freedom. Whether or not you go out or come house is up to you. Eating or starving is up to you. Privacy is constant option,



but also the enforced privacy of loneliness is more possible. Off campus, you really notice when there's nothing to do.

本段开始是主题句, 然后在段落的前半部分介绍了住在校内的情况, 接着用 on the other hand 引出了住在校外的情况。通过比较, 两种信宿方式的利弊一目了然。

虽然比较与对比可以单独使用, 但是在很多情况下, 比较和对比是分不开的, 有时会在同一个段落中同时使用比较和对比的方法。例如:

Canada and the United States have some differences and similarities. They are both large countries and were once British colonies. They are each industrialized, with a wide range of heavy and light manufacturing plants. Whereas Canada is self-sufficient in oil, however, the United States imports most of its energy. Unlike the United States, however Canada was once partly under French control, and is still a member of British Commonwealth. While each country is predominantly English-speaking, Canada has two official languages—English and French, whereas the United States has only one—English.

本段首先比较了加拿大与美国的相似之处, 接着又对比了两个国家之间的不同点, 使读者对两个国家之间的共同点和不同点留下深刻的印象。这是一个典型的比较和对比相结合的段落。

### Exercise

**Write at least 80 words about the following topic and use skills of cause-s and-effects and comparison.**

Topic: My views on Changing Jobs

Outline: 1. 有些人喜欢从事一种工作, 因为……

2. 有些人喜欢经常换工作, 因为……

3. 我的看法

# Love and Marriage

## Part I Pre-reading

Love and marriage are an eternal topic in human life. A man and a woman may freely make friends with each other. But they cannot talk of marriage until their friendship has ripened into love. In arranging their marriage, they may take other things into consideration, but they always regard love as the most important thing. This type of marriage usually brings happiness. Many couples live a happy life because their marriage is based on true love. On the contrary, some people marry for the sake of money only, and their marriage is destined to be a failure.

### Questions

- 1) What is your opinion about love and marriage?
- 2) Does love necessarily lead to marriage?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### Mimi's First Date

1 "We're going," Mimi called out to her mother in the family's grocery store next to her house. This was her first date, and Robert Rovere had just arrived to take her to a dance. She could hardly believe it was happening. During the long wait she had wondered again



and again what to wear, finally putting on her favorite blouse. Now at last Robert was here. He looked beautiful to her. His hair was neatly combed and he wore a yellow sweater she hadn't seen before. Mimi felt wonderful.

2 As they stepped out of the door, Mimi's mother popped out of the store and said hello to Robert. Then she put a package wrapped in white paper into Mimi's hand.

3 "Limburger cheese for Sally Thompson, Mimi. We got a case of imported Limburger in today. I promised Sally you'd deliver it tonight."

4 "Tonight!" Mimi echoed, staring down at the cheese. "Why not tomorrow?"

5 "Sorry, but I promised Sally," her mother said. "Well, have fun, you two."

6 "Oh well, Robert, let's go," she said.

7 Her first date ever, her first date with Robert Rovere, and she was stuck with a large, smelly, messy package of cheese! She tried to forget it. "Here I am," she said to herself, "going to a dance with Robert Rovere." She glanced up at him.

8 "That cheese smells," he said.

9 She held the cheese in the hand farthest from him, but the smell seemed to be crawling up her arm.

10 They turned onto Montcalm Street. Mimi didn't know the house number, but she thought she'd recognize the house because she'd passed there once before. "Oh, here it is." She rang the bell but nobody answered. Then she noticed that the name under the bell wasn't Thompson. She had come to the wrong house. Oh, how embarrassing, she thought. She dropped the cheese into her coat pocket and rejoined Robert.

11 "Wrong house," she said. "I was sure she lived there."

12 "What do we do now?" Robert asked.

13 Mimi bit her lip. She couldn't bring the cheese home again now. It would just have to go to the dance with her. "Let's go," she said. She was so miserable she couldn't think of anything else to say, and she and Robert walked the rest of the way in a silence as thick as the bad smell of the cheese.

14 When they arrived at the dance, the place was full of people and there was no room to hang their coats. Mimi wanted to wash her hands, but Robert led her straight onto the dance floor. Mimi noticed that Robert smelled sweet, like lily of the valley. She smelled of Limburger cheese.

15 Mimi danced with all her heart. Robert's eyes were closed, probably trying to forget her and her smell, she thought.

(463 words)

## New Words

grocery	/'grəʊsəri/	<i>n.</i>	a store that sells food and other things used in the home 杂货店
---------	-------------	-----------	--





favorite	/ˈfeɪvərɪt/	a.	preferred above all others and treated with partiality 最喜爱的
blouse	/ˈblaʊz/	n.	a shirt worn by women 女衬衫
neatly	/ˈni:tli/	adv.	with neatness 整洁地
comb	/kəʊm/	n.	a flat device with narrow pointed teeth on one edge, used vt. to make one's hair tidy 梳子; to make one's hair tidy by using a comb 梳理
sweater	/ˈswetə /	n.	a knitted garment covering the upper part of the body 毛衣
wonderful	/ˈwʌndəfəl/	adj.	extraordinarily good 奇妙的, 很好的
pop	/pɒp/	vi.	to appear suddenly or unexpectedly 突然行动, 突然出现; to make a sharp explosive noise 爆开
case	/keɪs/	n.	a portable container for carrying several objects 盒子
deliver	/dɪˈlɪvə /	vt.	to bring to the end point 递送; to make a speech 发表 (演讲)
echo	/ˈekəʊ/	vi.	to say again or imitate 发出回声, 回响
stare	/steɪ/	vt.	to look with fixed eyes 盯着看, 凝视
crawl	/krɔ:l/	vi.	to move with one's hands also touching the ground 爬行
messy	/ˈmesi/	adj.	untidy and dirty 散乱的, 污秽的, 麻烦的
embarrassing	/ɪmˈbærəsɪŋ /	adj.	causing to feel shame 尴尬的
ring	/rɪŋ /	vt.	to make something such as phone or doorbell to make a noise 使……响
rejoin	/ˌriːˈdʒɔɪn/	vt.	join again 再加入
lip	/lɪp/	n.	fleshy folds of tissue as those surrounding the mouth 嘴唇
miserable	/ˈmɪzərəbl /	adj.	very unhappy 悲惨的; deserving or inciting pity 可怜的
silence	/ˈsaɪləns /	n.	the state of being silent 寂静, 安静

## Phrases and Expressions

call out	喊叫
put on	穿(衣); 摆(架子)
pop out of	突然出现
be stuck with	粘上; 无法摆脱……
be full of	充满
lily of the valley	[植] 铃兰
with all one's heart	全身心地



## Proper Names

Mimi	米米 (Miriam 的昵称) (f.)
Robert	罗伯特 (男名)
Rovere	罗维尔 (姓氏)
Limburger	比利时原产干酪之一种
Sally	萨莉 (女子名, Sarah 的昵称)
Thompson	汤普逊 (姓氏)
Montcalm	蒙特卡姆 (地名)

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) She could hardly believe it was happening.

*hardly prep.*

just, almost not 几乎不, 简直不, 刚刚

e.g. He was so weak that he could hardly stand.

他太虚弱了, 简直不能站立。

I can hardly finish the work.

我几乎无法完成工作了。

Hardly anyone came.

几乎没人来。

- 参考译文: 她几乎不能相信正在发生的事情。

### 2. (Para. 1) During the long wait she had wondered again and again what to wear, finally putting on her favorite blouse.

- 参考译文: 在漫长的等待过程中, 她一次又一次地思考要穿什么, 最后, 她穿上了她最喜爱的衬衫。

### 3. (Para. 1) Now at last Robert was here.

*now adv.*

at that time 当时

now 可以与过去时一起使用, 这时它的意义与用于现在时有所不同。

e.g. Now the earth was formless and empty.

那时地球完全不成形, 是空的。

- 参考译文: 终于, 罗伯特到了。

### 4. (Para. 1) His hair was neatly combed and he wore a yellow sweater she hadn't seen before.

1) 并列连词 and 引导并列分句; and 之前的分句和之后的分句分别说明他的头发和他的衣服。属于第一个层次的两个部分。

2) 关系代词 that/which (省略, 位于 sweater 和 she 之间) 引导定语从句。定语从句进一步说明他的衣服。这个定语从句属于比第二个分句低一层次的地位。



- 参考译文：他的头发梳得很有条理，身穿一件黄色汗衫，这件汗衫她以前从未见过。

5. (Para. 2) As they stepped out of the door, Mimi's mother popped out of the store and said hello to Robert.

- 参考译文：当他们跨出大门时，米米的母亲飞快地从商店里走出来向罗伯特问好。

6. (Para. 2) Then she put a package wrapped in white paper into Mimi's hand.

wrapped in white paper 为过去分词短语，在本句中作定语，它修饰的中心词是 package。

e.g. He bought a bag made in China.

他买了一个中国制造的包。

The picture owned by the teacher is very expensive.

那位老师拥有的那幅画非常昂贵。

I need a tool made of steel.

我需要一个钢制的工具。

- 参考译文：然后，她将一个用白纸包着的包裹放到米米手里。

7. (Para. 3) "Limburger cheese for Sally Thompson, Mimi. We got a case of imported Limburger in today. I promised Sally you'd deliver it tonight."

- 参考译文：“米米，这是给萨莉·汤普逊的比利时原产干酪。今天我们这来了一箱进口的比利时原产干酪。我答应过她你今天晚上把东西送过去”。

8. (Para. 4) Why not tomorrow?

本句为疑问省略句，口语中常用。

- 参考译文：明天不行吗？

9. (Para. 5) "Sorry, but I promised Sally," her mother said. "Well, have fun, you two."

- 参考译文：“不好意思，我答应过莎莉，”她母亲说道。“好了，你们两人玩儿得开心”。

10. (Para. 7) Her first date ever, her first date with Robert Rovere, and she was stuck with a large, smelly, messy package of cheese!

- 参考译文：这就是她有生以来的第一次约会，她与罗伯特·罗维尔的第一次约会，她竟然被一块气味浓烈、可恶的奶酪粘上了，不得脱身！

11. (Para. 9) She held the cheese in the hand farthest from him, but the smell seemed to be crawling up her arm.

- 参考译文：她用离他最远的那只手拿奶酪，但是那奶酪的气味似乎像蚂蚁一样爬上了她的手臂。

12. (Para. 10) Mimi didn't know the house number, but she thought she'd recognize the house because she'd passed there once before.

1) 并列连词 but 引导并列分句；

2) 连词 that (位于 thought 和 she 之间) 省略，引导宾语从句；

3) 连词 because 引导原因状语句。

- 参考译文：米米不知道门牌号码，但是她想，她认得那间房子，因为他以前来过一次。

13. (Para. 10) She rang the bell but nobody answered.

- 参考译文：她按了门铃，但没人回应。



14. (Para. 10) Then she noticed that the name under the bell wasn't Thompson.

- 参考译文: 之后, 她注意到门铃下写的房主的名字并非汤普森。

15. (Para. 10) She had come to the wrong house.

- 参考译文: 她走错了门。

16. (Para. 10) Oh, how embarrassing, she thought.

- 参考译文: 哦, 真尴尬, 她想。

17. (Para. 10) She dropped the cheese into her coat pocket and rejoined Robert.

- 参考译文: 她将奶酪丢进上衣口袋, 又和罗伯特走到一起了。

18. (Para. 13) She was so miserable she couldn't think of anything else to say, and she and Robert walked the rest of the way in a silence as thick as the bad smell of the cheese.

1) 连词 that (省略, 位于 miserable 和 she 之间) 引导结果状语从句;

2) 并列连词 but 引导并列分句。

- 参考译文: 她很可怜, 以致无法想出话来说。就这样和罗伯特在寂静中走完剩下的路。那份寂静太沉重了, 如同奶酪的味道一样浓烈。

19. (Para. 14) When they arrived at the dance, the place was full of people and there was no room to hang their coats.

- 参考译文: 当他们到达舞厅时, 里面已经挤满了人, 他们连挂上衣的地方都没有了。

20. (Para. 14) Mimi wanted to wash her hands, but Robert led her straight onto the dance floor.

- 参考译文: 米米想先洗手, 但是罗伯特直接带着她去了舞池。

21. (Para. 14) ... Robert smelled sweet.

smell a.

smell 的功能可以相当于连系动词。因此, 后面可以接形容词, 作主语表语, 如本句。

smell 还可以作实义动词, 其后接副词, 直接用来修饰动词 smell。

e.g. The dog smelled carefully.

那条狗仔细地闻着。

- 参考译文: 罗伯特身上闻起来有一股甜甜的味道。

22. (Para. 15) Robert's eyes were closed, probably trying to forget her and her smell, she thought.

- 参考译文: 罗伯特双眼紧闭, 或许正试图忘掉她还有她身上的味道, 她想。

## Text Comprehension

1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words according to the text.

The story tells about the 1) \_\_\_\_\_ date of Mimi and Robert. Mimi is looking 2) \_\_\_\_\_ to the date. At last, Robert appears, he looks 3) \_\_\_\_\_ to Mimi. Of course, she was 4) \_\_\_\_\_. But before they go, her mother asks her to send a 5) \_\_\_\_\_ to a customer's house. Mimi doesn't want to, but she must. They go together to the 6) \_\_\_\_\_'s



house, but she can't find it. They have to go with the cheese to a 7) \_\_\_\_\_. Mimi feels very 8) \_\_\_\_\_. She believes Robert tries to 9) \_\_\_\_\_ her by closing his eyes, and the 10) \_\_\_\_\_ of the cheese destroys her date.

## 2. Answer the following questions according to the text.

- 1) Is Mimi happy with the date? Why?
- 2) How did Robert look to Mimi?
- 3) What did Mimi's mother give to her when the girl stepped out of the door?
- 4) Was Mimi satisfied with the cheese? Why?
- 5) Must Mimi send the cheese the very evening?
- 6) Did Mimi and Robert like the smell of the cheese?
- 7) Did they find customer's house? What followed next?
- 8) How did Mimi feel in the dance hall?
- 9) Why did Mimi feel like that?

## 3. Decide whether the following statements are True or False according to the text.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) Mimi's grocery store is near her house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2) Mimi was so interested that it took her a long time to think of her favorite blouse to wear.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3) Mimi's mother sent a package of cheese to her so that the girl could treat it to the boy during the date.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4) The cheese was homemade and was delicious.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5) Mimi's mother was not satisfied with the boy, so she wanted to damage the date.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6) Neither Mimi nor Robert was satisfied with the smell of the cheese.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7) Even though Mimi couldn't remember the house number, she could recognize the house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8) Mimi rang the bell of a house, and then she realized she the name of the owner was not the person she wanted.

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

grocery	comb	wonderful	deliver	stare
crawl	messy	miserable	to put on	to be stuck with

- 1) I was greatly shocked by her \_\_\_\_\_ life.
- 2) The child \_\_\_\_\_ the stranger up and down.
- 3) The kid is 5 years old, and he can \_\_\_\_\_ his clothes all by himself.
- 4) There is a \_\_\_\_\_ across the street.
- 5) Avoid the guy! Once you \_\_\_\_\_ him, you will be in trouble.
- 6) Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ your hair before you go out.



- 7) The postman failed to \_\_\_\_\_ he package to me in time.  
8) Tom is really very clever: he always has \_\_\_\_\_ ideas.  
9) We learn to \_\_\_\_\_ before we learn to walk.  
10) Working underneath the car is always a \_\_\_\_\_ job.

2. The suffixes anti-, bi-, co-, extra-, im-, in-, inter-, micro-, mini- are very particular: they change the meaning of the roots, and most often they will not change the parts of speech of the roots.

前缀	含义	例词	
anti-	against 反对, 对抗	antibody, antitank	
bi-	two 二, 两个	bicycle, bipolar,	
co-,	together 一起, 共同	copilot, coordinate	
extra-	beyond, out 超出, 超越	extraordinary	
im-	in; into 进入, 使进入	import, imprison	
in-	in; into 进入, 使进入	inland	
inter-	between……之间	international, interlink	
micro-	small 小的, 微型的	Microsoft, microscope	
mini-	small 小的	minibus, miniskirt	

3. Fill in each of the blanks with an appropriate preposition or adverb.

- 1) The boat is passing \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge.  
2) We went to Nanjing \_\_\_\_\_ October, 1997.  
3) Taiwan is \_\_\_\_\_ the east of Fujian.  
4) \_\_\_\_\_ the morning of June 27, they visited the Great Wall.  
5) My room is \_\_\_\_\_ the third floor.  
6) They will leave a week \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
7) We often go to the park \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday morning.  
8) My aunt has worked in a clinic \_\_\_\_\_ 1949.  
9) The sewing machine is made \_\_\_\_\_ China.  
10) His father will be back from London \_\_\_\_\_ a few days.

## Structure

1. Study the model and rewrite the following sentences.

**Model:** The old house *that was built in 1700s* was destroyed by water last month.  
The old house *built in 1700s* was destroyed by water last month.



1) I can't understand the words that were written by Jack on the blackboard.

2) The water that was polluted by some chemicals made people very angry.

3) The train that is driven by the steam engine can stand the cold weather.

4) He still keeps the bag that was given to him by the girl.

5) Who can solve the question that was put out by Jane?

**2. Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English using "during".**

1) \_\_\_\_\_ (在春节期间), he waited anxiously for the news.

2) \_\_\_\_\_ (在伦敦逗留期间), I visited all the scenic spots there.

3) The fire started \_\_\_\_\_ (在工人吃饭时).

4) Anne lived in Amsterdam in the Netherlands \_\_\_\_\_ (在第二次世界大战期间).

5) Mobile phones were very rare in some rural areas \_\_\_\_\_ (在 20 世纪 80 年代和 90 年代).

## Comprehensive Exercises

**1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.**

Older people must be given more chances to learn if they are to contribute to society rather than be a financial burden, according to a new study on population published recently.

The current people approach which 1) \_\_\_\_\_ on younger people and on skills for employment is not adequate to meet the challenges of demographic (人口结构的) change, it says. Only 1% of the education budget is 2) \_\_\_\_\_ spent on the oldest third of the population.

The challenges include the fact that most people can expect to spend a third of their lives in 3) \_\_\_\_\_, that there are now more people over 59 than under 16 and that 11.3 million people are over state pension age.

"4) \_\_\_\_\_ needs to continue throughout life. Our historic concentration of policy attention and resource on young people cannot meet the new 5) \_\_\_\_\_," says the report's author, Professor Stephen McNair.

The major portion of our education budget is spent on people below the age of twenty-five. 6) \_\_\_\_\_ people are changing their jobs, homes, partners and lifestyles more often than 7) \_\_\_\_\_ they need opportunities to learn at every age. For example, some people are starting new careers in their 50s and later.



People need opportunities to make a “midlife review” to 8) \_\_\_\_\_ to the later stage of employed life, and to plan for the smooth transition (过渡) to retirement, which may now happen 9) \_\_\_\_\_ at any point from 50 to over 90, says McNair.

And there should be more money available to support people in establishing a 10) \_\_\_\_\_ of identity and finding constructive roles for the “third age”, the 20 or more years they will spend in healthy retired life.

- |                   |                  |                |               |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1) A. operates    | B. focuses       | C. counts      | D. depends    |
| 2) A. currently   | B. barely        | C. anxiously   | D. heavily    |
| 3) A. enjoyment   | B. retirement    | C. stability   | D. inability  |
| 4) A. Identifying | B. Learning      | C. Instructing | D. Practicing |
| 5) A. desires     | B. realms        | C. needs       | D. intentions |
| 6) A. When        | B. Until         | C. Whether     | D. Before     |
| 7) A. age         | B. ever          | C. previously  | D. formerly   |
| 8) A. transform   | B. yield         | C. adjust      | D. suit       |
| 9) A. unfairly    | B. unpredictably | C. instantly   | D. indirectly |
| 10) A. sense      | B. conscience    | C. project     | D. definition |

## 2. Translate the following sentences into English, making use of the phrases in brackets.

1) 汤姆朝她妻子喊叫道：“我要跟你离婚！”(to call out)

---

2) 当他冲出教室的时候，我吓了一跳。(to pop out of)

---

3) 我被这个问题缠住了。(to be stuck with)

---

4) 这个世界充满着爱。(to be full of)

---

5) 我将全身心地做这个事情。(with all one's heart)

---

## Part III Extensive Reading (I)

## Text B

### How People Meet and Date

1 There are a number of ways to find someone to date. Some people meet at work. Others meet by chance in a public place. Still others visit places where other single people go. Or they can use businesses that help organize dates. Many men and women find dates through



services they find on the Internet computer system.

2 The purpose of dating is to have fun. Sometimes people who date develop a close relationship. Some people decide to live together, yet remain unmarried. Others decide to get married.

3 In the past, young people in America usually lived with their parents until they got married. Today, some still do. Yet most young people live a more independent life. They have a job. They travel. They rent or own their own apartment or house. They wait longer to get married. While waiting, they date.

4 Often a friend will plan a meeting between two unmarried people who do not know each other. The friend thinks the two people will like each other. This is called a “blind date.” The people involved are not blind. They just have never seen each other. However, most unmarried people have to find their own dates. Many go to public eating, drinking or dancing places. Every city in America has them. Some places are popular with young people. Others are for older people.

5 Many Americans, however, want to go where they are sure they can meet people with similar interests. For example, they may go to a bookstore. Some bookstores in America serve coffee and food. Many offer special programs and social activities for single people. Other singles join health clubs or sports teams to get exercise and to meet people. Or, they may join groups for people who like to take long walks in the woods.

6 Some public eating and drinking places help plan dates for single people. At several such places in New York City, people can write answers to a series of questions about themselves. Then other people read the answers. If someone likes the answers, an employee sets up a date. This service costs a small amount of money.

7 A restaurant called Drip Café started using this system when it opened in New York in nineteen-ninety-six. Since then, the Drip Café has helped many people find someone to date. It was the first restaurant and date-organizing place in a group called Date Cafés. There are similar cafés in several other American cities.

8 Some businesses help single people meet other people. For example, Great Expectations has been organizing dates for about twenty-five years. It started in San Francisco, California. The company sends millions of letters a year to people throughout the country. The letters explain how the system works.

(452 words)

## New Words

public	/ 'pʌblik/	adj.	shared by all the people, not owned by a certain person 公共的
single	/ 'sɪŋgl/	adj.	not married or related to the unmarried state 单身的, 未婚的
organize	/ 'ɔ:gənaɪz/	vt.	cause to be structured or ordered or operating according to



			some principle or idea 组织
fun	/ fʌn/	<i>n.</i>	activities that are enjoyable or amusing 乐趣, 趣事
remain	/ ri'mein/	<i>vi.</i>	continue in a place, position, or situation 保持
rent	/ rent/	<i>vt.</i>	to use something of others by paying some money 租用
apartment	/ ə'pɑ:tmənt /	<i>n.</i>	a suite of rooms 公寓
involve	/ in'vɒlv/	<i>vi.</i>	to connect closely and often incriminatingly 涉及
bookstore	/ 'bukstɔ:/	<i>n.</i>	a shop where books are sold 书店
special	/ 'speʃəl/	<i>adj.</i>	particular or specific to a person or thing or type 独特的
program	/ 'prəʊgræm/	<i>n.</i>	a system of projects or services intended to meet a public need 项目
coffee	/ 'kɒfi/	<i>n.</i>	a drink that can refresh people 咖啡
health	/ helθ/	<i>n.</i>	the general condition of body and mind 健康
club	/ klʌb/	<i>n.</i>	an organization where a group of people with similar interests meet regularly 俱乐部
sport	/ spɔ:t/	<i>n.</i>	an active activity requiring physical strength and competition 体育运动
team	/ ti:m /	<i>n.</i>	a cooperative unit 团队
exercise	/ 'eksəsaiz/	<i>n.</i>	the activity of exerting your muscles in various ways to keep fit 运动, 活动
wood	/ wud/	<i>n.</i>	the trees and other plants in a large forest 森林
employee	/ ,emplɔ'i:/	<i>n.</i>	a worker who is hired to do a job 雇员
service	/ 'sə:vis /	<i>n.</i>	work done by one person or group that benefits another 服务
amount	/ ə'maunt /	<i>n.</i>	how much of something is available 量, 量的多少
restaurant	/ 'restərɒnt/	<i>n.</i>	a building where people go to eat 餐馆
drip	/drip/	<i>vi.</i>	to fall in drops 滴落
café	/kæ'fei /	<i>n.</i>	a public place where one can buy and drink a cup of coffee and can chat with others 咖啡馆
system	/ 'sistəm /	<i>n.</i>	a group of independent but interrelated elements comprising a unified whole 体系
group	/ gru:p /	<i>n.</i>	any number of entities (members) considered as a unit 群, 一 群人
several	/ 'sevərəl /	<i>adj</i>	(used with count nouns) of an indefinite number more than 2 or 3 but not many 数个
expectation	/ ,ekspek'teiʃən/	<i>n.</i>	the feeling that something is about to happen 期待
million	/ 'miljən /	<i>n.</i>	the number that is represented as a one followed by 6 zeros 百万

# Phrases and Expressions

blind date	之前约会者未曾谋面过的约会
by chance	偶然地

## Proper Names

San Francisco	旧金山（美国加利福尼亚州一城市）
---------------	------------------

## Notes

### 1. (Para. 1) Others meet by chance in a public place.

- 参考译文：许多人在公共场所偶然相遇。

### 2. (Para. 1) Still others visit places where other single people go.

- 参考译文：另外一些人去其他的单身人士去的地方。

### 3. (Para. 1) Or they can use businesses that help organize dates.

- 参考译文：或许他们还可以借助帮助他人组织约会的公司。

### 4. (Para. 1) Many men and women find dates through services they find on the Internet computer system.

*Through prep.*

by the means of 通过……方式

e.g. The two men fled through the back door and escaped from the police.

那两个人从后门跑了，逃脱了警察的追捕。

- 参考译文：许多男女通过他们在网上的计算机系统中找到的服务来寻找约会的对象。

### 5. (Para. 2) The purpose of dating is to have fun.

- 参考译文：约会的目的是找乐子。

### 6. (Para. 2) Sometimes people who date develop a close relationship.

- 参考译文：有时，约会的人会进一步产生亲近的关系。

### 7. (Para. 2) Some people decide to live together, yet remain unmarried.

- 参考译文：有时，人们决定住在一起而不结婚。

### 8. (Para. 2) Others decide to get married.

- 参考译文：另外一些人决定结婚。

### 9. (Para. 3) In the past, young people in America usually lived with their parents until they got married.

- 参考译文：过去，许多美国年轻人通常与他们的父母生活在一起，直到他们结婚。

### 10. (Para. 3) They rent or own their own apartment or house.

- 参考译文：他们要么租房，要么自己拥有自己的房子。

### 11. (Para. 4) Often a friend will plan a meeting between two unmarried people who do not know each other.



- 参考译文: 通常彼此不认识的两个未婚男女的共同的朋友会给他们安排一次约会。

**12. (Para. 5) Many Americans, however, want to go where they are sure they can meet people with similar interests.**

- 1) however 为句子副词, 连接上句和本句, 表示本句与上句是一个转折的关系。However 一词在句子中的位置可以在句首, 可以在句中, 也可以在句尾。

e.g. He likes sports very much. However, his wife likes quiet places.

他非常喜欢运动。但是, 他的妻子喜欢安静的地方。

- 2) 连词 where 引导地点状语从句, 该从句从 where 开始至 interests 结束。

- 3) they are sure 为插入语。

e.g. Who do you think is the best actor in China?

你认为中国最好的演员是谁?

- 参考译文: 然而, 许多美国人想去他们肯定可以遇见相同兴趣的人的地方。

**13. (Para. 5) Many offer special programs and social activities for single people.**

- 参考译文: 许多书店为单身人士提供特别的节目或社交活动。

**14. (Para. 5) Other singles join health clubs or sports teams to get exercise and to meet people.**

- 参考译文: 许多单身人士参加健康俱乐部或运动队, 用以参加锻炼和结交其他人。

**15. (Para. 5) Or, they may join groups for people who like to take long walks in the woods.**

- 参考译文: 或者, 他们加入那些喜欢在森林中长途跋涉的人群。

**16. (Para. 5) At several such places in New York City, people can write answers to a series of questions about themselves.**

- 参考译文: 在纽约的几个地方, 人们可以写下一系列与自己有关的问题的答案。

**17. (Para. 5) If someone likes the answers, an employee sets up a date.**

- 参考译文: 如果某人喜欢这些答案, 这些场所的员工会安排两人约会。

**18. (Para. 7) A restaurant called Drip Café started using this system when it opened in New York in nineteen-ninety-six.**

- 参考译文: 一个叫滴落的咖啡馆 1996 年在纽约开张时就开始使用这种模式。

**19. (Para. 8) For example, Great Expectations has been organizing dates for about twenty-five years.**

- 参考译文: 比如, 一个叫远大前程的公司 25 年来一直在为未婚人士安排约会。

## Exercises

**1. List the five ways by which Americans date according to the text.**

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) \_\_\_\_\_

**2. Complete the following sentences by using the words or phrases you have learned in this text.**

- 1) He was \_\_\_\_\_ in the bad situation.
- 2) Water \_\_\_\_\_ down from the ceiling (天花板).
- 3) Tom lives in an \_\_\_\_\_ building.
- 4) The dog waved its tail in \_\_\_\_\_ of a bone.
- 5) They got to know each other fully \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6) His wife arranged a \_\_\_\_\_ for Jack and Jane.

**3. Translate the following paragraph into Chinese.**

Often a friend will plan a meeting between two unmarried people who do not know each other. The friend thinks the two people will like each other. This is called a “blind date”. The people involved are not blind. They just have never seen each other. However, most unmarried people have to find their own dates. Many go to public eating, drinking or dancing places. Every city in America has them. Some places are popular with young people. Others are for older people.

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Part IV Extensive Reading (II)****Text C****Life in the Garden**

1 Cassandra Feeley finds it hard to manage on her husband's income. So this year she did something more than a hobby: She planted vegetables in her yard. For her first garden, Ms. Feeley has put in 15 tomato plants, and five rows of a variety of vegetables. The family's old farm house has become a chicken house, its residents arriving next month. Last year, Ms. Rita Gartin kept a small garden. This year she has made it much larger because, she said, “The cost of everything is going up and I was looking to lose a few pounds, too; so it's a win-win situation all around.”

2 They are among the growing number of Americans who, driven by higher living costs



and a falling economy, have taken up vegetables gardening for the first time. Others have increased the size of their existing gardens. Seed companies and garden shops say not since the 1970s has there been such an increase in interest in growing food at home. Now many gardens across the country have been sold out for several months. In Austin, Tex, some of the gardens have a three-year waiting list.

3 George C. Ball Jr., owner of a company, said sales of vegetables seeds and plants are up by 40% over last year, double the average growth of the last five years. Mr. Ball argues that some of the reasons have been building for the last few years. The big one is the striking rise in the cost of food like bread and milk, together with the increases in the price of fruits and vegetables. Food prices have increased because of higher oil prices. People are now driving less, taking fewer vacations, so there is more time to garden.

(292 words)

## New Words

hobby	/ 'hɒbi /	<i>n.</i>	the action that one is interested in and that one does usually 爱好、兴趣
vegetable	/ 'vedʒɪtəbl /	<i>n.</i>	edible seeds or roots or stems or leaves or bulbs or tubers or nonsweet fruits of any of numerous herbaceous plant 蔬菜
yard	/ jɑ:d /	<i>n.</i>	the enclosed land around a house or other building 庭院
tomato	/ tə 'mɑ:təu /	<i>n.</i>	mildly acid red or yellow pulpy fruit eaten as a vegetable 西红柿
plant	/ plɑ:nt /	<i>n.</i>	a living organism like a tree, a vegetable or a grass that cannot move 植物
row	/ rəu /	<i>n.</i>	an arrangement of objects or people side by side in a line 排
resident	/ 'rezɪdənt /	<i>n.</i>	someone who lives at a particular place for a prolonged period or who was born there 居民
situation	/ ,sɪtʃu'eɪʃən /	<i>n.</i>	the general state of things 场合
win-win	/ 'wɪnwɪn /	<i>adj.</i>	of the situation that both sides will gain 双赢的
double	/ 'dʌbl /	<i>vi.</i>	increase twofold 翻番
growth	/ grəuθ /	<i>n.</i>	a process of becoming larger or longer or more numerous or more important 生长
argue	/ 'ɑ:gju: /	<i>vt.</i>	present reasons and ideas 认为
striking	/ 'straɪkɪŋ /	<i>adj.</i>	having a quality that attracts attention 显著的
fruit	/ fru:t /	<i>n.</i>	the ripened reproductive body of a seed plant that can be used as food 水果
vacation	/ veɪ'keɪʃən /	<i>n.</i>	free time away from work that can be used to rest or to have a pleasure 假期

## Proper Names

Cassandra	卡珊多拉（女子名）
Feeley	菲利（姓氏）
Rita	丽塔（女子名）
Gartin	加廷（姓氏）
Austin	奥斯丁（姓氏或地名）
Tex	得克萨斯（美国一州名）
George	乔治（男子名）
Ball Jr.	小波尔（在父亲和儿子同名的场合，Jr.常用于儿子名前）

## Notes

1. (Para. 1) So this year she did something more than a hobby: She planted vegetables in her yard.

- 参考译文：所以，今年她做了一些事情，不仅仅是作为一个爱好：她在庭院里种了一些蔬菜。

2. (Para. 1) For her first garden, Ms. Feeley has put in 15 tomato plants, and five rows of a variety of vegetables.

- 参考译文：在她的第一个菜园中，菲利女士种了 15 棵西红柿，还有 5 排的其他各种蔬菜。

3. (Para. 1) The family's old farm house has become a chicken house, its residents arriving next month.

its residents arriving next month 为独立结构。独立结构是自带逻辑主语的非谓语动词短语，在句中往往作状语。

e.g. *Weather permitting*, I will go to visit you.

天气允许的话，我就来拜访你。

*All the work finished*, the workers went back home.

所有的工作都完成了，工人们就回家了。

*An important lecture to be given tomorrow*, the professor has to stay up late into the night.

明天有重要课要讲，教授不得不开夜车到很晚。

- 参考译文：家里的老房子已成为鸡舍，其居民将于下月到来。

4. (Para. 2) This year she has made it much larger because, she said, "The cost of everything is going up and I was looking to lose a few pounds, too; so it's a win-win situation all around."

1) 连词 *because* 引导原因状语从句，从句从 *she said* 开始直至句尾，整个直接引语为谓语动词 *said* 的宾语。

2) 连词 *and* 引导并列的分句，单词 *too* 更进一步点明两分句为并列关系。



3) 连词 so 引导另一个并列分句, 表示原因。so 引导的分句与 and 引导的两个并列分句是因果关系。

- 参考译文: 今年, 她把菜园整得比去年大多了。她说: “因为一切费用都在上涨, 我希望能减去几磅的体重, 所以这完全是双赢的事情”。

5. (Para. 2) They are among the growing number of Americans who, driven by higher living costs and a falling economy, have taken up vegetables gardening for the first time.

1) 关系代词 who 引导定语从句。

2) driven by higher living costs and a falling economy 从形式上看是过去分词短语; 从语法功能上看是状语; 该短语被两个逗号隔开, 所以, 它又是一个插入语。

- 参考译文: 他们一家属于不断增长的美国人中的一个: 这些美国人被不断增长的生活成本和下滑的经济形势所逼, 第一次种植自己的菜园。

6. (Para. 2) Seed companies and garden shops say not since the 1970s has there been such an increase in interest in growing food at home.

本句中, say 后面省略了一个连词 that。that 引导的是一个宾语从句。在宾语从句中, not since 引出一个时间状语, 与此对应, 其后的形式主语 there 与谓语动词形成部分倒装, 以引起强调。

- 参考译文: 种子公司和园艺商店说直到 20 世纪 70 年代, 人们在家中种菜的兴趣才开始浓厚起来。

7. (Para. 2) Now many gardens across the country have been sold out for several months.

- 参考译文: 现在, 全国各地的许多菜园已被租售出几个月了。

8. (Para. 2) In Austin, Tex, some of the gardens have a three-year waiting list.

- 参考译文: 在得克萨斯州的奥斯丁, 一些菜园后排起了长长的买主名单, 都排到 3 年以后去了。

9. (Para. 3) George C. Ball Jr., owner of a company, said sales of vegetables seeds and plants are up by 40% over last year, double the average growth of the last five years.

- 参考译文: 一家公司的老板小乔治·C·波尔说, 蔬菜种子和种苗的销售比去年上升了 40%, 与过去 5 年的平均增速相比, 翻了一番。

10. (Para. 3) Mr. Ball argues that some of the reasons have been building for the last few years.

- 参考译文: 波尔先生认为在过去的几年, 一些因素累积在一起。

11. (Para. 3) The big one is the striking rise in the cost of food like bread and milk, together with the increases in the price of fruits and vegetables.

- 参考译文: 一个主要原因是诸如面包和牛奶这样的食品涨价幅度大, 同时蔬菜和水果的价格也在上涨。

12. (Para. 3) Food prices have increased because of higher oil prices.

- 参考译文: 食品价格上涨时因为油价上涨。

13. (Para. 3) People are now driving less, taking fewer vacations, so there is more time to garden

- 参考译文: 如今, 人们比以前开车少了, 度假少了, 因此有更多的时间用于种菜。





## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 邀请与回应

不管是在中国还是在外国，都有向别人发出邀请的时候。在英语中，邀请有一定的套语。对于回答，我们知道，如果是肯定的回答，往往直截了当；如果是否定的回答，往往比较含蓄，不可直截了当，而且需要说明不能接受邀请的原因。

#### Key Sentences

- ✧ —Would you like to do……?  
—I'd love to, thanks.
- ✧ —Would you be interested in doing……?  
—That's very kind of you, thanks.
- ✧ —How do you fancy doing……?  
—I am afraid I can't. Thank you anyway!
- ✧ —I'd like to invite you to somewhere.  
—That sounds lovely, thanks.
- ✧ —I'd like to invite you to do something.  
—What a great idea, thanks.
- ✧ —Would you like to come for a meal this weekend?  
—That's very kind of you, but actually I'm doing something else at that time.
- ✧ —Would you like to go to the cinema with me?  
—I'm really sorry, but I've got something else to do.
- ✧ —How about joining our party?  
—I really don't think I can — I'm supposed to be doing something else.



- ◇ —How about going to the teahouse together?  
—Well, I'd love to, but I'm already going out to the cinema.

### Practice

Choose the answer that best completes each dialogue.

- 1) —Would you like to go dancing with us?  
—Oh, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. thank you  
B. thank you very much  
C. yes, I would  
D. yes, of course
- 2) —I'd like to invite you to our Christmas party.  
—I'd love to, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. but no  
B. but I have something important to deal with  
C. but thank you  
D. I really appreciate your invitation
- 3) —How do you fancy going out for a meal at the weekend?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. It sounds great  
B. Oh, I will consider the idea seriously  
C. No  
D. Yes
- 4) —How about singing a song for us?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Who do you think you are?  
B. No, I don't want to.  
C. I really want to, but I have a sore throat.  
D. I am sorry.
- 5) — \_\_\_\_\_.  
—That's very kind of you, thanks.  
A. I'd like to invite you to my house.  
B. How about watching the movie with me?  
C. Would you like to go to a concert with me?  
D. How about cycling with us?

## Grammar

### 介词

介词是虚词的一种。preposition 的本意为“……位置之前”。从它的本意可以看出，介词位于其他的词之前，不能单独使用。在英语中，介词的用法非常复杂。它有强大的搭配能力，



几乎可以和其他的所有词类结合使用。

## 一、介词分类

### 1. 简单介词

about, across, after, against, among, around, at, before, behind, below, beside, besides, between, beyond, but, by, down, during, except, for, from, in, like, of, off, on, over, near, past, round, since, through, till, to, towards, under, until, till, up, with, per, via

### 2. 合成介词

Inside, into, onto, out of, outside, throughout, upon, within, without

### 3. 成语介词

According to, along with, apart from, as for, because of, by means of, in front of, in spite of, instead of, in accordance with, on account of, on behalf of, owing to, due to, together with, up to, with regard to, next to, prior to 等

## 二、介词短语在句中的作用

### 1. 状语

I get up *at 7 everyday*.

He went to school *on foot*.

Man can't live *without water*.

I met her *at the entrance*.

### 2. 定语

The fish *with a long tail* is delicious.

He refused to answer the question *of the journalists*.

He met a girl *in pink* yesterday.

The products *on display* are of good quality.

### 3. 表语

The news is *out of date*.

The plane is *off the ground*.

The book is *of great importance to us*.

The book is *on the desk*.

## 三、扩展

介词的用法是如此复杂，因此学好它要下苦功夫。首先要了解一些主要介词的基本意思，作为一个立脚点，同时应注意介词与其他词的搭配。下面以不同的介词与动词 *die* 的搭配为例说明用好介词，十分细微的意义差别也可以表达清楚。

*to die from* 通常指在外因的影响或作用下而死，一般不表示自身原因，常与下列词语做宾语：*blow, wound, overwork, hunger, weakness, cause, cold...*

*to die through* 常用于“不小心”、“怠慢”、“疏忽”等情况，常接 *neglect, negligence, fault, carelessness...*



to die of 往往表示心理或情绪上的原因。表死亡时多用于疾病,也可用于劳累,饥饿,年老等原因。该词常接 disease, illness, sorrow, old age, fever 等。

to die for 表原因,用于主管因素引起的情况,多指“为……事业”、“为……目的”而死。如: for one's faith, for one's country, for the cause...

to die with 表示原因,因外界情况影响到生理上或心理上的变化,常用于因高度的愤怒,极端的忧郁,疯狂的思想,极度的恐惧而致死。后接: horror, over-joy, anger...

to die in 表示的原因不离开 in 的本意,常接 battle, one's bed, poverty, child birth, one's boots, accident, agony, water...

to die on 表死因,多用于被杀,如: the scaffold, battlefield, one's own sword.

to die by 既有内因又有外因,如: to die by one's own hand, to die by the hand of another man, to die by hanging, to die by violence, to die by some poison, to die by sickness...

### Exercise

Choose the best answer for each of the following sentence.

- 1) "How long has this bookshop been in business?" "\_\_\_\_\_ 1982."  
A. After                                      B. In                                      C. From                                      D. Since
- 2) Do you know any other foreign language \_\_\_\_\_ English?  
A. besides                                      B. but                                      C. beside                                      D. except
- 3) He slept well \_\_\_\_\_ all the windows open.  
A. when                                      B. while                                      C. with                                      D. because
- 4) We need fifteen more people \_\_\_\_\_ our team to do the job.  
A. but                                      B. except                                      C. as well                                      D. besides
- 5) The sewing machine is made \_\_\_\_\_ China.  
A. of                                      B. on                                      C. in                                      D. from
- 6) A fish can't live \_\_\_\_\_ water.  
A. with                                      B. at                                      C. in                                      D. without
- 7) My room is \_\_\_\_\_ the third floor.  
A. at                                      B. on                                      C. in                                      D. to
- 8) We went to Nanjing \_\_\_\_\_ October, 1997.  
A. in                                      B. on                                      C. at                                      D. to
- 9) Nothing is too difficult if you put your heart \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. in                                      B. at                                      C. into                                      D. to
- 10) It is very kind \_\_\_\_\_ you to give me the present.  
A. of                                      B. for                                      C. from                                      D. with
- 11) The little girl saw a beautiful bird \_\_\_\_\_ the tree.  
A. on                                      B. in                                      C. into                                      D. at
- 12) There is a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the river.  
A. on                                      B. at                                      C. below                                      D. over



- 13) \_\_\_\_\_ all the stars, the sun is the nearest to the earth.  
A. Of B. In C. With D. Among
- 14) I am sure he'll be back \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.  
A. after B. in C. for D. to
- 15) There is a railway \_\_\_\_\_ these two cities.  
A. between B. among C. in D. at
- 16) The plane has just flown \_\_\_\_\_ my head.  
A. on B. over C. above D. at
- 17) There is no hole \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.  
A. on B. in C. at D. over
- 18) Mrs. Green has lived \_\_\_\_\_ London \_\_\_\_\_ ten years.  
A. at, for B. in, since C. in, for D. on, by
- 19) My teacher often helps me \_\_\_\_\_ my English, \_\_\_\_\_ her help, I have caught up \_\_\_\_\_ the class.  
A. with, under, with B. with, with, with C. of, with, to D. in, under, with
- 20) The result is \_\_\_\_\_ our imagination.  
A. beyond B. at C. in D. on

# Writing Skills

## Unity, Coherence, Brevity

段落是由句子组成的。各个句子必须遵循一定的规律才能成为一个有机的整体，也就是一个段落。

## 1. 统一 (Unity)

Unity 是从段落的内容切入的。如果一个段落中所有的句子都指向一个中心主题，那么，该段就是统一的。这个主题就是段落的主题句。有个比喻“月照万川”可以说明这个问题。世界上的河流可以多到一万条，每条河流的大小、流向、流量等各不相同，但是，它们都在月亮的照耀之下，而从任意一条河流都可以看到月亮高高地挂在空中。

主题句的位置可以在段首，可以在段中，可以在断尾，还可能没有出现。主题句位于段首的好处是可以开门见山，给读者指明下文发展的方向。见下例：

Smoking cigarettes is harmful to your health. Several years ago, a United States government study said that cancer in laboratory animals was linked with the intake of tar and nicotine, found in cigarettes. The evidence was so shocking that the United States government required cigarette manufacturers to put a warning on the outside of each package of cigarettes, which says, “Warning: The Surgeon General has determined that cigarettes is hazardous to your health.” Aside from the



most serious and dreaded disease — cancer, cigarettes smoking also can bring or promote other health problems. For example, smoking can increase the discomfort for people with some breathing problems. It can give one a “smoker’s cough” and lead to bronchitis (支气管炎). Finally, recent studies have shown that cigarette smokers are more likely to catch common colds and flu. Whether you get an insignificant cold or the major killer, cancer, smoking cigarettes is harmful. Is it worth it?

主题句位于段中，一般是告诉读者一个问题的两个方面，起到过渡句的作用。该段落的前一部分说明问题的一方面，逐步导向主题句；后一部分从主题句出发，继续阐述问题的另一方面：

Housekeeping department as a whole is required to make the guests’ stay comfortable and pleasing. Any reasonable request must be fulfilled. But good service means more than fulfilling. What’s more, whenever there is an opportunity to “sell”, the staff should take it and suggest that guests use the hotel services as much as possible. And they should make sure that they are really selling what the guests want.

主题句位于段尾来总结前面所述的内容；若出现在记叙文中，主题则是用来对事物的评价和思考：

Today the T-shirt can be seen everywhere and on everyone. Women and little children wear T-shirt as do teenagers, university students, and men from all walks of life. T-shirts are worn on playground, at the beach or in town. They can also be worn for work. Yet T-shirts remain relatively inexpensive and longwearing, as well as easy to care for. Smart but comfortable and convenient to wear, they have become one of America’s newest ideas on fashion.

隐含在段落内容之中。这种情况主要体现在叙述和描写的段落中。叙述的段落更倾向于让读者自己发现作者所要传达的内涵；描写的段落一般都很具体，不会再用主题句。

Advertisements give recent information about products. If there were no advertising, people could not know about goods in shops. Advertising helps to make a bigger market. Therefore as more goods are sold, they are cheaper. Advertisements also offer money for newspapers, magazines, radios and TV stations.

## 2. 连贯 (Coherence)

Coherence 是从形式或组织的角度切入段落的。段落中的诸句子应当以清晰、逻辑的顺序排列，而且句子之间的过渡应平稳自然。这样，读者就很容易找到作者的思路并理解作者的想法。常用的段落组织方式及标记词有：

组 织 模 式	标 记 词
空间关系	left to right, up to down, north to south, right, left, up, down, above, below
时间顺序	at first, after that, finally, once, earlier, now, eventually
举例	for example, for instance, such as, in this case, to illustrate, that is, in other words
比较异同	in comparison, like similarly, likewise, to compare, in contrast, on the other hand, however, nevertheless

续表

组 织 模 式	标 记 词
因果关系	because, for, due to, therefore, as a result, consequently, the reason
列举事实	first, second, third, one, another, moreover, furthermore, finally
下定义	it means, in other words, be

3. 简洁 (Brevity)

Brevity 同样是写作的一个非常重要的要求。当今世界已经进入信息时代，如何用最少的符号来传递最多的信息是简洁原则关注的问题。目前，国家上的很多的文件是由英语完成的，即使是联合国的文件或公约，也遵循一条类似的原则：简单英语。这条原则要求作者用最简洁的语言说明问题，去除任何不必要的单词，尽可能使用最短的句子。

Exercise

Find out the organizational modes of each of the following paragraph.

- 1) The child is very clever. His mathematics teacher once asked the whole class a question. The child answered it without thinking it for a minute. The other students didn't each know how to start. There is another example. Somebody asked a question as follows: there were 7 birds on a tree. A hunter killed one by shooting a gun. How many birds were there on the trees? The child answered immediately: "Zero!"
- 2) Our first impression is that the two girls are twins. They are of the same clothes, the same shoes, the same hairstyle, the same height. The most important thing is that they look alike. But, one can still find there are differences between them if you pay a little attention to them: One is a little fatter than the other; the face of one is a little longer than the other...
- 3) The teacher discussed 3 questions with us today. The first one is how to make a fire only by using the ice. Secondly, we learned which small animals can serve as our foods. Thirdly, we know how we can obtain clean water. The knowledge is really very useful to us.
- 4) The campus is located by a lake. When you enter the entrance, you can see on the left a tall building, and that is the library. On you right, the sports ground. At the end of the road facing the entrance, you can find a hill...
- 5) It was reported that big holes were found in some parts of Chongqing. Some scientist went there. They studied the holes. They found the place had been dug for geological (地质) reasons before. As the time went by, the soil covering the holes was brought away by underground water little by little. At last, the holes appeared.



- 6) They turned onto Montcalm Street. Mimi didn't know the house number, but she thought she'd recognize the house because she'd passed there once before. "Oh, here it is." She rang the bell but nobody answered. Then she noticed that the name under the bell wasn't Thompson. She had come to the wrong house. Oh, how embarrassing, she thought. She dropped the cheese into her coat pocket and rejoined Robert.
- 
- 7) What is a lemur? A lemur is a kind of monkey that looks like a fox. The animal lives in Madagascar.
-



# Online Life

## Part I Pre-reading

Nowadays, we are in an information age. Computers and Internet play an important role in our life. But, we have to admit they have their advantages as well as disadvantages: We can get useful information quickly and easily, whereas we can also get the useless or even harmful information in large amount. How can we make full use of information poses a problem to the common people as well as to the scientists?

### Questions

- 1) How would your life be changed if there were no Internet tomorrow?
- 2) How often do you surf the Internet? What kinds of information do you usually get from the Internet?

## Part II Intensive Reading

### Text A

### Will Computers Affect Personal Relations?

- 1 Personal computers and the Internet give people new choices about how to spend their time.
- 2 Some may use this freedom to share less time with certain friends or family members, but new technology will also let them stay in closer touch with those they care most about.



I know this from personal experience.

3 E-mail makes it easy to work at home, and now I spend most weekends and evenings on e-mails. My working hours aren't necessarily much shorter than they once were, but I spend fewer of them at the office. This lets me share more time with my young daughter than I might have if she'd been born before electronic mail became such a practical tool.

4 The Internet also makes it easy to share thoughts with a group of friends. People who haven't used e-mail much may think it sounds like a useless form of communication, but fans of e-mail know how personal it can be.

5 Say you do something fun — see a great movie, perhaps — and there are four or five friends who might want to hear about it. You want to share your experience with them all but you don't have the time to call them all up, one at a time, to talk about it. If you call each one, you'll play phone tag and you may tire of telling the story.

6 With e-mail, you just write one note about your experience, at your convenience, and address it to all the friends you think might be interested. They can read your message when they have time, and read only as much as they want to. They can reply at their convenience, and you can read what they have to say at your convenience.

7 Sometimes I e-mail a group of friends a message that I wouldn't bother sending to just one. Being able to reach several friends at once makes it worthwhile.

8 E-mail is also an inexpensive way to stay in close touch with people who live far away. More than a few parents use e-mail to keep in touch, even daily touch, with their children off at college.

9 Personal electronic messages can include more than text. Audio and even video can be included. For me, the most fun is to send and receive pictures.

10 It's a lot of trouble to send photographic prints to people today; you have to get the film processed, get extra prints made, address the envelopes and mail them. I don't send photos by mail very often, and I rarely get them that way.

11 But friends who have digital cameras send images to me by e-mail all the time. They snap a photo, upload it to their PC and zap it to me. Just a year ago, this didn't happen much, but it does now. It's great!

12 We just have to keep in mind that computers and the Internet offer another way of staying in touch. They don't eliminate any of the old ways.

(494 words)

## New Words

computer	/kəm'pjʊ:tə/	<i>n.</i>	a machine for performing calculations automatically 计算机
technology	/tek'nɒlədʒi/	<i>n.</i>	the practical application of science to commerce or industry 技术



daughter	/ 'dɔ:tə /	<i>n.</i>	the female child of somebody 女儿
electronic	/ ilek'trɒnik /	<i>adj.</i>	concerned with or using devices that operate on principles governing the behavior of electrons 电子的
practical	/ 'præktikəl /	<i>adj.</i>	concerned with actual use or practice 实用的
fan	/ fæn /	<i>n.</i>	an enthusiastic devotee of something (影、球) 迷
tag	/tæg/	<i>n.</i>	a label made of cardboard or plastic or metal 标签, 附属物; a game in which one child chases the others; the one who is caught becomes the next chaser 捉人游戏
message	/ 'mesidʒ /	<i>n.</i>	a communication (usually brief) that is written or spoken or signaled 消息, 信息; the important information to be transferred by an article 要点, 寓意
worthwhile	/ 'wə: θ'wail /	<i>a.</i>	sufficiently valuable to justify the investment of time or interest 值得做的
bother	/ 'bɒðə /	<i>vi.</i>	take the trouble to do something 惹麻烦
audio	/ 'ɔ:diəu/	<i>n.</i>	the audible part of a transmitted signal 音频; the sound equipment 音响设备
video	/ 'vidiəu/	<i>n.</i>	the visible part of a television transmission 录像, 视频
photographic	/ ,fəutə'græfɪk/	<i>adj.</i>	relating to photography or obtained by using photography 摄影的; representing people or nature with the exactness and fidelity of a photograph 逼真的
envelope	/ 'enviləup/	<i>n.</i>	a flat rectangular paper container for letters 信袋
		<i>vt.</i>	to put something into an envelope 封……入袋
digital	/ 'didʒitəl/	<i>adj.</i>	of a circuit or device that represents its features in numbers 数字的, 数码的; relating to or performed with the fingers 手指的, 计数的
camera	/ 'kæməərə/	<i>n.</i>	a device that can take photos 照相机; advice that can record and play continuous photos and sounds 摄像机
image	/ 'imidʒ/	<i>n.</i>	a picture-like mental representation 印象; a personal impression that one presents to the world 形象
upload	/ ʌp'ləud /	<i>vt.</i>	transfer a file or program to a central computer from a smaller computer or a computer at a remote location 上传
snap	/ snæp/	<i>vi.</i>	to move or strike with a noise 快速做……事; to take photos 拍摄
zap	/ zæp/	<i>vt.</i>	to move quickly 快速移动
eliminate	/ i'limineit/	<i>vt.</i>	to get rid of 除去; to do away with 剔除; not to take into consideration 忽略, 淘汰



## Phrases and Expressions

share with	与……共享
play tag	玩追逐游戏
tire of	对……厌倦
at one's convenience	在方便时
in close touch with	与……紧密地联系

## Notes

1. (Para. 1) Personal computers and the Internet give people new choices about how to spend their time.

- 参考译文: 个人计算机和互联网在支配时间方面给了人们新的选择。

2. (Para. 2) Some may use this freedom to share less time with certain friends or family members, but new technology will also let them stay in closer touch with those they care most about.

- 参考译文: 一些人会利用这种自由, 结果与朋友或家人相处的时间更少, 但是新的技术同样会让他们与最关心的人更加紧密地相处。

3. (Para. 2) I know this from personal experience.

- 参考译文: 我从个人的经历中学到了这个。

4. (Para. 3) E-mail makes it easy to work at home, and now I spend most weekends and evenings on e-mails.

- 参考译文: 电子邮件使得人们在家工作更容易, 现在我大部分的周末和晚上都花在收发电子邮件上了。

5. (Para. 3) My working hours aren't necessarily much shorter than they once were, but I spend fewer of them at the office.

*not necessarily*

否定转移, 这时, not 用来否定 necessarily。这样的情形在英语中很多。

e.g. I didn't marry him because he was rich.

我嫁给他并非因为他富有。

He didn't die happily.

他没得好死。

- 参考译文: 我的工作时间并不必然比从前的短很多, 但是我在办公室花的时间更少。

6. (Para. 3) This lets me share more time with my young daughter than I might have if she'd been born before electronic mail became such a practical tool.

- 1) 连词 than 引导一个比较状语从句, 从句的谓语为虚拟语气。这里真实的情形与虚拟的情形进行比较。

- 2) 连词 if 引导条件状语从句, 虚拟语气。



3) 连词 **before** 引导时间状语从句。

- **参考译文：**假如我女儿在电子邮件成为一个实用的工具之前出生，我拥有的与她相处的时间，同我现在与她相处的时间相比，后者会更多，这让我有更多的时间与她相处。

**7. (Para. 4) People who haven't used e-mail much may think it sounds like a useless form of communication, but fans of e-mail know how personal it can be.**

1) 关系代词 **who** 引导定语从句，用来修饰和限定名词 **people**。

2) 并列连词 **but** 引导并列分句，**but** 之前为一个分句，之后为另一个分句，两者为转折关系。

3) 连词 **how** 引导宾语从句。

4) 连词 **that** 省略，其位置处于 **think** 和 **it** 之间，引导宾语从句。

- **参考译文：**没怎么用过电子邮件的人会认为它听起来像一种无用的交流方式，但是电子邮件的粉丝们知道它是多么的人性化。

**8. (Para. 5) Say you do something fun — see a great movie, perhaps — and there are four or five friends who might want to hear about it.**

1) 连词 **and** 引导表示并列关系的分句。

2) 关系代词 **who** 引导定语从句。

3) **to hear about** 听到，获悉（指间接地听到，获得）。

4) 两个破折号之间的成分为插入语，解释前面的部分 **do something fun**。

- **参考译文：**比如说你做一些有趣的事情——或许是看一场大片——而且还有四五个朋友想听听你的看法。

**9. (Para. 5) You want to share your experience with them all but you don't have the time to call them all up, one at a time, to talk about it.**

- **参考译文：**你想与他们所有人分享你的经历，但是你没有时间给他们一个一个打电话来谈论这个经历。

**10. (Para. 5) If you call each one, you'll play phone tag and you may tire of telling the story.**

- **参考译文：**如果你给每个人都打电话，你就像是在玩电话追逐游戏，你可能会对讲这个故事感到厌倦的。

**11. (Para. 6) With e-mail, you just write one note about your experience, at your convenience, and address it to all the friends you think might be interested.**

1) **you think** 整个句子作为插入语；

2) 关系代词 **who** 省略，其本应在 **friendship** 和 **might** 之间。

- **参考译文：**有了电子邮件，你只需要在你方便时将你的经历简单地写一下，然后将它发给你认为可能对其感兴趣的所有朋友。

**12. (Para. 6) They can read your message when they have time, and read only as much as they want to.**

1) 连词 **when** 引导时间状语从句；

2) 连词 **as** 引导方式状语从句。

- **参考译文：**他们可以在有时间时阅读你的信息，而且想读多少就读多少。

**13. (Para. 6) They can reply at their convenience, and you can read what they have to say at your convenience.**



- 参考译文: 他们可以在他们方便的时候回复, 而你也可以在你方便的时候读他们对你说的话。

**14. (Para. 7) Sometimes I e-mail a group of friends a message that I wouldn't bother sending to just one.**

1) 关系代词 *that* 引导定语从句, 用于修饰和限制名词 *message*。

2) *bother* 的用法:

*to bother doing something* 或 *to bother to do something*

*e.g.* You needn't bother to come to my office.

你不必特地来我办公室。

Who would bother doing this?

谁会劳神做这件事情呢?

- 参考译文: 有时, 我给朋友们群发信息, 这样我就不必劳神给他们一个一个地发了。

**15. (Para. 8) E-mail is also an inexpensive way to stay in close touch with people who live far away.**

- 参考译文: 电子邮件还是一个廉价的与远方的人们保持联系的方法。

**16. (Para. 8) More than a few parents use e-mail to keep in touch, even daily touch, with their children off at college.**

- 参考译文: 许多父母通过电子邮件的方式与他们在外地上大学的儿女保持联系, 甚至是日常联系。

**17. (Para. 10) It's a lot of trouble to send photographic prints to people today; you have to get the film processed, get extra prints made, address the envelopes and mail them.**

- 参考译文: 今天, 如果给人传送冲洗出来的图片, 那将是非常麻烦的事情; 你必须对胶片进行处理、冲洗, 在信封上写下地址, 然后邮寄给他们。

**18. (Para. 10) I don't send photos by mail very often, and I rarely get them that way.**

- 参考译文: 我通常不是邮寄照片, 我也很少以这种方式获得照片。

**19. (Para. 11) But friends who have digital cameras send images to me by e-mail all the time.**

- 参考译文: 但是, 有数码摄像机的朋友总在通过电子邮件给我发送图片信息。

**20. (Para. 11) They snap a photo, upload it to their PC and zap it to me.**

- 参考译文: 他们照一个快照, 上传到他们的个人电脑, 然后传给我。

## Text Comprehension

**1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words according to the text.**

New technology in computer and Internet 1) \_\_\_\_\_ people many conveniences. One does not 2) \_\_\_\_\_ work less time, but one has less time in office. If one uses e-mail, it is very convenient. For example, if one needs to tell something to a 3) \_\_\_\_\_ of friends, one can send just one e-mail to all of them all at once. One does not need to call them one 4) \_\_\_\_\_ one. If one sends an e-mail to one's friend, the friend can read and answer it 5) \_\_\_\_\_ any



time he wants. Some parents used e-mail to keep in 6) \_\_\_\_\_ with their children off in college. Personal electronic messages can include more than 7) \_\_\_\_\_, because audio and even video can be included. To send photographic prints, one has a lot of trouble: to get the film processed, to get extra prints made, to address the 8) \_\_\_\_\_ and to mail them. To send a photo by e-mail, one only has to snap a photo by a digital camera, 9) \_\_\_\_\_ it to the PC and send it. One just has to keep in mind that computers and the Internet offer another way of staying in touch. They don't 10) \_\_\_\_\_ any of the old ways.

## 2. Answer the following questions according to the text.

- 1) Why some people spend less time with their friends and relatives?
- 2) How does the author know the new technology will make some friends stay with closer touch with each other?
- 3) On what does the author spend most of the time on weekends and evenings?
- 4) Does the author always work longer hour than he did before?
- 5) Why does the author now spend more time with the young daughter?
- 6) What's the advantage of e-mail?
- 7) Why do some people keep in touch with their children off at college by e-mail?
- 8) Why sending a printed photo nowadays is considered rather complicated?
- 9) Will the new ways to do things by computer and Internet eliminate the old ways?

## 3. Decide whether the following statements are True or False according to the text.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) Personal computers and the Internet give people new choices about how to spend their time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2) E-mail makes it easy to work at home.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3) The author's daughter was born before electronic mail became such a practical tool.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4) People who haven't used e-mail much may think it sounds like a useless form of communication.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5) With the e-mail, the author doesn't have to play phone tag and to tell the story to his friends one by one.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6) For the author, the most fun is to send and receive pictures.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7) To have the printed photos ready, one even has to see a film.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8) Computers and the Internet offer another way of staying in touch.

## Vocabulary

### 1. Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

affect

audio

photographic

digital

camera

envelope

tire of

tag

eliminate

at one's convenience



- 1) I invite you to visit my house \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2) Could you lend me an \_\_\_\_\_ to hold my letter?
  - 3) The cat has \_\_\_\_\_ most of the rats in the house.
  - 4) The tax increases have \_\_\_\_\_ us all.
  - 5) There's a price \_\_\_\_\_ beside the piano.
  - 6) He must be a journalist. We can see he carries some equipment about him, including a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7) I \_\_\_\_\_ eating the dish again and again.
  - 8) The effects of the \_\_\_\_\_ are excellent: one can even hear very low sounds.
  - 9) I have to ensure all \_\_\_\_\_ material is properly packed and sent by recorded delivery.
  - 10) There's a \_\_\_\_\_ watch on the table.
2. The suffixes multi-, over-, post-, pre-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-, tri-, under- are very particular: they change the meaning of the roots, and most often they will not change the parts of speech of the roots.

前 缀	含 义	例 词	
multi-	many 许多	multinational, multiracial	
over-	beyond 超过, 过度	overdo, overestimate	
post-	after 之后的	postwar, postgraduate	
pre-	before 之前的	pre-read, pre-historical	
re-	backward; again 后面的, 再一次	rewrite, relocate	
sub-	under; behind 之下的	submarine, subway	
super-	above; greater than 超级, 超越	supermarket, superstar	
trans-	across 穿越, 穿过	trans-Atlantic	
tri-	three 三	tricycle, tripod	
under-	below 之下的, 不足的	underestimate, underpriced	

3. Fill in the blanks with the suitable preposition or adverb.

- 1) We need fifteen more people \_\_\_\_\_ our team to do the job.
- 2) My uncle lives \_\_\_\_\_ 105 Beijing Street.
- 3) He slept well \_\_\_\_\_ all the windows open.
- 4) I don't think you can finish the work \_\_\_\_\_ my help.
- 5) No one knew Mr. Benson's address \_\_\_\_\_ his daughter.
- 6) Your new suit will be ready \_\_\_\_\_ two days.
- 7) It happened to be very cold \_\_\_\_\_ the morning of our sports meet..
- 8) Do you know any other foreign language \_\_\_\_\_ English?
- 9) He decided to visit the family \_\_\_\_\_ Friday night.
- 10) We offered him our congratulations \_\_\_\_\_ his passing the college entrance exams.





## Structure

### 1. Study the models and rewrite the following sentences.

**Model 1:** She was standing there. She was crying.

She was standing there, crying.

**Model 2:** I finished my job. I went back home.

Finishing my job, I went back home.

1) They once lived in the same building. They helped each other.

2) I realized I had made a stupid mistake. I went to my teacher for some advice.

3) The enemies knew they had no way out. They surrendered to us.

4) Eurydice was crossing the field. She was bit by a poisonous snake on her foot.

5) He sat in the couch. He listened to the music.

### 2. Complete the following sentences by translating the Chinese into English using “it” to represent the real object — the infinitive phrase.

1) I made it a plan \_\_\_\_\_ (在暑假去昆明旅行).

2) I consider it worthwhile \_\_\_\_\_ (以我的钢笔换他的玩具手枪).

3) The new technology makes it possible \_\_\_\_\_ (去太空旅行).

4) He looks upon it his duty \_\_\_\_\_ (在父母不在时照顾妹妹).

5) He declared it illegal \_\_\_\_\_ (未经许可屠杀那些羊).

## Comprehensive Exercises

### 1. There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that best fits into the passage.

I remembered the other day I was talking to a stranger on the bus; he told me that he had a good 1) \_\_\_\_\_ in Chicago and he wondered if, by any chance, I happened to know him.



For a moment, I thought he might be 2) \_\_\_\_\_, but I could tell from the expression on his face that he was not. He was serious. I felt like saying that it was ridiculous (可笑的) to 3) \_\_\_\_\_ that out of all the millions of people in Chicago I could possibly have ever bumped into his friend. But, instead, I just smiled and reminded him that Chicago was a very 4) \_\_\_\_\_ city. He nodded, and I thought he was going to be content to drop the subject and talk about something else. But I was wrong. He was silent for a few minutes, and then he began to tell me all about his friend.

His friend's main 5) \_\_\_\_\_ in life seemed to be tennis. He was an excellent tennis player, and he even had his own tennis court. There were a lot of people with swimming 6) \_\_\_\_\_, yet there were only two people with private tennis court; his friend in Chicago was one of them. I told him that I knew several people like that, including my brother, who was doctor in California. He 7) \_\_\_\_\_ that maybe there were more private courts in the country, than he realized but he did not know of any others. Then he asked me 8) \_\_\_\_\_ my brother lived in California. When I said Sacramento, he said that was a coincidence because his Chicago friend spent the summer in Sacramento last year and he lived next door to a 9) \_\_\_\_\_ who had a tennis court in his backyard. I said I felt that really was a coincidence (巧合) because my next-door neighbor had gone to Sacramento last summer and had hired the house next to my brother's house. For a moment, we stared at each other, but we did not say anything.

"Would your friend's name happen to be Roland Kirkwood?" I asked finally. He 10) \_\_\_\_\_ and said, "Yes. Would your brother's name happen to be Dr Rey Hunter?" It was my where to laugh. "Yes," I replied.

- |                 |                |             |              |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1) A. brother   | B. teacher     | C. neighbor | D. friend    |
| 2) A. expecting | B. lying       | C. joking   | D. talking   |
| 3) A. think     | B. find        | C. realize  | D. see       |
| 4) A. famous    | B. interesting | C. noisy    | D. big       |
| 5) A. problem   | B. interest    | C. choice   | D. work      |
| 6) A. suit      | B. habit       | C. pools    | D. river     |
| 7) A. advised   | B. argued      | C. admitted | D. announced |
| 8) A. how       | B. whether     | C. when     | D. where     |
| 9) A. doctor    | B. friend      | C. neighbor | D. player    |
| 10) A. smiled   | B. laughed     | C. cried    | D. nodded    |

## 2. Translate the following sentences into English, making use of the phrases in brackets.

1) 我将把我所有的好消息与我的朋友分享。(to share with)

2) 我厌倦玩计算机游戏了。(tire of)

3) 你可以在你方便的时候回复我的电子邮件。(at one's convenience)



4) 孩子们喜欢玩追逐游戏。(to play tag)

5) 即使他们大学毕业已经十年了, 他们仍然经常保持联系。(to keep in touch with)

## Part III Extensive Reading (I)

## Text B

### How Many Teens Have Internet Addiction?

1 One in every 25 teens reported an “irresistible urge” to be on the Internet, and a tension when they weren’t online, or said they had tried to quit or cut down on Internet time, according to a US study.

2 In addition, the study of more than 3,500 high school students in the state of Connecticut found that those students with “problematic Internet use” were more likely than their peers to be depressed and aggressive, and to use drugs.

3 But study leader Timothy Liu, at Yale University, and his colleagues said they couldn’t prove a “cause and effect” link between the Internet habits, depression and drug use.

4 “Problematic Internet use may be present in about 4 percent of high school students in the United States,” they wrote in The Journal of Clinical Psychology.

5 “It may be associated with depression, substance use and aggressive actions. High school boys, though, may have heavier Internet use and may be less self-aware of the related problems.”

6 The study surveyed students at 10 different high schools in Connecticut, asking more than 150 questions about health, risky actions, and impulsiveness — including seven questions on Internet use.

7 Teens were asked to say if they had ever missed school or important social activities because they were surfing the Web, or if their family had expressed concern about their time online.

8 Specifically, three questions were used to determine if a student had “problematic Internet use”. They asked students if they ever had an “irresistible urge” to be online, if they had experienced “a growing tension or anxiety that can be reduced only by using the Internet”, or if they had tried to quit or cut down. Out of 3,560 students, 4 percent met the standard for problematic Internet use. Asian and Hispanic students were more likely to qualify, although the majority of students in the study were white. Girls were more likely to answer yes to one of the questions, but more boys said they spent in more than 20 hours a week online — about 17 percent of boys, compared to 13 percent of girls.



9 According to the survey, students who were problematic Internet users also tended to be more depressed and would get into serious fights more often. Boys in that kind had higher rates of smoking and drug use.

10 However, they didn't do any worse in school based on their grades, and experts said it was hard to explain the link. "It often becomes a chicken and egg issue: Are they online because they're depressed, or are they depressed because they're spending large amounts of time online?" said Elias Aboujaoude, a Stanford University researcher who was not involved in the study.

11 He added that first-hand evidence suggests that problematic Internet use shares common features of drug and alcohol abuse disorders, obsessive-compulsive disorders and impulse-control disorders.

(469 words)

## New Words

addiction	/ə'dɪkʃən/	<i>n.</i>	being abnormally tolerant to and dependent on something that is psychologically or physically habit-forming 沉溺, 上瘾
feature	/fi:tʃə/	<i>n.</i>	An important aspect of something 特征; the characteristic parts of a person's face 容貌; the principal (full-length) film in a program at a movie theater 故事片
issue	/ˈɪʃju:/	<i>n.</i>	one of a series published periodically 发行物; an important question that is in dispute and must be settled 争论点
survey	/sə:'veɪ/	<i>n.</i>	to make investigation to collect certain kinds of information 问卷; to consider in a comprehensive way 测量, 调查
qualify	/ˈkwɒlɪfaɪ/	<i>vt.</i>	to make somebody or something suitable for a certain standard 使具备资格
impulsiveness	/ɪm'pʌlsɪvnis/	<i>n.</i>	the feature of acting suddenly without thinking carefully 冲动
aggressive	/ə'ɡresɪv/	<i>adj.</i>	marked by attacking others 侵略的; to be fond of fighting 好斗的; marked by gaining more efforts 有进取心的
journal	/ˈdʒə:nl/	<i>n.</i>	a daily written record of (usually personal) experiences and observations 日志; periodical 期刊
clinical	/ˈklinikəl/	<i>adj.</i>	relating to a clinic or conducted in or as if in a clinic and depending on direct observation of patients 临床的
psychology	/saɪˈkɒlədʒi/	<i>n.</i>	the inner action of someone 心理; the science of mind 心理学



depression	/di'preʃən/	<i>n.</i>	bad mood 沮丧; a long-term economic state characterized by unemployment and low prices and low levels of trade and investment 萧条
habit	/ 'hæbit /	<i>n.</i>	an established custom 习惯, 习性
prove	/ pru:v /	<i>vt.</i>	be shown or be found to be, usually with some evidences 证明, 结果是
colleague	/ 'kɒli:g/	<i>n.</i>	Workmate 同事
drug	/ drʌg /	<i>n.</i>	a substance that is used as a medicine or narcotic 毒品, 药
depressed	/ di'prest /	<i>adj.</i>	to be of mad mood 沮丧的; of bad economic situation 不景气的, 萧条的
peer	/piə/	<i>n.</i>	a person who is of equal standing with another in a group 同辈, 同等的人
quit	/ kwit /	<i>vt.</i>	to stop doing something 停止; give up or retire from a position 离开, 退出
tension	/ 'tenʃən/	<i>n.</i>	feelings of hostility that are not manifest 紧张状态
irresistible	/ ,iri'zistəbl/	<i>adj.</i>	impossible to resist 无法抗拒的
abuse	/ ə'bjʊ:s /	<i>vt.</i>	treat badly 虐待
obsessive	/ əb'sesiv /	<i>adj.</i>	characterized by or constituting an obsession 着迷的
compulsive	/ kəm'pʌlsiv /	<i>adj.</i>	caused by or suggestive of irresistible things 极有趣的, 强迫的, 上瘾的, 难以抑制的
impulse	/ 'impʌls /	<i>n.</i>	a sudden desire 冲动

## Phrases and Expressions

cut down on	减少
be associated with	与……联系
substance use	麻醉品使用

## Proper Names

Connecticut	康涅狄格 (美国东北部州名)
Timothy	蒂莫西 (男子名)
Yale	耶鲁 (大学)
Hispanic	西班牙的, 西班牙语
Elias	伊莱亚斯 (男子名)
Aboujaoude	阿布贾乌德 (姓氏)
Stanford	斯坦福 (大学)



## Notes

1. (Para. 1) One in every 25 teens reported an "irresistible urge" to be on the Internet, and a tension when they weren't online, or said they had tried to quit or cut down on Internet time, according to a US study.
  - 参考译文: 有报道称, 每 25 个十多岁的年轻人中, 就有一个对互联网有着“不可抵御的瘾”, 而当他们不上网时, 就会感到心情紧张; 据一个美国研究报告称, 他们试图戒除网瘾, 或减少上网时间。
2. (Para. 2) In addition, the study of more than 3,500 high school students in the state of Connecticut found that those students with “problematic Internet use” were more likely than their peers to be depressed and aggressive, and to use drugs.
  - 参考译文: 而且, 一项在康涅狄格州对 3500 名中学生进行的研究表明, 有“网瘾问题”的学生与他们的同龄人相比更容易忧郁、有攻击性和使用毒品。
3. (Para. 3) But study leader Timothy Liu, at Yale University, and his colleagues said they couldn't prove a “cause and effect” link between the Internet habits, depression and drug use.
  - 参考译文: 但是, 耶鲁大学关于这项研究的主研人蒂莫西·刘和他的同事说, 他们不能证明上网习惯、忧郁情绪和毒品使用之间存在着“因果关系”。
4. (Para. 4) The Journal of Clinical Psychology  
《临床心理学杂志》
5. (Para. 5) It may be associated with depression, substance use and aggressive actions.
  - 参考译文: 它可能与忧郁症、使用毒品和攻击行为有关。
6. (Para. 5) High school boys, though, may have heavier Internet use and may be less self-aware of the related problems.
  - 参考译文: 然而, 中学男生可能更多地使用互联网, 而对于上网产生的相关问题的自我意识要低些。
7. (Para. 6) The study surveyed students at 10 different high schools in Connecticut, asking more than 150 questions about health, risky actions, and impulsiveness — including seven questions on Internet use.
  - 参考译文: 这项研究中, 康涅狄格州 10 个不同的中学的学生接受了调查, 他们被问及与身体健康、风险行为和冲动行为相关的共计 150 个问题, 当然还包括 7 个与使用网络相关的问题。
8. (Para. 7) Teens were asked to say if they had ever missed school or important social activities because they were surfing the Web, or if their family had expressed concern about their time online.
  - 参考译文: 这些十多岁的年轻人被问到他们是否因为上网而逃学, 是否因为上网而拒绝参加其他重要的社会活动, 还被问到他们的家人有没有关注他们的上网时间问题。



9. (Para. 8) They asked students if they ever had an "irresistible urge" to be online, if they had experienced "a growing tension or anxiety that can be reduced only by using the Internet", or if they had tried to quit or cut down.

连词 if 出现 3 次, 引导 3 个并列的宾语从句。整个句子的结构相当于: They asked students if..., if, or if.

关系代词 that 引导定语从句, 修饰和限制中心词 tension or anxiety。

连词 or 引导表示选择关系, 点明第一个、第二个和第三个 if 间是选择的关系。

- 参考译文: 他们问学生是否有不可阻挡的上网的欲望, 是否经历过只有使用互联网才能缓解的不断增加的紧张与压力, 或是否曾试图戒掉或减少上网。

10. (Para. 8) Out of 3,560 students, 4 percent met the standard for problematic Internet use.

- 参考译文: 在 3,560 名学生中, 4% 的学生达到了问题性上网的标准。

11. (Para. 8) Asian and Hispanic students were more likely to qualify, although the majority of students in the study were white.

- 参考译文: 亚裔学生和讲西班牙语的学生更倾向于有上网问题, 尽管该研究大部分学生是白人。

12. (Para. 8) Girls were more likely to answer yes to one of the questions, but more boys said they spent in more than 20 hours a week online — about 17 percent of boys, compared to 13 percent of girls.

- 参考译文: 女生更倾向于对某一个问题说是, 但更多的男生说他们每周上网的时间多于 20 个小时: 达到这一时间标准的有 17% 的男生, 以及 13% 的女生。

13. (Para. 9) According to the survey, students who were problematic Internet users also tended to be more depressed and would get into serious fights more often.

- 参考译文: 根据这项调查研究, 有上网问题的学生同样倾向于更忧郁, 倾向于经常性的打斗。

14. (Para. 9) Boys in that kind had higher rates of smoking and drug use.

- 参考译文: 这种类型的男孩有更高的抽烟和使用毒品的比例。

15. (Para. 10) However, they didn't do any worse in school based on their grades, and experts said it was hard to explain the link.

- 参考译文: 然而, 从他们的成绩来看, 他们并不比其他人差, 专家们说很难解释这一联系。

16. (Para. 10) "It often becomes a chicken and egg issue: Are they online because they're depressed, or are they depressed because they're spending large amounts of time online?" said Elias Aboujaoude, a Stanford University researcher who was not involved in the study.

- 参考译文: 这通常会成为一个鸡和鸡蛋的问题: 他们上网时因为他们忧郁, 还是他们大量上网而导致忧郁? 一个未加入该研究的斯坦福大学的研究者伊莱亚斯·阿布贾乌德说道。

17. (Para. 10) He added that first-hand evidence suggests that problematic Internet use shares common features of drug and alcohol abuse disorders, obsessive-compulsive disorders and impulse-control disorders.



- 参考译文: 他还说道, 第一手的资料表明, 网瘾与毒品、酗酒、顽固性强迫性障碍、冲动控制问题有着共同的特征。

## Exercises

### 1. Decide whether the following statements are True or False according to the text.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1) Many young men have problems because they surf the Internet too frequently.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2) The researchers have proved a "cause and effect" link between the Internet habits, depression and drug use.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3) Out of 3,560 students, 4 percent met the standard for problematic Internet use.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4) Boys of problematic Internet users had higher rates of smoking and drug use.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5) Students having Internet problems were worse in school based on their grades than those having not.

### 2. Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions.

- 1) The family photo is \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.
- 2) The black car is \_\_\_\_\_ the building. So you can't see it.
- 3) The book is too difficult \_\_\_\_\_ the children.
- 4) The picture on the right is \_\_\_\_\_ the school life.
- 5) Call Jim \_\_\_\_\_ 4859987.
- 6) Once \_\_\_\_\_ a time, there lived a famous man.

### 3. Fill in the blanks with appropriate forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1) She suggests that he \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it all by himself.
- 2) Not \_\_\_\_\_ (know) the phone number of the man, he couldn't make the call.
- 3) Tom said he \_\_\_\_\_ (read) the book already.
- 4) I want you \_\_\_\_\_ (come) here as soon as possible.
- 5) I will have my students \_\_\_\_\_ (listen to) the recording.
- 6) I will have my bike \_\_\_\_\_ (repair).

### 4. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

- 1) "Problematic Internet use may be present in about 4 percent of high school students in the United States," they wrote in The Journal of Clinical Psychology.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2) According to the survey, students who were problematic Internet users also tended to be more depressed and would get into serious fights more often.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_





## Part IV Extensive Reading (II)

## Text C

### Reviews of Online Shopping

- 1 One of the great benefits of online shopping is the ability to read others' reviews, which could be from experts or simply fellow shoppers on one product and service.
- 2 The Nielsen Company conducted a survey in March 2010 and polled more than 27,000 Internet users in 55 markets from the Asia-Pacific, Europe, Middle East, North America and South America to look at questions such as "How do consumers shop online?", "What do they intend to buy?", "How do they use various online shopping web pages?", and the impact of social media and other factors that come into play when consumers are trying to decide how to spend their money on which product or service.
- 3 According to that research, reviews on electronics (57%) such as DVD players, cell phones or PlayStations and so on, reviews on cars (45%), and reviews on software (37%) play an important role and have influence on consumers who tend to make purchases and buy online.
- 4 In addition to online reviews, peer recommendations on the online shopping pages or social media play a key role for online shoppers while researching future purchases of electronics, cars and travel or concert bookings. On the other hand, according to the same research, 40% of online shoppers indicate that they would not even buy electronics without consulting online reviews first.
- 5 Online reviews play a fundamental role on consumers who want to buy some kind of product, but the biggest effect is seen for electronics, cars and software.

(246 words)

### New Words

conduct	/ kən'dʌkt /	vt.	to do something 实施
poll	/ pəʊl /	vt.	to make an investigation at people's view on something 做民意测验
consumer	/ kən'sju:mə /	n.	a person who uses goods or services 消费者, 用户
purchase	/ 'pɜ:tʃəs /	n.	the action of buying something 买, 购买; the goods one buys 购买物
recommendation	/ ,rekəmen'deiʃən /	n.	something that is introduced by somebody to somebody else as advisable 推荐



concert	/ 'kɒnsət /	<i>n.</i>	a performance of music by players or singers not involving theatrical staging 音乐会
fundamental	/ ˌfʌndə'mentl /	<i>adj.</i>	being or involving basic facts or principles 基本的, 根本的, 重要的

## Phrases and Expressions

in addition to	除了…之外
----------------	-------

## Proper Names

Nielsen	尼尔森 (男子名)
---------	-----------

## Notes

**1. (Para. 1) One of the great benefits of online shopping is the ability to read others' reviews, which could be from experts or simply fellow shoppers on one product and service.**

- 参考译文: 网上购物的一个最大的好处是, 购物者可以读到其他购物者的评论, 这项评论可能来自于某一商品或服务的专家, 也可能来自于普通的购物者。

**2. (Para. 2) The Nielsen Company conducted a survey in March 2010 and polled more than 27,000 Internet users in 55 markets from the Asia-Pacific, Europe, Middle East, North America and South America to look at questions such as “How do consumers shop online”, “What do they intend to buy”, “How do they use various online shopping web pages”, and the impact of social media and other factors that come into play when consumers are trying to decide how to spend their money on which product or service.**

本句很长, 在引号中的三个问句, 另外有两个从句, 分别是 *that* 引导的定语从句和 *when* 引导的时间状语从句。主句谓语为 *conducted*。

- 参考译文: 尼尔森公司在 2010 年 3 月做了一项调查, 调查对象为来自亚太、欧洲、中东、北美和南美 55 个市场的 27,000 多名互联网用户。他们被问及诸如此类的问题: “消费者如何在网上购物”, “他们想买什么”, “他们如何使用不同的网上购物网页” 当消费者正考虑如何花钱购买哪项商品或服务时, 起作用的社会媒体或其他因素对消费者有什么影响。

**3. (Para. 3) According to that research, reviews on electronics (57%) such as DVD players, cell phones or PlayStations and so on, reviews on cars (45%), and reviews on software (37%) play an important role and have influence on consumers who tend to make purchases and buy online.**

- 参考译文: 根据该研究, 对诸如 DVD 播放器、手机和 workstation 之类的电子产品的评论 (57%), 对于汽车的评论 (45%), 还有对于软件的评论 (37%), 对于打算网购该类商品的顾客起重要的作用, 有重大的影响。



**4. (Para. 4) In addition to online reviews, peer recommendations on the online shopping pages or social media play a key role for online shoppers while researching future purchases of electronics, cars and travel or concert bookings.**

- 参考译文：除了网上的评论之外，同行或同事对网上购物网页的推荐以及社会媒体对网上购物者未来选购电子产品、汽车、旅游或音乐会门票起主要的作用。

**5. (Para. 4) On the other hand, according to the same research, 40% of online shoppers indicate that they would not even buy electronics without consulting online reviews first.**

- 参考译文：另一方面，根据同一研究，40%的网上购物者表示他们在没有参考网上的评论之前，不会去购买电子产品。

**6. (Para. 5) Online reviews play a fundamental role on consumers who want to buy some kind of product, but the biggest effect is seen for electronics, cars and software.**

1) 关系代词 who 引导定语从句，用来修饰和限定中心词 consumers。

2) 并列连词 but 引导并列分句。

- 参考译文：网上调查对试图购买某些产品的消费者起关键作用，但在电子产品、汽车和计算机软件上产生的效果最大。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

#### 感谢与回应

#### Thanks and Their Responses

##### Key Sentences

- ◇ —Thank you!  
—Not at all!
- ◇ —Many thanks!  
—It's nothing!
- ◇ —Thanks very much indeed!  
—Don't mention it!
- ◇ —Thank you very much for your help/invitation/advice/information...  
—You have nothing to thank me for!



- ✧ —I'm very much obliged to you!  
—There's nothing to thank me for!.
- ✧ —I'm really grateful to you!  
—It's not worth mentioning!
- ✧ —I'm really very much indebted to you!  
—You're welcome!
- ✧ —We certainly appreciate your kindness!  
—That's all right!
- ✧ —I can't tell you how grateful I am to you!  
—It's really nothing at all!

### Practice

Choose the answer that best completes each dialogue.

- 1) —Thank you very much!  
—\_\_\_\_\_!  
A. It's a piece of cake  
B. My pleasure  
C. Good  
D. I am so serious
- 2) —I'm really very much indebted to you!  
—\_\_\_\_\_!  
A. It's not worth mentioning  
B. It's so so  
C. I hope you can do me a favor later  
D. Come on
- 3) —Thank you very much for your information!  
—\_\_\_\_\_!  
A. It sounds great  
B. OK  
C. No  
D. I am very glad that I can help you
- 4) —I don't know how I can thank you enough!  
—\_\_\_\_\_!  
A. You can thank god  
B. Great  
C. There's nothing to thank me for  
D. I am sorry
- 5) —I'm really grateful to you!  
—\_\_\_\_\_!  
A. Don't mention it  
B. You deserve it  
C. Very good  
D. You should also help others



# Grammar

## 直接引语与间接引语

对于他人的话，我们可以直接引用，也可以用自己的话来间接转述。直接引用别人的话，就是直接引语，在书写上必须将说话的内容放在引号中。对于间接转述，那就是间接引语。将直接引语转换成间接引语时，要注意以下几点。

1. 如果引述的原来是陈述句，则有：

1) 在引语的开头用连词 **that**：

*e.g.* Tom said: “I know the boy.”

Tom said that he knew the boy.

2) 将人称单词进行相应的调整

*e.g.* He said: “My radio is expensive.”

He said that his radio was expensive.

3) 引语中的动词谓语时态随主句谓语进行相应的调整

*e.g.* Mary said: “I need some water.”

Mary said that she needed some water.

My wife said: “I will go to the shop.”

My wife said that she would go to the shop.

The boy said: “I have seen the film.”

The boy said that he had seen the film.

4) 将指示代词、地点状语、时间状语进行相应的调整

Jim said: “I will visit Tom tonight.”

Jim said that he would visit Tom that night.

He said: “I saw the girl yesterday morning.”

He said that he had seen the girl the morning before.

具体转变见下表：

	在直接引语中	在间接引语中
指示代词	this these	that those
表时间的词	now today this week (month, etc.) yesterday last week (month, etc.) two days (a year, etc.) ago tomorrow next week (month, etc.)	then that day that week (month, etc.) the day before the week (month, etc.) before two days (a year, etc.) before the next (following) day the next (following) week (month, etc.)
表地点的词	here	there
动词	come	go



2. 在引述一个疑问句时,除了上述人称、状语和时态的变化以外,还应将直接引语的疑问语序转变为陈述语序。这时,间接引语的引导词绝不可能是 **that**。当直接引语是特殊疑问句时,引导词就是该特殊疑问词对应的链接副词或代词。当直接引语为一般疑问句时,间接引语的引导词为 **whether** 或 **if**。

The police asked: “who did it?”

The police asked who had done it.

The conductor asked: “Where will you get off?”

The conductor asked where I would get off.

He asked: “are you the mother of the little kid?”

He asked (the women) whether she was the mother of the little kid.

Jane asked: “You’ve already got well, haven’t you?”

She asked if he had already got well.

3. 当直接引语为感叹句时,间接引语为表示请求或命令的一个复合宾语。

He said: “Please come again tomorrow.”

He asked me to go there again the next day.

He said: “Don’t be late again.”

He told me not to be late again.

He said: “Get everything ready in two hours.”

He ordered us to get everything ready in two hours.

### Exercise

**Transform the following sentences from direct speech into indirect speech.**

- 1) “We’re flying kites”, he told her.
- 2) Mike said: “I’m going to Hainan for a holiday.”
- 3) Miss Green said: “The earth goes around the sun.”
- 4) Tom said: “We’re cleaning the classroom now.”
- 5) Lucy said: “I want to have dinner with my parents.”
- 6) Jack said: “My mother was here two days ago.”
- 7) Rose says: “I’m a good student.”
- 8) He asked me: “Will it snow tomorrow?”
- 9) “Does the bus stop on this road?” he asked the man.
- 10) Tom asked me: “How can I win a gold medal in the sports meeting?”
- 11) The policeman asked: “Whose cars are these?”
- 12) “Why are you late again?” Miss Chen asked me.
- 13) She asked her mother: “What shall we have for supper?”
- 14) Mother said to Jim: “Stop beating the dog!”
- 15) The teacher said: “Finish the exercises in five minutes!”



## Writing Skills

### 文章类型 Types of Writing

在英语中，文章类型粗略可以分成 3 种：记叙文、说明文、议论文。

#### 1. 记叙文

记叙文是指用语言来描述某个人物、地点、物品或场景。通常记叙文是以人的具体的视觉、听觉、味觉、嗅觉和触觉诸感官印象来组织的。并非所有的感官细节内容都有用。作者往往将焦点集中于要描述的对象的最根本特征，而忽略那些次要的部分，使得读者可以清晰地认识所描述的事物。

Unit 9, Text A: *Mimi's First Date* 就属于典型的记叙文。从文中，我们可以看到作者以时间顺序为主线，描写了主人公 Mimi 第一次约会的情景。读者可以清晰地知道人物、时间、地点和事件。对于场景也有十分详细的描写，尤其是奶酪发出的味道。当然，还少不了 Mimi 的心理活动。所有这些，都说明 Mimi 对她的第一次约会十分不满意。

#### 2. 说明文

说明文往往解释和探索某一事件，如制作机器的过程、某一自然或社会现象的起因、某一问题的解决过程。说明文可以采取图表和其他的各种方法来组织文章。说明文的目的是给读者提供信息，其所有主要的特点是明晰、清楚。

Unit 9, Text B: *How People Meet and Date* 就属于典型的说明文。该文十分详尽地向读者说明了美国人约会的各种方法。作者先概述，然后具体地说明各种约会方法。显然，作者对美国人的约会方法进行了仔细的研究，读者看完文章后，对这一问题了然于心。

#### 3. 议论文

议论文的目的是让读者相信并同意某一观点。作者可能在文章中反驳某一观点，也可能支持某一观点。也就是说，作者必须有鲜明的论点。然后，作者会使用各种论证方法和手段，并大量列举令人信服的证据来支撑自己的观点。

Unit 10, Text A: *Will Computers Affect Personal Relations?* 就是一篇典型的议论文。作者以一个问句作为文章的标题，这表明作者在文章中要回答这个问题。文章的第一自然段只有一句，事实上就是文章的论点。它开门见山，指出计算机的确影响人们的生活。然后，文章以 e-mail 为切入点，从不同的侧面反映了 e-mail 对人们生活的影响。文章最后一段进一步点明这种影响的存在。



## Test 2

### Part I Use of English

**Directions:** In this part there are 20 incomplete dialogs. For each dialog there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D .Choose the ONE answer that best completes the dialog.

1. —Thank you very much for your information!

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. It sounds great.

B. OK.

C. NO.

D. I am very glad that I can help you.

2. —I'm really very much indebted to you!

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. It's not worth mentioning.

B. It's so so.

C. I hope you can do me a favor later.

D. Come on.

3. —Would you like to go dancing with us?

—Oh, \_\_\_\_\_

A. thank you.

B. thank you very much.

C. yes, I would.

D. yes, of course.

4. — \_\_\_\_\_

—That's very kind of you, thanks.

A. I'd like to invite you to my house.

B. How about watching the movie with me?

C. Would you like to go to a concert with me?

D. How about cycling with us?

5. —why don't we have a birthday party this weekend?

— \_\_\_\_\_

A. Well, it's a good idea.

B. what happened?

C. Don't worry.

D. OK, let's go.

6. —What do you think if we go to the new restaurant this Friday?

— \_\_\_\_\_





- A. Sorry, I don't want to see you.  
B. Well, It's only half an hour.  
C. Thanks, I'm full.  
D. OK, I'd like to.
7. —Excuse me, but can you tell me the way to the department store?  
—  
A. Please don't miss so.  
B. Pardon? I have no idea.  
C. Sure, Go straight ahead and take the second turning on your left.  
D. You can't ask me.
8. —  
—It's two blocks away from here, along that road.  
A. Hello, Tell me where the cinema is.  
B. Good morning. The cinema, please.  
C. Pardon? Can I get to the cinema?  
D. Excuse me, could you tell me where the cinema is, please?
9. —En, Mr.Li. The meat was very good, and the fish was delicious.  
—Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_ I always cook them for her.  
A. They are my wife's favorite.  
B. My life doesn't like them.  
C. They are done in one hour.  
D. You have a good taste.
10. —You haven't said a word about my new suit, Marie. Don't you like it?  
—I'm sorry I didn't say anything about it sooner. I don't think I've seen anything like it before.  
—I know, That's why I bought it. I hate wearing the same styles everybody else is wearing.  
A. you look nice in that color.  
B. you have a good taste.  
C. It certainly is unique.  
D. I admire your work.
11. —Where are you going?  
—I'm going to the library.  
—  
—why not? Let's go.  
A. May I go with you?  
B. May I ask you a favor?  
C. Wall, I need to talk with Mary.  
D. May I ask Mary?
12. —Yoyo,\_\_\_\_\_



—Absolutely impossible! I have much work to do tonight.

A. could you help me tonight?

B. could you lend me some money?

C. could I go with you tomorrow?

D. could you buy some chicken for me now?

13. —what day is it today?

—

A. It's fine.

B. it's noon.

C. It's sunny.

D. It's Sunday.

14. —Have you got the time?

—

A. No, I'm busy.

B. Yes, I'm free today.

C. It's a quarter to four.

D. I don't know.

15. —May I ask who's calling?

—

A. I'm peter.

B. My name is Peter.

C. This is Peter.

D. Speaking.

16. —Can you connect me to Helen?

—

A. Hold on, please.

B. Hold in, Please.

C. Hold out, Please.

D. Hold up, Please.

17. —Good night and thanks for everything.

—

A. you can't say that.

B. No. It's what I can do.

B. How can you say that?

D. Good night.

18. —How's the weather outside now?

—

A. It's raining cats and dogs.

B. Yes, it's not bad.

C. It rained yesterday.

D. It's cold in summer.

19. —Hi, Mary. How's it going?

—

A. It's ok. How about you?

B. Going well.

C. Not bad.

D. I'm fine, thank you.

20. —Allow me to introduce myself. I'm Lisa Smith.

—

A. It's an honor.

B. Pleased to meet you.

C. I feel very Lucky.

D. It's my pleasure.

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** these are 4 passages in this part. Each passage is followed by 4 or 5 questions. For each question there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Please choose the best answer to each question.

### Passage One

In only two decades Asian Americans have become the fastest growing the U. S. minority. As their children began moving up through the schools, it became clear that a neat a new class of academic achievers was emerging. Their achievements are reflected in the best universities, where mathematics, science and engineering departments have taken on a decidedly Asian character. This special liking for mathematics and science is partly explained by the fact that Asian-American students who began their educations abroad arrived in the U.S. with a solid grounding in mathematics but little or no knowledge of English . They are also influenced by the promise of a good job after college. Asians feel they will be judged more objectively. And the return on the investment in education is more immediate in something like engineering than with an arts degree.

Most Asian-American students owe their success to the influence of parents who are determined that their children take full advantage of what the American educational system has to offer. An effective measure of parental attention is homework. Asian parents spend more time with their children than American parents do, and it helps. Many researchers also believe there is something in Asian culture that breeds success, such as ideals that stress family values and emphasize education.

Both explanations for academic success worry Asian Americans because of fears that they feed a typical racial image. Many can remember when Chinese, Japanese and Filipino immigrants were the victims of social isolation. Indeed, it was not until 1952 that laws were laid down giving all Asian immigrants the right to citizenship.

21. While making tremendous achievements at college, Asian-American students \_\_\_\_\_
  - A. feel they are mistreated because of limited knowledge of English.
  - B. are afraid that their academic successes bear a strong Asian character.
  - C. still worry about unfair treatment in society.
  - D. generally feel it a shame to have to depend on their parents.
22. What are the major factors that determine the success of Asian Americans?
  - A. A solid foundation in basic mathematics and Asian culture.
  - B. Hard work and intelligence.
  - C. Hard help and a limited knowledge of English.



- D. Asian culture and the American educational system.
23. Few Asian-American students major in human sciences mainly because\_\_\_\_\_
- A. their English is not good enough.  
B. they are afraid they might meet with unfair judgment in these areas.  
C. there is a wide difference between Asian and Western cultures.  
D. they know little about American culture and society.
24. Why do the two “explanations” (Line 1, Para. 3) worry Asian Americans?
- A. They are afraid that they would again be isolated from American society in general.  
B. People would think that Asian students rely on their parents for success.  
C. Asian Americans would be a threat to other minorities.  
D. American academic achievements have taken on too strong an Asian character.
25. The author's tone in this passage is \_\_\_\_\_
- A. sympathetic                      B. doubtful                      C. critical                      D. objective

### Passage Two

Sharon Keating was worried about her kids when she got a divorce. Her daughter says, “I was feeling...like down and sad and even though I didn't really show it.”

Judith Wallerstein says problems from divorce can last many years. They can show up when the kids are adults. And the kids have their own trouble. Wallerstein studied 93 children over a generation. The results can be found in her book.

She says that children of divorce are more likely to have problems with drugs. They are far more likely to seek therapy. About 40 percent of them avoid marriage themselves. When they do marry, fail at nearly twice the usual rate. It is hard for them to trust. They are afraid of failing.

Critics say Wallerstein had too few children in her study. They think that Wallerstein stresses too much from a small study. Other things may be the cause of kid's problems. The study does not compare kids from divorced families with kids from “healthy” families.

Wallerstein's families divorced a generation ago. Times have changed. People feel different about divorce. Today programs like Kid's Turn try to reduce some of the effects of divorce with family advice. Talking about their feelings helps the kids get through it. Since know more about the problems, maybe the kids will be able to handle it.

26. Which word can best describe the kids from divorced families according to Paragraph 1?
- A. Offensive.                      B. Relieved.                      C. Depressed.                      D. Prejudiced.
27. Wallerstein's study showed that \_\_\_\_\_
- A. divorce left the children with many problems.  
B. all the problems showed up right after the divorce.  
C. divorce could be avoided.  
D. divorce made the children mature earlier.
28. Which of the following is critics' opinion?
- A. Healthy families do not have problems.



- B. All the related factors were considered in the study.
  - C. Divorce is the only cause of child problems.
  - D. The number of families studied was not sufficient.
29. Today children from divorced families \_\_\_\_\_
- A. have no more problems.
  - B. are getting more care and help.
  - C. are less able to handle their problems.
  - D. are told not to talk about their problems.

### Passage Three

In ancient times, people thought that their gods lived on the tops of mountains. They therefore believed that anything above them was nearer to their gods than they. Naturally, they thought that birds were messengers from the gods. People also believed that birds were carried their souls to the gods when they died. There were many beliefs about how to treat birds. Some people even believed that killing a bird was an act against the gods and would bring bad luck. In some parts of the United States people still believe that if they hear an owl in the early evening, it means death. Another link with these past beliefs is in an English expression. People no longer believe that birds are messengers of the gods, but when someone knows a secret about another person, he or she might say, "A little bird told me about it."

We know, of course, that birds can't talk and that owls don't really mean death, yet we still have these superstitions. Many sailors believe that if they see an albatross, it will bring bad luck to their ship. People all over the world used the dove as a symbol of peace and feel good when they see one. North Americans think of the eagle as a symbol of freedom, and some people still hold that dreaming of a bird means that they are seeing the loss of a soul.

#### Notes:

- ① owl: 猫头鹰
- ② superstition: 迷信
- ③ albatross: 信天翁
- ④ symbol: 象征

30. Primitive people thought \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. their gods lived high above them
  - B. their gods lived on tree tops
  - C. their gods lived under ground
  - D. their gods could fly high
31. Ancient people considered the birds as messengers because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. birds could talk
  - B. birds could carry their letters to the gods
  - C. birds lived higher above them
  - D. birds could bring letters from gods to them



32. When people say “A little bird told me about it” ,\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they do believe that the message is brought by a bird  
B. they no longer believe that birds are messengers  
C. they try to prevent bad luck  
D. they are making a joke
33. The birds mentioned in this passage which refer to bad luck are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. eagles and doves  
B. owls and eagles  
C. eagles and albatrosses  
D. albatrosses and owls
34. The passage talks about superstitions \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in the United States  
B. in England  
C. in Europe and America  
D. all over the world

#### Passage Four

The word “sport” first meant something that people did in their free time. Later it often meant hunting wild animals and birds. About a hundred years ago the word was first used for organized games. This is the usual meaning of the word today. People spend a lot of their spare time playing football, basketball, tennis and many other sports. Such people play because they want to. A few people are paid for the sport they play. These people are called professional sportsmen. They may be sportsmen for only a few years, but during that time the best ones can earn a lot of money.

For example, a professional footballer in England earns more than 30,000 dollars a year. The stars earn a lot more. International golf and tennis champions can make more than 500,000 dollars a year. Of course, only a few sportsmen can earn as much money as that, It is only possible in sports for individuals, like golf, tennis and motor-racing. Perhaps the most surprising thing about sportsmen and money is that the stars can earn more money from advertising than from sport. An advertisement for sports equipment does not simply say “buy our things”. It says “Buy the same shirt and shoes as...” Famous sportsmen can even advertise things like watches and food. They allow the companies to use their name or a photograph of them and they are paid for this. Sport is no longer just something for people's spare time.

#### Note:

① golf: 高尔夫球

35. Paid sportsmen are called \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. amateurs (业余活动者)  
B. game organizers  
C. professionals  
D. wild animal hunters
36. Exactly a professional footballer in England earns \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. \$500,000per year  
B. \$30,000per year  
C. over \$500,000per year  
D. over \$30,000per year
37. Now people play football and other sports in their spare time because they \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. want to earn money  
B. hope to become famous  
C. want to enjoy themselves  
D. hope to become professional sportsmen

38. What is the most surprising?
- A. More money for the star come from advertising rather than from sport.
- B. The word “sport” first meant hunting animals.
- C. A golf and tennis champion can earn more than a footballer.
- D. Sport is something for people’s spare time.
39. The famous sportsmen earn most of their money by\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. wearing watches
- B. using the company’s name
- C. playing sport in their spare time
- D. advertising

## Part III Vocabulary and structure

**Directions:** In this section, there are 15 incomplete sentences. For each sentence there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D .choose the one answer that best completes each sentences.

40. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ here only this morning.  
A. must be                      B. can be                      C. must have been                      D. should have been
41. He had a pain \_\_\_\_\_ his back.  
A. on                      B. with                      C. in                      D. onto
42. The shop assistant didn't give me the right \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. change                      B. money                      C. serve                      D. note
43. The composition \_\_\_\_\_ any more.  
A. need not to be corrected                      B. doesn't need be corrected  
C. need not correct                      D. doesn't need to be corrected
44. —I think you should phone Jenny and say sorry to her.  
—\_\_\_\_\_. It was her fault.  
A. No way                      B. Not possible  
C. No chance                      D. Not at all
45. Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ when they ran toward it.  
A. had the plane landed                      B. did the plane land  
C. the plane had landed                      D. the plane landed
46. He is \_\_\_\_\_ that I'd like to introduce him to you.  
A. Such noble person                      B. So noble person  
C. Such a noble person                      D. So a noble person
47. We can't understand why he avoided \_\_\_\_\_ to us.  
A. to speak                      B. speak                      C. having spoke                      D. speaking
48. —Look! He's running so fast!  
—Hard to \_\_\_\_\_ his legs were once broken.  
A. know                      B. imagine                      C. realize                      D. find



49. Have a cigarette, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. will you                      B. don't you                      C. do you                      D. aren't you
50. The differences between Chinese and western society can \_\_\_\_\_ misunderstandings.  
A. course                      B. causes                      C. create                      D. rise
51. The letters PTO \_\_\_\_\_ parent - teacher organization.  
A. stand for                      B. call for                      C. head for                      D. care for
52. Without electricity human life \_\_\_\_\_ quite different today.  
A. is                      B. will be                      C. would have been                      D. would be
53. I \_\_\_\_\_ swim in summer when I was young.  
A. used to                      B. used                      C. was used to                      D. did used to
54. Don't put off until tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ should be done today.  
A. that                      B. what                      C. is                      D. when

## Part IV Cloze

Canada is the second largest country in the world in area, although its 55) \_\_\_\_\_ is only some 25 million, most living in a 200 - mile strip 56) \_\_\_\_\_ the southern border. Over 25 percent of the total number live in the three main cities. The northern areas of the country are almost uninhabited 57) \_\_\_\_\_ for isolated settlements.

Over the last three years, the Canadian economy has been hard 58) \_\_\_\_\_ by falling oil prices and by rising US interest 59) \_\_\_\_\_. This has 60) \_\_\_\_\_ to a steep fall in industrial production-by as much as a fifth since 1981. Some 61) \_\_\_\_\_ now think Canada is on the 62) \_\_\_\_\_ to recovery, though more cautious spirits say that no 63) \_\_\_\_\_ can be expected until there is a 64) \_\_\_\_\_ to lower interest rates in the USA.

- 55) A. people                      B. residents                      C. population                      D. number
- 56) A. down                      B. along                      C. beside                      D. near
- 57) A. except                      B. but                      C. only                      D. besides
- 58) A. influence                      B. hit                      C. pushed                      D. hammered
- 59) A. jobs                      B. funds                      C. rates                      D. industries
- 60) A. caused                      B. moved                      C. amounted                      D. led
- 61) A. economists                      B. scholars                      C. Canadians                      D. scientists
- 62) A. line                      B. period                      C. time                      D. road
- 63) A. uplift                      B. cheer                      C. future                      D. improvement
- 64) A. tendency                      B. shift                      C. lift                      D. hike



## Part V Translation from English into Chinese

65. I'm not sure why, but I feel kind of sorry for him.
66. When it comes to politics, I almost know nothing.
67. Nothing is more comfortable to sit in than my chair.

## Part VI Writing

### Hope

1. 什么是希望?
2. 任何有生活经验的人都认为生活是困难的。
3. 希望对每个人来说都是很重要的。

# Key to Exercises and Tests

## Unit 1

### Part II Intensive Reading Text A

#### Text Comprehension

1. 1) F      2) T      3) F      4) T      5) T
2. 1) The author suggests learners to work in pairs and small groups.  
2) They can exchange information on difficult things and share useful materials and methods.  
3) Maintaining motivation.  
4) A learner will experience frustration, uncertainty, annoyance, boredom and resentment during the course of his or her studies.  
5) When his progress seems slow, when he doesn't fully understand things, when he keeps forgetting something simple, when he has to do the same thing repeatedly and when everything has to be so complicated and English can't work in the same way as Chinese.  
6) He should be aware that they are quite normal and he won't be alone in feeling this way.  
7) When he makes some progresses, learns more about the language use, meets with some new expressions and ways of thinking and talking about the world, and can use the new language to express his thoughts and feelings.  
8) He feels more confident in himself and his ability to learn well.

#### Vocabulary

1. 1) denied    2) thought    3) including    4) Obviously    5) likely    6) progress  
7) provides    8) expressed    9) tried out    10) in pairs    11) came across    12) put off

2.

Adjectives	Nouns	Adjectives	Nouns
intelligent	intelligence	capable	capability
diligent	diligence	friendly	friendliness
absent	absence	significant	significance
independent	independence	tired	tiredness
possible	possibility	patient	patience



3. 1) on      2) to      3) of      4) in, of      5) in      6) by      7) on      8) out

### Structure

1. 1) Our team is likely to win the game tomorrow.  
 2) The teacher is likely to scold you for your carelessness in the exam.  
 3) The boy noticed something unusual happen to his mother.  
 4) I felt something cold dropping on my face.  
 5) I heard my parents quarrel in the next door last night.
2. 1) Traveling around the world  
 2) Going to work on time  
 3) Reading aloud  
 4) Respecting others  
 5) Keeping a good mood

### Comprehensive Exercises

1. 1) B    2) A    3) D    4) A    5) B    6) C    7) D    8) C    9) B    10) A
2. 1) I don't have much confidence in this interview.  
 2) You will be healthier as long as you keep doing exercises.  
 3) Mary spent 30 minutes finishing the composition/paper.  
 4) The hotel doesn't provide breakfast.  
 5) Three years later, he succeeded in becoming the boss of the company.

## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

### Exercises

1. 1) B    2) D    3) B    4) D    5) A    6) D    7) B    8) C
2. 1) pick up      2) depend on      3) be independent of      4) Instead of  
 5) is afraid to    6) Taking a look at    7) made mistakes      8) Are willing to
3. 最后一点，成功的语言学习者是目的明确的学习者。他们想学哪种语言是因为他们对那种语言本身和使用那种语言的人感兴趣。为了和这些人交流，向他们学习，他们必须学会那种语言。他们发现经常练习使用那种语言并不难，因为他们想用它来学习。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) B    2) A    3) C    4) A    5) C    6) D    7) B    8) C

### Grammar

- 1) many: pron.      believe: v.      contact: n.



- 2) an: art.                      and: conj.            in: prep.
- 3) however: conj.    that: conj.            can: mod. V.
- 4) body language: subject    quiet, secret and powerful: attribute
- 5) serves: predicate            purposes: object
- 6) particularly: adverbial

## Writing Skills

What are the marks of this group of people? First of all, it is defined by what its members have: cell phones, washing machines, microwave ovens, computers, cars, homes and vacations. But this group is not only marked by material things. A psychological independence and carefree optimism is also present. Middle-aged successful company presidents, young professionals and even college students are optimistic, expecting the best in their future.

# Unit 2

## Part II Intensive Reading Text A

### Text Comprehension

- 1) He was afraid that he could not do well in his studies.
- 2) Were they smarter than I was? Could I keep up with them? Would they accept me?
- 3) Set s study program
- 4) He couldn't properly use time and choose friends.
- 5) He had his life under control.
- 6) Made a few friends and set up his own routine.
- 7) Began to see himself as a responsible person.
- 8) Not certain
- 9) Because he had successfully jumped the important hurdle in his life.
- 10) It means learning how to live independently.

### Vocabulary

- |                |                      |                  |                |                |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1) smart       | 2) succeed           | 3) shortly       | 4) managed     | 5) share       |
| 6) fear        | 7) responsible       | 8) however       | 9) enter       | 10) surrounded |
| 11) handle     | 12) comfortable      |                  |                |                |
| 2) 1) is up to | 2) keep up with      | 3) under control | 4) at first    |                |
| 5) grew up     | 6) make friends with | 7) turned out    | 8) As a result |                |
| 9) set up      | 10) In addition      |                  |                |                |

3.

v.	Nouns	v.	Nouns
permit	permission	punish	punishment
possess	possession	employ	employment
produce	production	propose	proposal
present	presentation	manage	management
promote	promotion	survive	survival

## Structure

- 1) how to play the game  
2) where I wanted to go  
3) whether they would accept him or not  
4) what to do and how to do it  
5) who(m) to love and who(m) not to
- 1) I see Li Ming as my best friend. We share the same hobbies and interests.  
2) They regarded their math teacher as their best teacher.  
3) We think of this place as our home.  
4) They looked on their college life as their happiest years in their life.

## Comprehensive Exercise

- 1) C    2) A    3) D    4) C    5) A    6) B    7) D    8) D    9) B    10) A
- 1) To our surprise, Mr. Lu turned out to be Xiaogang's father.  
2) The workers' carelessness was responsible for the accident.  
3) I promised to arrive at school ahead of time tomorrow morning.  
4) I study hard so as to keep up with the other classmates.  
5) Whether you can handle the problem is up to the attitude of you both sides.

## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

- 1) Everything seemed to go wrong and nothing seemed to go right.  
2) She felt discouraged, weary and very sad.  
3) She hoped for some pity.  
4) She suggested her to make some cookies for her friend Jamie.  
5) We can get happiness from helping others.
- 1) A    2) D    3) B    4) D    5) D
- 1) were amazed at    2) drop by    3) as if    4) seems to  
5) After all    6) arrange for-to    7) in surprise    8) gone wrong



- ## Part V Further Study

## Unit 3

## Part II Intensive Reading Text A

- 2) Britain public holidays are described as Bank Holidays because they are days when banks are officially closed.
- 3) Public holidays in England are Christmas Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, May Day, the Spring Bank Holiday, the Summer Bank Holiday, December 26th(Boxing Day), and New Year's Day.
- 4) Boxing Day takes its name from the old custom of giving employees or tradesmen (such as the milkman) an annual present or "Christmas box" on that day.
- 5) No, fox hunting is now banned.
- 6) In many towns there are funfairs on Easter Monday. It used to be the day on which the ladies would parade in the parks, wearing new dresses and hats. Although this custom is dying out, the tradition still provides the ladies with an excuse for buying spring clothes.
- 7) It is partly because it comes at a time when children are not at school.
- 8) The result is that anyone who can manage to take a holiday at another time would be well advised to do so, for the roads get crowded with traffic.

### Vocabulary

1. 1) hunt      2) celebrated      3) ceremony      4) religious      5) annually
- 6) banned      7) launched      8) origin      9) tradition      10) previous
2. 1) customer      2) customary      3) custom      4) exchangeable
- 5) exchange      6) change      7) official      8) unofficial
- 9) office      10) part      11) depart      12) partly
- 3.

Adjectives or Nouns	Verbs	Adjectives or Nouns	Verbs
broad	broaden	hard	harden
sharp	sharpen	short	shorten
weak	weaken	red	redden
wide	widen	deep	deepen
light	lighten	bright	brighten

4. 1) off      2) to      3) by      4) with      5) of      6) out      7) since      8) how

### Structure

1. 1) It is dangerous to cross the busy street.
- 2) It was heartbreaking that he lost one of his legs in that accident.
- 3) It is useless to cry over the spilt milk.
- 4) It is unable for us to finish this project in a week.
- 5) It is obvious that we need more practice.
2. 1) and I did so.
- 2) I believe so.
- 3) If so, I won't be able to see you.



- 4) Is that so.  
5) I hope so.

### Comprehensive Exercises

1. 1) B    2) B    3) C    4) D    5) A    6) C    7) A    8) B    9) C    10) D
2. 1) His family goes back to the 18th century.  
2) This actor owes his success to his wife's support.  
3) Many wild animals are in danger of dying out.  
4) I used to play basketball when I was in college.  
5) George claimed that he had nothing to do with the accident.

## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

### Exercises

1. 1) Christmas    2) triage    3) showed    4) warm    5) station  
6) pity    7) action    8) presents    9) expectations    10) angel
2. 1) pale    2) available    3) complained    4) claimed  
5) lowered    6) still    7) accompanies    8) emergency
3. 1) as much money as I have  
2) soon be as tall as her mother  
3) as hard as other American teams  
4) your decision as soon as possible
4. 1) 但是当他们开始描述现在的病情时，事情就有点让人摸不着头脑了。两个孩子头痛，但是他们的头痛并没有伴随着通常出现的肢体症状，像抱头或者试着让头保持不动等。两个孩子说耳朵痛，但只有一个能告诉我是哪只耳朵痛。  
2) 原本抱怨圣诞节还要上班的护士们都转而对在圣诞节只祈求温暖的这家人感到非常同情。这个团队马上展开行动，就好像我们对待医疗紧急情况一样。

## Part IV Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) D    2) A    3) C    4) B    5) A

### Grammar

- 1) A    2) B    3) D    4) A    5) D    6) C    7) C    8) A    9) D    10) B

### Writing Skills

- 1) 错误：主谓不一致。





修改句: One of the politicians was taken to the prison.

2) 错误: 无主谓语的碎片句。

修改句: The tests, especially the essay questions, were easy. We felt confident that we had done well.

3) 错误: 代词指代不明。

修改句: I never buy fresh vegetables at that store because the owners charge too much.

4) 正确

5) 错误: 主谓不一致。

修改句: There are many secretaries who do their bosses' jobs as well as their own.

6) 正确。

7) 错误: 主谓不一致。

修改句: Either you or he has to leave.

8) 错误: 主谓不一致。

修改句: Economics is difficult to understand.

## Unit4

### Part II Intensive Reading Text A

#### Text Comprehension

1. 1) ease      2) bond      3) fourteen      4) cat      5) lightning  
 6) friends      7) weak      8) words      9) happened      10) contentedly  
 2. 1) F      2) F      3) F      4) F      5) T      6) T      7) F      8) F

#### Vocabulary

1. 1) risk      2) chased      3) heart-broken      4) greeted      5) suffers  
 6) glanced      7) kitchen      8) warning      9) bond      10) barked  
 2. 1) imagine      2) image      3) imaginary      4) alone      5) along  
 6) lonely      7) ease      8) easily      9) easy

3.

Adjectives , Nouns, or word roots	Verbs	Adjectives , Nouns, or word roots	Verbs
class	classify	popular	popularize/ popularise
just	justify	intense	intensify
clear	clarify	glory	glorify
industrial	industrialize	organ	organize
globe	globalize/ globalise	human	humanize



4. 1) to      2) of      3) in      4) on      5) At      6) alike      7) as      8) on

### Structure

1. 1) Running across the village is a stream.  
2) Standing beside the table was his wife.  
3) Hanging on the wall are two paintings of my grandfather.  
4) Walking into the meeting room is the new manager.  
5) Smiling sweetly was my little daughter.
2. 1) Whatever happens  
2) Wherever you go  
3) However hungry I am  
4) Whenever I go there  
5) Whoever is most qualified

### Comprehensive Exercises

1. 1) C    2) A    3) C    4) D    5) C    6) B    7) D    8) B    9) A    10) D
2. 1) I happened to be on the spot when the accident took place.  
2) My new neighbors don't seem friendly, so I have to keep my distance from them.  
3) Mother told me once and again to think twice before making an important decision.  
4) I was feeling more tired as the night wore on.  
5) May I bring my chair next to yours?

## Part III Extensive Reading(I) Text B

1. 1) F      2) T      3) F      4) F      5) T
2. 1) former      2) misunderstanding      3) international      4) faded  
5) general      6) lasted      7) distant      8) view
- 3.

three quarters	四分之三
three fifths	五分之三
two thirds	三分之二
one/a half	二分之一
seven twentieths	二十分之七
one and a half	一又二分之一

4. 1) 作为一个外国人, 他不明白美国人怎样看待友谊。美国人把“朋友”这个词用得很广泛。他们把泛泛之交和亲密的朋友都称作“朋友”。
- 2) 在一些文化中, 友谊意味着两个人之间持续终生的强烈感情。在这些文化中, 友谊发展缓慢, 因为友谊一旦建立即会持久。



## Part IV Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) C      2) D      3) C      4) A      5) B

### Grammar

- |                  |               |        |          |         |
|------------------|---------------|--------|----------|---------|
| 1) The, the, the | 2) an, a      | 3) the | 4) the   | 5) the  |
| 6) -             | 7) a, the     | 8) -   | 9) A     | 10) -   |
| 11) The          | 12) the, a, - | 13) a  | 14) a, - | 15) the |

### Writing Skills

- 1) It was a winter night that he spent with me.
  - 2) It was her father that /who left her without saying goodbye.
  - 3) It was our being late that caused him to serve dinner an hour later than usual.
  - 4) It was because he was ill that he asked for leave.
  - 5) It is the training that he has as a young man that made him such a good engineer.
- 1) There are sure to be a lot of difficulties for us to overcome.
  - 2) There are not any rivers and lakes there.
  - 3) Are there many English novels in this library?
  - 4) There happened to be nobody around.
  - 5) There lived a 100-year-old man in this house.
  - 6) There may be a lot a people interested in this plan.

## Unit 5

### Part II Intensive Reading Text A

#### Text Comprehension

- |                      |            |             |           |               |
|----------------------|------------|-------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. 1) American Dream | 2) able    | 3) position | 4) for    | 5) fortunate  |
| 6) Rights            | 7) Liberty | 8) become   | 9) beyond | 10) financial |
- 1) The American Dream is that dream of a land in which life should be better and richer and fuller for everyone, with opportunity for each according to ability or achievement.
  - 2) All Men are created equal, that they are given by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are life, Liberty and the Pursuit of Happiness.
  - 3) No, they are different.



- 4) Yes.
- 5) There are other opinions, such as some say that the American Dream is beyond the hand of the working poor who must work two jobs to support their family.
- 6) A new American Dream puts less focus on financial gain and more emphasis on living a simple, satisfactory life.

### Vocabulary

1. 1) opinion      2) explain      3) satisfactory      4) merely      5) focus
- 6) believe      7) dreams      8) fortunate      9) vision      10) social

2.

Verbs	Adjectives	Verbs	Adjectives
read	readable	comfort	comfortable
act	active	shock	shocking
respond	responsible	relative	relative
surprise	surprising	remark	remarkable
sense	sensitive	suit	suitable

3. 1) from      2) for      3) on      4) by      5) too      6) at      7) down      8) clearly

### Structure

1. 1) I bought a new book, which is very beautiful.
- 2) The house, which he bought in 1980 and sold two years later, is again on the market.
- 3) The park, where we visited yesterday, is very nice.
- 4) This is the largest clock in the world, of which the minute hand is six meters long.
- 5) My younger brother who is twenty is now studying in Beijing University.
2. 1) regardless of his age or sex
- 2) regardless of danger
- 3) regardless of cost
- 4) regardless of whether he succeeded or failed
- 5) regardless of the fact that her father refused to give her money

### Comprehensive Exercises

1. 1) B      2) D      3) B      4) A      5) C      6) B      7) D      8) A      9) D      10) A
2. 1) Many people have watched the TV news, but no one believes it is true.
- 2) Every one wants succeed, but only few catch the opportunity.
- 3) He turned on the light and looked for the keys.
- 4) After working abroad for several years, he decided to settle down in Beijing.
- 5) Having studied carefully, he recognized his friend long ago before him.



## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

### Exercises

1. 1) A girl.  
 2) She seemed so small as she pushed her way through the crowd of boys on the playground.  
 3) She wanted to get a scholarship and go to college.  
 4) The coach said she was too short to play for a top ranked team.  
 5) Her father told her, "If the dream is big enough, the facts don't count."  
 6) She got a scholarship indeed.
2. 1) sho                  2) victory          3) coach              4) indeed            5) determined  
 6) education          7) junior            8) crowd
3. 有一天我问她为什么这么刻苦地练习。她直视着我的眼睛，不假思索地说：“我想上大学。只有获得奖学金我才能上大学。我喜欢打篮球，我想只要我打得好，我就能获得奖学金。我要到大学去打篮球。我想成为最棒的球员。我爸爸告诉我说，心中有目标，风雨不折腰。”说完她笑了笑，跑向篮球场。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) B      2) A      3) D      4) C      5) A

### Grammar

- 1) A      2) C      3) B      4) C      5) D      6) A      7) B      8) A      9) A      10) B  
 11) C      12) B      13) A      14) D      15) D

### Writing Skills

- 1) Under the bridge were standing a group of students.
- 2) Through the door came in a man in black shirt.
- 3) Such is the fact that all people have a happy life.
- 4) Only in Chengdu can you have such a leisure life.
- 5) Never had he had such low score.

## Test 1

### Part I Use of English

- 1) B      2) A      3) C      4) D      5) C      6) A      7) D      8) C      9) C      10) A



11) A    12) D    13) C    14) B    15) C    16) A    17) D    18) C    19) A    20) A

## Part II Reading Comprehension

21) A    22) B    23) D    24) B    25) B    26) B    27) A    28) C  
29) C    30) C    31) D    32) A    33) A    34) C    35) A    36) B

## Part III Vocabulary and structure

37) D    38) C    39) B    40) C    41) A    42) D    43) B    44) C  
45) D    46) A    47) C    48) C    49) B    50) A    51) D

## Part IV Cloze

52) C    53) D    54) A    55) C    56) A    57) D    58) B    59) A    60) B    61) B

## Part V Translation form English into Chinese

- 62) 外面在下雨, 所以我会穿雨衣。  
63) 不管怎样, 工作总得完成。  
64) 别着急, 我们总能到旅馆的。

## Unit 6

### Part II Intensive Reading Text A

#### Text Comprehension

1. 1) T    2) F    3) F    4) F    5) T  
2. 1) American culture is unique because it is formed and developed under certain conditions, which are American.  
2) The major factors contributing to the making of this new nation and the forming of a new culture are the rough environment, many ethnic groups and religions.  
3) Individualism, self-reliance, and equality of opportunity are the values most closely associated with the heritage of American.  
4) Three times.  
5) Christianity.  
6) Yes.

Vocabulary

1. 1) dominant      2) culture      3) explanation      4) mixed      5) rough  
6) influenced      7) common      8) religions      9) form      10) freedom

2.

Nouns	Adjectives	Nouns	Adjectives
reason	reasonable	second	secondary
history	historical	music	musical
practice	practical	profession	professional
value	valuable	prime	primary
fashion	fashionable	type	typical

3. 1) later      2) on      3) further      4) under      5) in      6) almost      7) of      8) through

Structure

1. 1) The students coming from Asian countries win their good results for their diligence.  
2) The boy studying in the No. 1 Middle School gives me a deep impression.  
3) The girl standing beside the desk is my classmate's older sister.  
4) The workers working in the power plants play an important role in the movement.  
5) The old man talking with a boy is a professor in Peking University.
2. 1) Developing a good relationship  
2) Promising a good fortune  
3) Reading in the bed  
4) Teaching English  
5) Taking care of these children

Comprehensive Exercise

1. 1) C      2) A      3) B      4) C      5) D      6) A      7) C      8) A      9) B      10) D
2. 1) He's caught the unique opportunity.  
2) I'll lend you the book on condition that you return it to me on Monday.  
3) Each worker contributed ten yuan to the Red Cross.  
4) What is the population of this country?  
5) This word has three separate meanings.

Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

Exercises

1. 1) The United States produces 25 percent of the world's cheese.  
2) Wisconsin faces strong competition from California.



- 3) Vermont is already famous for maple syrup.
  - 4) Cheese-makers in Vermont make more than one hundred kinds of cheese with milk from cows, sheep, goats and water buffalo.
  - 5) Visitors can watch the leaves change color, and watch cheese being made from sheep's milk. They can even milk a sheep.
  - 6) The University of Vermont offers classes in cheese-making through the Vermont Institute for Artisan Cheese. Some recent classes were on English and Italian cheeses.
- 2) 1) of    2) in    3) with    4) already    5) down    6) widely    7) with    8) through
3. 佛蒙特很早就以蜂蜜闻名。但是当地的专家说, 按人均计算, 该州的干酪生产商比其他的州多。佛蒙特是东北部的一个小州, 在靠近加拿大的边境线上。  
佛蒙特的干酪生产商用牛奶、绵羊奶、水牛奶生产了 100 多种干酪。干酪用传统的方法来加工鲜牛奶。生产商说, 没有经过巴氏杀菌法加热的牛奶口感更好。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) B    2) C    3) A    4) D    5) A

### Grammar

- 1) A    2) C    3) A    4) A    5) D    6) C    7) A    8) B    9) A    10) A  
11) B    12) B    13) A    14) B    15) D

### Writing Skills

- 1) George is as old as Mike.
- 2) Tom has as many books as Sophie.
- 3) In the playground, you can run, walk, and play basketball, football, and volleyball.
- 4) People always make fun in the park, such as dancing, and singing, etc.
- 5) In the weekend, some people watch TV, some listen to the radio, and some play cards.

## Unit7

### Part II Intensive Reading Text A

#### Text Comprehension

- |              |              |           |               |                 |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. 1) season | 2) break     | 3) move   | 4) territory  | 5) addresses    |
| 6) tastes    | 7) vacations | 8) border | 9) attraction | 10) convenience |



2. 1) They usually head for their favorite vacation spot.
- 2) They were not content to stay there.
- 3) They can use the annual vacation to travel.
- 4) They can enjoy beaches, mountains, lakes and a wealth of natural wonders.
- 5) "Family friendly" vacation resorts can offer them special programs for children.

### Vocabulary

1. 1) disturb                      2) deserve                      3) heading for                      4) urban                      5) frequent
- 6) appealed to                      7) occupied                      8) settled                      9) economy                      10) content
- 2.

lock	unlock	necessary	unnecessary
religious	irreligious	direct	indirect
efficient	inefficient	responsible	irresponsible
legal	illegal	probable	improbable
perfect	imperfect	certain	uncertain

3. 1) from                      2) for                      3) on                      4) in                      5) to

### Structure

1. 1) Tom is as tall as his father.
- 2) Lisa can play the piano as well as Mary.
- 3) The red dress is as expensive as the blue one.
- 4) He ran as quickly as a rabbit.
- 5) This famous painter is as special in his style as other artists.
2. 1) no matter where she goes.
- 2) no matter how hard you work.
- 3) no matter when you visit there.
- 4) no matter who you are
- 5) no matter what he has done.

### Comprehensive Exercises

1. 1) B                      2) B                      3) D                      4) B                      5) D                      6) A                      7) D                      8) C                      9) C                      10) D
2. 1) She isn't content to stay in a small company.
- 2) After three weeks, I was used to the environment there.
- 3) I prefer walking to work to riding a bicycle.
- 4) Her humor appealed to the young man.
- 5) Frank has worked so hard recently that he deserves that reward.



## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

### Exercises

- 1) When the sun dropped and the blue sky came up.  
2) We had a lot of conversations.  
3) It could help me learn to think and be patient.  
4) After the first few hours of climbing, I got a pain in my legs and wanted to quit.  
5) My father's words influenced me a lot.
- 1) objective                      2) used to                      3) beneficial                      4) pollution  
5) influence                      6) learned... from                      7) capacity                      8) came to life
3. 我认为爬山是有益的, 它能让我与父亲交谈, 让我学会思考和培养耐心。我喜欢爬山, 远离城市的喧闹与污染, 尽情享受新鲜空气。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) D    2) C    3) D    4) A    5) B

### Grammar

- 1) C    2) A    3) C    4) A    5) C    6) C    7) B    8) C    9) B  
10) A    11) C    12) B    13) D    14) B    15) C

## Unit 8

## Part II Intensive Reading Text A

### Text Comprehension

- 1) The writer trained for all season.  
2) She was limping while running.  
3) Because she fell farther and farther behind.  
4) She heard a cheer when she finished.  
5) They talked about courage she got in the running.  
6) She learned two important things. They are kindness and confidence in people as well as strength and courage.
- 2) 1) F    2) T    3) F    4) F    5) T    6) F



## Vocabulary

1. 1) courage      2) quit      3) overcome      4) attended      5) injury  
6) debated      7) measured      8) race      9) realized      10) worth

2.

appear	disappear	remember	disremember
believe	disbelieve	respect	disrespect
affect	disaffect	grace	disgrace
agree	disagree	approve	disapprove

3. 1) in      2) from...to      3) As      4) behind      5) to      6) for, on

## Structure

1. 1) even if I was only a stranger  
2) even if I fail ten times  
3) even if she comes from a poor family  
4) Even if you and an excellent college student  
5) Even if they use the same textbook
2. 1) I would accept that Job at once  
2) If I had the time  
3) I would have caught the train  
4) If you watched the movie  
5) If you stayed here for more time

## Comprehensive Exercises

1. 1) A      2) C      3) A      4) D      5) B      6) B      7) D      8) C      9) A      10) D
2. 1) In fact, she was debated whether or not to study abroad.  
2) Exercises can make a difference to your health.  
3) Tom spent an hour in the library and finally tracked down the book he wanted.  
4) I limped to the classroom where I met Jack.  
5) He turned around very quickly to see if somebody followed him.

## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

### Exercises

1. 1) They go snow-boarding every weekend.  
2) It's to get as close to the edge as possible.  
3) They are sky-surfing, snow-boarding, bungy-jump, and so on.  
4) It's a special Olympics for extreme sports.



- 5) Specialized equipment and high levels of skill.  
 6) Because they are fresh and exciting, which can appeal to young people.
2. 1) challenging      2) incredible      3) take part in      4) equipment      5) specializes  
 6) frightened      7) alternative      8) risk
3. 极限运动肯定不适宜于每个人。大多数人还是喜欢打棒球或篮球，或是干脆观看电视体育节目。但是极限运动越来越受到人们的欢迎。“这些运动既新鲜又刺激，将来会是运动的潮流。”

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) B      2) A      3) C      4) D      5) D

### Grammar

- 1) B      2) C      3) D      4) A      5) C      6) B      7) A      8) A      9) C      10) A  
 11) C      12) D      13) A      14) C      15) A      16) B      17) B      18) A      19) A      20) D

## Unit 9

### Part II Intensive Reading Text A

#### Text Comprehension

1. 1) first      2) forward      3) beautiful      4) wonderful      5) cheese  
 6) customer      7) dance      8) unhappy      9) forget      10) smell
2. 1) Yes. Because it was her first date, and she could hardly believe it was happening.  
 2) He looked beautiful to her: His hair was neatly combed and he wore a yellow sweater she hadn't seen before  
 3) A wrapped package in white paper to be sent to Sally Thompson. In the package, it was the Limburger cheese.  
 4) No. She had no mood for the cheese. It was her first date. She was not willing to send the cheese, because she didn't want the cheese to interrupt her date with Robert.  
 5) Yes. Because the cheese was ordered for the evening. If the goods were not delivered at the time, the reputation would be damaged.  
 6) No. In Robert's mind, it smelled. Of course, in Mimi's mind, it also smelled. She held the hand farthest from Robert so as to reduce the influence of the smell to the minimum level.  
 7) No. Mimi thought she had been there once. But unfortunately, she couldn't find the house. So, they had to go the dance hall with the smelly cheese.



8) She felt very bad because the cheese was a heavy stone in her mind.

9) It was because it was her first date: She was very satisfied with the boy and she tried her best to leave a good impression to him.

3. 1) T      2) T      3) F      4) F      5) F      6) T      7) T      8) T

### Vocabulary

1. 1) miserable      2) stared      3) put on      4) grocery      5) are stuck with  
6) comb      7) deliver      8) wonderful      9) crawl      10) messy

2. antiaircraft antiwar

biweekly, biannual

cooperation, coeducation

extranet, extract

immigrate, impress

inbox

interchange, interlink

microphone, microstructure

minivan, minimal

3. 1) under      2) in      3) to      4) On      5) on  
6) from      7) on      8) since      9) in      10) in

### Structure

1. 1) I can't understand the words written by Jack on the blackboard.  
2) The water polluted by some chemicals made people very angry.  
3) The train driven by the steam engine can stand the cold weather.  
4) He still keeps the bag given to him by the girl.  
5) Who can solve the question put out by Jane?

2. 1) During the Spring Festival  
2) During my staying in London  
3) during the workmen's dinner  
4) during World War II  
5) during the 1980s and 1990s

### Comprehension Exercises

1. 1) B      2) A      3) B      4) B      5) C      6) A      7) B      8) C      9) B      10) A  
2. 1) Tom called out to his wife: "I will divorce you!"  
2) When he popped out of the classroom, I was surprised.  
3) I'm stuck with this problem.  
4) This world is full of love.  
5) I will do the thing with all my heart.



## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

### Exercises

1. 1) Some people meet at work.
- 2) Others meet by chance in a public place. Many Americans want to go where they are sure they can meet people with similar interests.
- 3) Still others visit places where other single people go.
- 4) Or they can use businesses that help organize dates. Some businesses help single people meet other people. For example,
- 5) Many men and women find dates through services they find on the Internet computer system.
2. 1) involved 2) drips 3) apartment 4) expectation 5) by chance 6) blind date
3. 通常是由朋友为未婚而彼此不相识的两个人安排约会。这位朋友认为这两个人会彼此喜欢。这就是“瞎眼约会”(未曾谋面的约会)。参与约会的人并非真的瞎了,他们只是之前未曾谋面。然而,大部分的未婚男女只得自己寻找约会的对象。许多人去公共场所,如餐馆,酒吧和舞厅。在美国的每个城市都有。某些场所受年轻人的青睐。另一些场所则受年长一些人的青睐。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) D 2) B 3) A 4) C 5) A

### Grammar

- 1) D 2) A 3) C 4) D 5) C 6) D 7) B 8) B 9) C 10) A  
11) A 12) D 13) A 14) B 15) A 16) C 17) A 18) C 19) B 20) A

### Writing Skills

- 1) 举例 2) 比较异同 3) 列举事实 4) 地点位置  
5) 因果关系 6) 时间顺序 7) 下定义

## Unit 10

## Part II Intensive Reading Text A

### Text Comprehension

1. 1) gives/brings 2) necessarily 3) group 4) by 5) at  
6) touch 7) text 8) envelopes 9) upload 10) eliminate



2. 1) Because the technology of computer and the Internet gives them more freedom to use their spare time.
  - 2) He knows this from his own personal experience.
  - 3) On e-mails.
  - 4) No, it depends. The author says: "My working hours aren't necessarily much shorter than they once were." By the sentence, we know, he sometimes works longer, and sometime works shorter than before.
  - 5) Because he nowadays works less hour in the office, and some of the work can be done in his house.
  - 6) One can send an e-mail to his friends at his convenience, and his friends can read and answer the e-mail at their convenience.
  - 7) Because e-mail is an inexpensive way of communication.
  - 8) Because it involves a lot of processes comparing with sending an e-photo online.
  - 9) No, both the old ways and the new ones will exist, and people can use their favorite ones according to their own interests.
3. 1) T      2) T      3) F      4) T      5) T      6) T      7) F      8) T

### Vocabulary

1. 1) at one's convenience      2) envelope      3) eliminated      4) affected      5) tag  
6) camera      7) tire of      8) audio      9) photographic      10) digital
2. multiple, multicultural  
override, overcome  
postgraduate, postscript  
preview, prewar  
refresh, review  
subordinate, subscribe  
superman, supernatural  
transform, transport  
triangle, triple  
underground, underway
3. 1) besides      2) at      3) with      4) without      5) except  
6) in      7) on      8) besides      9) on      10) for

### Structure

1. 1) They once lived in the same building, helping each other.
- 2) Realizing I had made a stupid mistake, I went to my teacher for some advice.
- 3) Knowing they had no way out, the enemies surrendered to us.
- 4) Crossing the field, Eurydice was bit by a poisonous snake on her foot.
- 5) He sat in the couch, listening to the music./Sitting in the couch, he listened to the music.



2. 1) to travel in Kunming in the summer holidays
- 2) to exchange my pen for his toy pistol
- 3) to travel in space
- 4) to look after his younger sister when his parents are not in
- 5) to kill the goats without permission

### Comprehension Exercises

1. 1) D    2) C    3) A    4) D    5) B    6) C    7) C    8) D    9) A    10) B
2. 1) I will share all the good news with my friends.
- 2) I tire of playing computer games.
- 3) You can answer my e-mail at your convenience.
- 4) The children like playing tag.
- 5) They still keep in touch with one another frequently even after they graduated from the university for 10 years.

## Part III Extensive Reading (I) Text B

1. 1) T    2) F    3) T    4) T    5) F
2. 1) on    2) behind    3) for    4) about    5) at    6) upon
3. 1) do    2) knowing    3) had read    4) come    5) listen to    6) repaired
4. 1) “在美国，大约 4% 的高中生有网瘾方面的问题，”他们在《临床心理学》杂志上这样写道。
- 2) 根据这项调查，有着网瘾问题的用户还可能更加抑郁，更可能卷入打架。

## Part V Further Study

### Use of English

- 1) B    2) A    3) D    4) C    5) A

### Grammar

- 1) He told her that they were flying kites.
- 2) Mike said that he was going to Hainan for a holiday.
- 3) Miss Green said that the earth goes around the sun.
- 4) Tom said that they were cleaning the classroom then.
- 5) Lucy said that he wanted to have dinner with her parents.
- 6) Jack said that his mother had been there two days before.
- 7) Rose says that she is a good student.
- 8) He asked me if it would snow the next day.





- 9) He asked the man whether the bus stopped on that road.  
 10) Tom asked me how he could win a gold medal in the sports meeting.  
 11) The policeman asked whose car those were.  
 12) Miss Chen asked me why I was late again.  
 13) She asked her mother what they should have for supper.  
 14) Mother ordered Jim to stop beating the dog.  
 15) The teacher asked the students to finish the exercise in five minutes.

## Test 2

### Part I Use of English

- 1) D      2) A      3) D      4) A      5) A      6) D      7) C      8) D      9) A      10) C  
 11) A      12) A      13) D      14) C      15) C      16) A      17) D      18) A      19) A      20) B

### Part II Reading Comprehension

- 21) C      22) A      23) B      24) A      25) D      26) C      27) A      28) D      29) B      30) A  
 31) C      32) B      33) D      34) D      35) C      36) D      37) C      38) A      39) D

### Part III Vocabulary and structure

- 40) C      41) C      42) A      43) D      44) A      45) A      46) C      47) D      48) B  
 49) A      50) C      51) A      52) D      53) A      54) B

### Part IV cloze

- 55) C      56) B      57) A      58) B      59) C      60) D      61) A      62) D      63) D      64) B

### Part V translation from English into Chinese

- 65) 不知为什么，我有点为他惋惜。  
 66) 说到政治，我几乎一窍不通。  
 67) 没有比我的椅子坐上去更舒服的了。

# 反侵权盗版声明

电子工业出版社依法对本作品享有专有出版权。任何未经权利人书面许可，复制、销售或通过信息网络传播本作品的行为；歪曲、篡改、剽窃本作品的行为，均违反《中华人民共和国著作权法》，其行为人应承担相应的民事责任 and 行政责任，构成犯罪的，将被依法追究刑事责任。

为了维护市场秩序，保护权利人的合法权益，我社将依法查处和打击侵权盗版的单位和个人。欢迎社会各界人士积极举报侵权盗版行为，本社将奖励举报有功人员，并保证举报人的信息不被泄露。

举报电话：(010) 88254396; (010) 88258888

传 真：(010) 88254397

E-mail: dbqq@phei.com.cn

通信地址：北京市万寿路 173 信箱

电子工业出版社总编办公室

邮 编：100036